



# Bodleian Libraries

UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

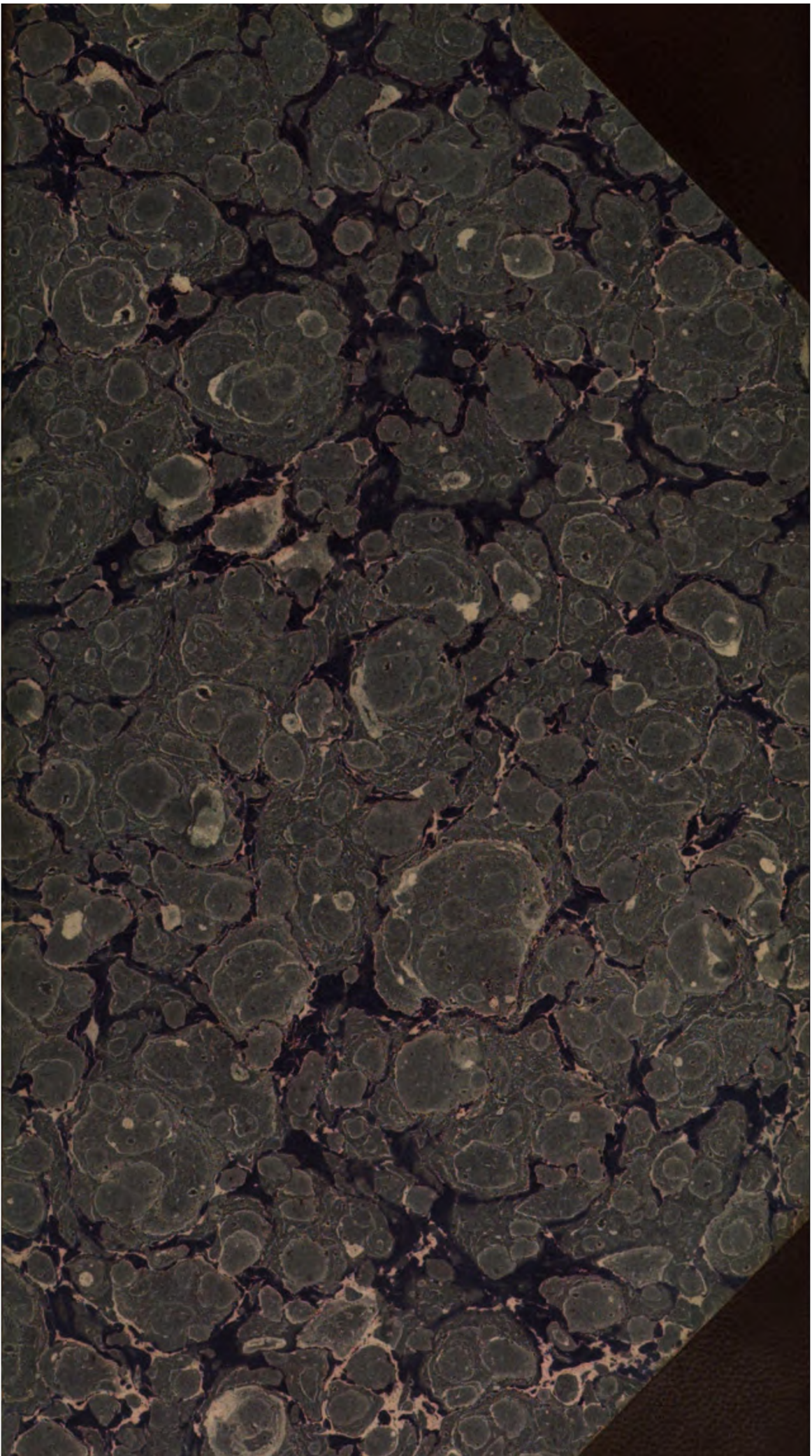
This book is part of the collection held by the Bodleian Libraries  
and scanned by Google, Inc. for the Google Books Library Project.

For more information see:

<http://www.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/dbooks>



This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-  
ShareAlike 2.0 UK: England & Wales (CC BY-NC-SA 2.0) licence.



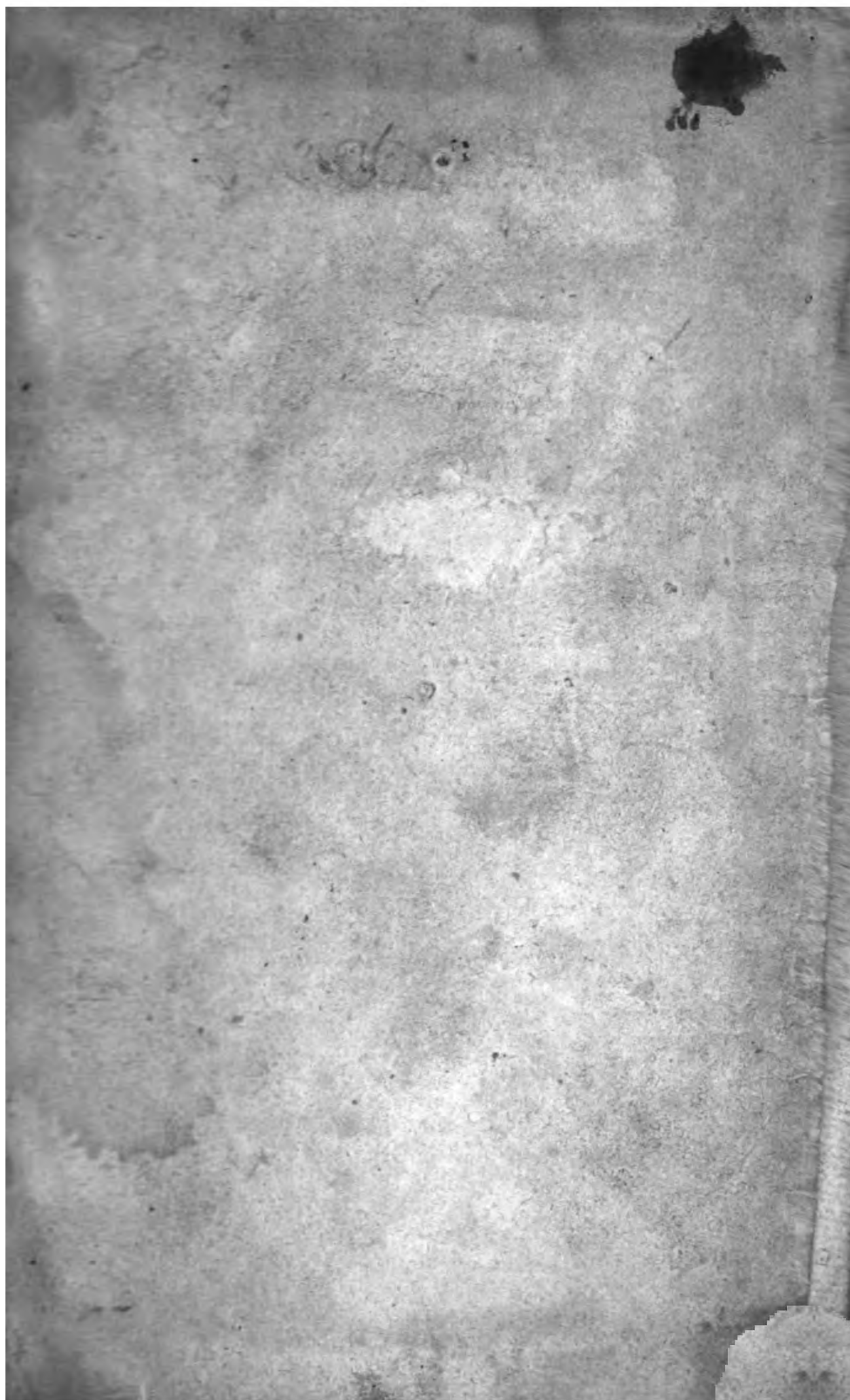


626 ——— Pilgrim's Progress, with  
plates by Sturt, and a Life of the  
Author by a Friend to the Gospel, 8vo,  
boards, uncut, 9s. *9/6* 1775











M<sup>R</sup>. JOHN BUNYAN.

THE  
PILGRIM'S PROGRESS  
FROM  
THIS WORLD  
TO  
THAT WHICH IS TO COME:  
DELIVERED UNDER THE SIMILITUDE OF A  
D R E A M.

WHEREIN IS DISCOVERED,

- I. The Manner of his SETTING OUT.
- II. His dangerous JOURNEY; and
- III. His safe Arrival at the DESIRED COUNTRY.

COMPLETE IN TWO PARTS.

WRITTEN BY JOHN BUNYAN.

*I have used* SIMILITUDES. Hosea xii. 10.

THE THIRTY-SECOND EDITION,  
ADORNED WITH CURIOUS SCULPTURES ENGRAVED BY J. STURT,

TO WHICH IS ADDED,

THE LIFE OF THE AUTHOR,  
BY A FRIEND OF THE GOSPEL.

---

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR J. AND F. RIVINGTON, B. LAW, W. STRAHAN,  
HAWES AND CO. H. WOODFALL, E. JOHNSTON,  
AND R. BALDWIN.

MDCCCLXXV.

141. i. 451.





---

# P R E F A C E.

By the EDITOR of this IMPRESSION.

THE many Editions this WORK has gone through, most evidently demonstrate how acceptable it hath been to the World. This Manner of Allegorical Writing, by Way of Parable, hath been ever esteemed by Men of the brightest and most refined Genius in all Ages, as the most useful and instructive, because the most engaging and agreeable, not only to Youth, but even those of riper Years, and Men.

The Divine PLATO and SOCRATES, the latter of whom the *Oracle* pronounced the *Wiseſt of Men*, particularly recommended it among those of the *Heathen World*. But what Need we have Recourse to *Paganism*, when the inspired Writers delivered down Truths the most Excellent and Important to Mankind under *Shade* and *Figure*? and with good Reason; since downright Truths, in themselves

a 2                      naked

iv *The* EDITOR'S *PREFACE.*

naked and plain, would not so strongly have insinuated themselves into the Minds of Men. *Nathan* was very sensible of this, when he denounced the Terrors of an offended GOD to DAVID, who had received so many signal Favours at his Hands, and had been so ungrateful as to affront him, by committing Two Sins, the most frightful and enormous, *Adultery* and *Murder*! Had the good Prophet reproved the Royal Delinquent in open Terms, it probably might have provoked his Resentment and Indignation; for Great Men cannot bear being told of their Errors: He therefore addressed him in a *Parable*, which had it's happy Effect, and drew from the weeping and repenting Monarch a thorough Sorrow and Contrition. And a greater than *Nathan*, or all the Prophets of the World, who best knew the Hearts and Affections of Men, spoke to those whom he loved to instruct, after this very Manner.

Mr. *Bunyan* has been very happy in his Idea of the *Pilgrim*: It is a delicate and familiar Topic, and wonderfully natural to represent, in all it's Degrees and Circumstances,

*The* EDITOR'S PREFACE. v

cumstances, the Life of every Man, who is a *Stranger and Sojourner, and a Pilgrim, as all his Fathers have been*: And he hath so happily executed his Design, that no Performance yet of this Kind hath ever come up to it.

The Story of *Balaam and Jehosaphat*, written by *S. John Damascene, a Greek Father*, hath been sufficiently applauded; and indeed it has it's peculiar Beauties and Excellencies. *Dr. Patrick, Bishop of Ely*, has wrote a much more voluminous Work under the Title of the PILGRIM, but the Colouring is very faint, and it wants all that simple Plainness which so pathetically strikes the Heart: Such tedious Pieces, as they are wholly void of Life and Spirit, so are they very unapt to stir up those warm Affections and Religious Fires, which the Nature of so eminent and important a Subject essentially requires.

It fares otherwise with our Author, through whom there reigns a wonderful Simplicity of Diction, attended with Sentiments the most surprizingly Touching. The *Allegory* is admirably well continued and interwoven, the Transitions easy and

vi    *The* EDITOR'S *PREFACE.*

and natural, and all the Images are lively, strong and nervous mixed with such a Spirit of True Piety, as hath not it's Equal, but in the Holy Scriptures; which our Author here plainly discovers himself, to have thoroughly studied, having almost every-where expressed himself in their Style and Language. And consequently, as in them, the Simple and Illiterate learn Improvement and Instruction, and even the Learned finds Matter where-with to employ his Speculation. And one Thing particularly is observable in this Work, that Man can scarce take it into his Hand, but he is tempted to go through with it, it so agreeably engages the Attention by it's Narration, which in some Places contains such moving Circumstances of Human Misery and Distress, in its plain Garb, as we no where find in the finest Pieces of Art, however set off with all the Pomp and Glitter of accurate Phrase and Rhetorick: And I believe no one in the World, of what Sect, Party, or Profession soever he be, can read several of the Episodes, especially the *Passing of the River*, in the Conclusion, without



*The EDITOR'S PREFACE.* vii

without some Sort of Religious Emotion and Affection.

All these Things considered, Is it not wonderful that a plain, simple Man, and unlearned, as Mr. *Bunyan* was, should, notwithstanding, have composed so useful and admirable a Treatise? But, alas! from the *Mouths of Babes and Sucklings* God is sometimes pleased wonderfully to manifest his Glory; and the Poor and Unlearned gain Heaven, while (to use *S. Augustin's* Expressions) *the Great ones of this World, with all their mighty Stock and Boast of Learning, sink into Perdition.* So true is it, that the Spirit of God is unconfined; And he ordereth it's *Salutary Influence where he listeth.*

The universal Good, which this incomparable Treatise hath done to Mankind, and the Desire of it's farther public Benefit, is the Occasion of this present Edition, for the former Impressions being, on Account of the Poorer Sort, published at *so cheap a Rate*, it was out of their Power to purchase a *Better*; so that a great many worthy Christians, through Age or other Infirmities, were unhappily deprived

viii *The* EDITOR'S *PREFACE.*

prived of the Benefit of it, which some Persons of Distinction and Piety duly weighing, in order to remedy that Inconvenience, very generously and highly becoming their Character and good Intentions, proposed that it might be sent into the World in the handsome Manner it now appears. Great Care has been taken, not only in the Correct Printing, but in the Engraving of the several Copper-Plates, which adorn it; so that it is not in the least doubted, but the Whole will give such entire Satisfaction to the Public in general, as well as to those worthy Gentlemen in particular, who have so handsomely and generously contributed to this beautiful Edition, by their large Subscriptions, as will fully answer their Expectation.

We shall conclude this *PREFACE*, with a merry but just Observation made by Dr. *Radcliffe*, who used to say, that *Bunyan's* PILGRIM was a CHRISTIAN; and *Patrick's* PILGRIM a wretched PEDLAR, *who sold damaged Commodities*; alluding to the Legendary Tales therein related.

LEGE & FRUERE.

THE

---

THE  
LIFE AND DEATH  
OF  
Mr. JOHN BUNYAN,  
LATE  
Preacher of the Gospel in BEDFORD.

---

PSALM cxii. 6.

*The Righteous shall be had in everlasting Remembrance.*

**M**R. *John Bunyan* was born at *Elston*, in the County of *Bedford*, within a little Mile of that Town; of honest, but very poor Parents: His Original being so mean that I know not in whom the Words of the great Apostle to the *Gentiles*, in his First Chapter of the Epistle to the *Corinthians*, were more fully exemplified than in Mr. *John Bunyan*. The Words are these: *For you see your Calling, Brethren, how that not many wise Men after the Flesh, not many mighty, not many noble, are called; but God hath chosen the foolish Things of the World to confound the wise; and God hath chosen the weak Things of the World to confound the Things that are mighty: And base Things of the World, and Things which are despised, hath God chosen:—That no Flesh might glory in his Presence.* And this he himself was ready upon all Occasions to own, that God might have the Glory of his own Grace: For though his Original and Birth was but poor and despised, yet it pleased God to choose him before many others, to be an Instrument for the bringing of many Souls unto God:

And that the Grace of God that was given him may be the more exceedingly magnified, we will give some brief Account of what he was before the Grace of God appeared to him.

I have already told you, that his Parents were very mean, but that they took Care to give him that Learning which was suitable to their Condition, bringing him up to read and write; but so great was his natural Depravity, and his Proneness to all Evil, that he quickly forgot both, being only wise to do Evil; but to do or learn that which was Good, or Praise-worthy, he had no Heart or Knowledge, addicting himself so much in his very Childhood to cursing, swearing, lying, and blaspheming, that he had few Equals in Wickedness; insomuch that I remember I have heard him say, with Grief of Heart, *He was a Town-swearer*; that is to say, One that was taken Notice of as one most notoriously wicked, by all the Town where he lived: Yet was not his Conscience seared, but would often give him such Twinges as made him very uneasy: Being also often affrighted with Dreams, and terrified with Visions in the night; fearing lest for the Sins he had committed in the Day, he should be taken away by Devils in the Night, and by them be bound down with Chains of Darkness to the Judgment of the Great Day. And these Fears were frequent with him, when he had hardly reached to the Age of Ten Years. And these Thoughts did not only attack him in the Night-Season, but sometimes also in the Midst of his childish Vanities, among his vain Companions: And sometimes in that Condition, Despair had taken so much hold on him, that he has wished, that either there had been no Hell, or that himself had been a Devil, supposing that the Devils were only Tormentors of others, but were not tormented themselves. And yet, when these Thoughts had left him, he followed his sinful Pleasures with all the Eagerness imaginable; as if he had never had those  
dismal



dismal despairing Thoughts. So that the whole Course of his Life, from his Childhood till his Marriage, was what the Apostle describes in *Ephesians* ii. 2, 3. *According to the Course of this World, and the Spirit that now worketh in the Children of Disobedience, being filled with all unrighteousness, and led Captive by the Devil at his Will:* And as he himself expresses it, The very Ringleader of all the Youth that kept him Company, in all Manner of Vice and Ungodliness.

But notwithstanding all this Wickedness of his, God did not utterly leave him, but followed him sometimes with convictions, and sometimes with Judgments, but yet such as had in them a Mixture of Mercy: At one Time he fell into a Creek of the Sea, and then hardly escaped drowning; and at another Time he fell out of a Boat into *Bedford River*; but there he also was preserved, though with great Difficulty: But, alas! it was neither Mercy nor Judgment that could yet awaken him, for he had given up himself to the Love of Sin, and was fully resolved to go on, whatever Rubs he met with in his Way.

Yet God left not himself without a Witness in his Soul, often checking him in one Way or another; as one Day being at *Sly* with his Companions, a Voice suddenly darted from Heaven into his Soul, saying, *Wilt thou leave thy Sins, and go to Heaven, or have thy Sins and go to Hell?* This put him into such a Consternation, that he immediately left his Sport, and looking up to Heaven, thought he saw the Lord Jesus looking down upon him, as one hotly displeased with him, and threatening him with some grievous Punishments for his ungodly Practices.

But see the Works of Satan! No sooner had this made some Impression on his Mind, but the Devil suggested to him, That he had been a great and grievous Sinner, and that it was now too late for him to look after Heaven, for Christ would not forgive him, nor pardon his Transgressions. And this is no



other than the Devil's usual Practice, first to draw Sinners to commit all Iniquity with Greediness, and then to persuade them there is no Hope of Mercy left, that thereby the Sinner may be prevailed with to go on in Sin. And this was the Effect that this Suggestion had upon Mr. *Bunyan*; who looking upon himself as one that sinned beyond the Reach of Mercy, thought within himself, that he would take his Fill of Sin, it being the only Pleasure he was ever like to have. And yet these Pleasures of Sin, through the wonderful Operations of the Holy Spirit, were so often imbittered to him, that he could take but little Satisfaction in them. For, *The Labour of the natural Man, or Man before Conversion, doth but weary him, because he knoweth not the Way to the City of God, Eccles. x. 15.*

Once, as he was going on in the full Career of Sin, and belching out Oaths like the Madman that *Solomon* speaks of, who scatters abroad Fire-brands, Arrows, and Death, he was reprov'd severely by a Woman who was a notorious Sinner herself; who told him, *That he was the ugliest Fellow for Swearing, that ever she heard in all her Life; and that by his doing thus, he was able to spoil all the Youth in the Town, if they came into his Company.* This Reproof, coming from such a Woman, whom he knew to be very wicked and ungodly, filled him with great Shame; and wrought more with him, than many that had been given him before by those that were sober and godly: And made him wish, that he had never known what it was to be a Swearer, and even made him out of Love with it; and from that Time forward very much to refrain from it. This puts me in mind of a Story I have read in the Life of holy Mr. *Perkins*, who in his young Years was as great a Debauchee as any in the University of *Cambridge*, where he was brought up. He coming one time through the Out-parts of the Town, heard a Woman say to her Child that was froward and peevish, *Either bold your Tongue, or I will give you to drunken Perkins yonder.*

These

These Words were so great a Reproof to him, finding himself made a common Bye-word among People, that it made him resolve upon a Reformation; and this, by God's gracious and all-dispensing Providence, was one great Step towards his Conversion.

But to return to Mr. *Bunyan*: God having a Design of Grace towards him, gave him frequent Checks and Interruptions in the Midst of his strongest Resolutions to go on in his Sin; sometimes scaring him with Dreams, and terrifying him with Visions, in an extraordinary Manner; verifying that of *Elihu* to *Job*, in the xxxiii<sup>d</sup> Chapter of that Book, and the 14<sup>th</sup> Verse, and forward: *For God speaketh once, yea, twice, yet Man perceiveth it not: In a Dream, in a Vision of the Night; when deep Sleep falleth upon Man, in slumberings upon the Bed: Then he openeth the Ears of Men, and sealeth their Instruction: That he may withdraw Man from his Purpose, and keep back his Soul from the Pit, and his Life from perishing.* For once he dreamed that he saw the Face of the Heavens, as it were, all on Fire, and the Firmament cracking and shivering with the Noise of mighty Thunders, and that an Arch-Angel flew in the Midst of Heaven, sounding a Trumpet, and a Throne of Glory was seated in the East, whereon sat a Person in Brightness like the Morning-Star. Upon which Mr. *Bunyan*, thinking in his Dream that it was the End of the World, fell upon his Knees, and with uplifted Hands towards Heaven, cried out, *O Lord God. have Mercy upon me! What shall I do! The Day of Judgment is come, and I am not prepared!* And then immediately he heard a Voice behind him, saying, *Repent.* And upon this he awaked, and found it was but a Dream; but surely it was a very awful Dream, and a *Memento* sent from Heaven; and it had an Effect accordingly; for upon this he grew more serious, and it remained in his Mind a considerable Time. This was a Part of God's Dealing with him, to withdraw him from his Purpose

of Sinning ; and to keep back his Soul from the Pit of Destruction.

At another Time he dreamed, That he was in a pleasant Place, living in Riot and Luxury, Banqueting and Feasting his Senses : Where, on a sudden, even in a Moment, a mighty Earthquake rent the Earth in sunder, and out of the wide and dreadful Gap came bloody and amazing Flames, and in those Flames the Figures of Men tossed up in Globes of Fire, and falling down again, with horrid Shrieks and Cries, and Execrations ; whilst some Devils that were mingled with them, laughed aloud at their Torments. And whilst he stood trembling at this affrighted Vision, he thought the Earth shook under him, and a Circle of Flame inclosed him : But when he thought himself just at the Point of Perishing, One in white shining Raiment descended, and plucked him out of that dreadful Place, whilst the Devils cried after him, to leave him with them, that he might receive the just Punishment his Sins had deserved ; yet he escaped the Danger. He was extremely affrighted with this Dream, and not a little glad he found it to be but a Dream, though indeed it was a great deal more, for it was the secret Working of the Almighty upon his Spirit, to draw him from his Sins, although he was ignorant of Christ, and so wedded unto Sport and Play that he could not leave it.

But in a little Time after, he fell into the Company of a poor Man, that made Profession of Religion, whose Discourse of Religion, and of the Scriptures, so affected Mr. *Bunyan*, that he betook himself to reading the Bible, especially the Historical Part thereof ; but was yet ignorant both of the Corruption and Depravity of his Nature, and, by a necessary Consequence, of the Want and Worth of Jesus Christ to save him.

However this produced outward Reformation both in his Words and Life ; and he now was fallen into a Kind of legal Religion, working for Life, and making up a Righteousness for himself thereby ; so that while  
he



he thought he kept the Commandments he had Comfort; but when at some Times he broke any of them, his Conscience was full of Guilt and Trouble: But then upon his Sorrow and Repentance, he healed himself again, and thought thereby he had made God Amends, and all was well.

And thus he continued for some Time, very near a Year; his Neighbours all that Time taking him for a very good Man, and wondering at his Reformation. Though indeed all that Time he was as far from the Way of Life as when he was the most prophane; though, as himself phrases it, his Change of Life and Manners was as remarkable, as for *Tom of Bedlam* to become a sober Man.

And now those that spoke ill of him before, began to praise and commend him, both to his Face and behind his Back; which notwithstanding his Reformation, puffed him up with Pride, and filled him with Hypocrisy. He had been mightily addicted to Ringing, and for all his Reformation, was very unwilling to leave it: But his Conscience beginning to be tender, he thought the Practice thereof to be but vain, and so forced himself to leave it, yet could not keep his Mind from hankering after it; and therefore would not ring. But then he was surprised with Fears, that possibly one of the Bells might fall and kill him, and then he durst no longer go into the Steeple, but would stand at the Door; and even there he was afraid lest the Steeple itself should fall upon him. This both shewed continual Conviction, and that yet the Love of Pleasures still remained, and his corrupt Affections were unmortified. Dancing was also another Thing in which he much delighted, and he found it a hard Thing to relinquish that also; and it was near a Year's Time before he could leave it off.

But, alas! this was but the lopping off the Branches of Sin, whilst the Root of Unregeneracy remained: This was but building upon the old Foundation, which must all be overturned, where God intends to carry

on his Work in Truth. But it pleased God, in his wonderful Wisdom and Goodness, to let him pass through these Things, that he might the better know how to direct those poor wandering Souls that would be afterwards in such a State, which in itself is very dangerous: *For no Sort of Sinners are in a more desperate Condition, than those that are pure in their own Eyes, and yet are not cleansed from their Filthiness,* Prov. xxx. 12.

Not long after, the Providence of God so ordered it, that Mr. Bunyan went to Bedford to work upon his Calling, and happened there to hear three or four poor Women, who were sitting in the Sun, discoursing together about the Things of God, which caused him to draw near to them, for he was by this Time himself become a mighty Talker of Religion: But when he had heard them awhile, as himself confessed, he heard indeed, but he understood not, for they spoke of Things above his Reach; discoursing of the New Birth, and the Work of God on their Hearts, and how they were convinced of their miserable State by Nature: They talked, How God had visited their souls with his Love in the Lord Jesus, and with what Words and Promises they had been refreshed, comforted, and supported against the Temptations of the Devil: They also reasoned of the Suggestions and Temptations of the Evil One in particular, and told each other by which they had been afflicted, and how they were borne up under his Assaults. He heard them likewise discourse of the Wretchedness of their own Hearts, and of their Unbelief; and of contemning and abhorring their own Righteousness, as filthy, and insufficient to do them any Good. And all this appeared to him to be spoken with such an Air of Joy, and Pleasantness of Scripture Language, and with such an Appearance of Grace in all they said, that they seemed to him, as if they had found a new World; as if they were People that dwelt alone, and were not to be reckoned among their Neighbours,



It was upon this Discourse of theirs, that he began to feel some unusual Agitations in his own Heart, and to be conscious to himself, that his own Condition was not so good as he had thought it to be; because in all his Thoughts about Religion and Salvation, the New Birth never entered into his Mind; but he found it was a Thing he was wholly a Stranger to, and unacquainted with: Nor did he know the Comfort of a Word or Promise, nor the Deceitfulness and Treachery of his own wicked Heart: And as for secret Thoughts, he had never taken any Notice of them; nor did he at all understand what Satan's Temptations were, or how they were to be withstood, or resisted.

But however, this Discourse of these good Women mightily affected him, and made him very desirous to hear further of these Things: And therefore he made it his Business to be going often into the Company of those People, for God had touched his Heart by their Discourse, and he could not stay away. And so intent was his Mind upon the Knowledge of these Things, that his Heart was like the Horse-leech at the Vein, still cried out, *Give, Give*, Prov. xxx. 15. And now nothing but the Revelation of the Mystery of Faith in his own Heart could satisfy him: For his whole Soul was then so fixed on Eternity, and the Things of the Kingdom of God, so far as he knew, that neither Pleasures nor Profits, Persuasions, nor Threats, could make him let go his Hold: Inasmuch that I have heard him say, That it would have been as difficult at that Time, to have taken his Mind from Heaven to Earth, as he found it often since, to get it from Earth to Heaven.

But after Divine Grace had been thus kindled in his Heart, the Devil strove hard, by diverse Winds of Temptations, to blow it out again: Causing himself to make several Objections against himself; as, *That he was cast away, and one that had no Faith, and never could have any, because he was not Elected,*

One Thing also, that was likewise a great Stumbling-Block to him, was, That the Devil was let loose at this Time. in a Sort of People that called themselves *Ranters*; and indeed they deserved that Name, giving up themselves to those filthy Uncleanesses that ought not to be named among Christians; notwithstanding which, they wrote several Books that were highly in Esteem among those who were old Professors. And among those that became *Ranters*, was that poor Man before spoken of, who had been all along Mr. *Bunyan's* intimate Companion; this Man turned one of the worst and vilest of these People, living in all Manner of Filthiness; denying there was either God, Angel, or Spirit, and laughing at all Exhortations to Sobriety; and when Mr. *Bunyan* rebuked him for it, he would laugh the more, and pretend that he had gone through all Religions, and could never alight on the right 'till then; persuading him to be of the same Opinion with him, and a Companion of his Wickedness. But God designing to make him a chosen Vessel of Honour, and an Instrument for the carrying on the Purposes of his own Glory, begat in his Heart so great an Aversion to, and loathing of those wicked Principles, that he quite left his Company, and became a greater Stranger to him afterwards, than he had been a Familiar to him before. But because several old Professors (as has been already said) seemed to approve of their Books, Mr. *Bunyan* ventured to read some of them; but not being able (as he said) to make a Judgment of them, he addressed himself to God in the following Words: *O Lord, I am a Fool, and not able to know the Truth from Error: Lord, leave me not to my own Blindness, either to approve or condemn this Doctrine: If it be of God, let me not despise it; if it be of the Devil, let me not embrace it. Lord, I lay my Soul in this Matter only at thy Foot; let me not be deceived, I humbly beseech thee.* I could not forbear inserting this Passage (which I transcribed

transcribed out his Book called *Grace Abounding*) because it shews at once both the great Sincerity, and Tenderness, and deep Humility of this holy Man, and of what an excellent Spirit he was.

But these People's Errors, and much more their wicked Practices, endeared God's Word to him exceedingly; so that now he began to look upon the Bible with new Eyes, as it were, and to read so as he never read before: At first he only took pleasure in reading the Historical Part; but now the Epistles of *Paul* were sweet and pleasant to him. Yea, so much Sweetness did he find therein, that he was scarcely ever absent (when he had an Opportunity) from reading of it, or meditating on it, still crying out to God, That he might know the Truth, and Way to Life and Glory.

But he was a long Time troubled with very sore Temptations, as I said before; and three Things there were that the Tempter made use of to try him: One great Thing was the Questioning of his Faith, having frequently such Thoughts as these injected into his Mind: *How if you want Faith? And, How can you tell that you have Faith!* This put him to great Perplexities: He knew not that he had it; and yet without it he saw he was like to perish for ever. So that tho' at first, he was willing to overlook it, yet considering of how great Moment it was for him to be satisfied therein, he was willing to put himself upon the Trial, whether he had Faith or no. But while he was considering how he should make a satisfactory Trial of this Matter, the Tempter sought again to take Advantage upon him, coming in with this Delusion, *That there was no Way for him to try whether he had Faith, but by trying to work some Miracle:* Nor wanted he Scripture to back it; for as he perverted the Scriptures when he tempted our blessed Lord, so did he also the Words of our blessed Saviour, in tempting this his Servant; urging, *Matthew xvii. 20. If ye have Faith as a Grain of Mustard Seed, ye shall say*  
unto

*unto this Mountain, remove hence to yonder Place, and it shall remove, and nothing shall be impossible to you.* The Temptation proceeded so far, that one Day Mr. Bunyan, being between *Elstow* and *Bedford*, (the Temptation being then hot upon him, to try his Faith by doing some Miracle) he was about to say to some Puddles that were then in the Horse-pod, *Be dry!* And as he was going to speak, this Thought came into his Mind, *Pray first*, that God would make you able; and when he was about to pray, he had some secret impulse that prevailed with him not to put his Faith upon that Trial; and so he continued for some Time at a great Loss, not knowing whether he had Faith or not.

Another Temptation with which he was assaulted, was, *Whether or not he was elected*: And this Temptation was strengthened with this Scripture, *It is not of him that willeth, nor of him that runneth, but of God that sheweth Mercy*, Rom. ix. 16. For by this Scripture he evidently saw, That unless God had chosen him to be a Vessel of Grace, that all he could do would be ineffectual, for the obtaining of Salvation. And therefore this was continually in his Mind, *How can you tell that you are elected? And what if you should not?* And these Questions seemed so hard, and to be of that Weight, that he knew not how to answer them. But there is nothing too hard for Divine Grace to overcome; For one Day, just as his Hope was giving up the Ghost, and that he was at the utmost Point of Despair, the following Sentence was darted into his soul, as if it had been immediately from Heaven; and fell with great Weight upon his Spirit, *Look at the Generations of old, and see, did ever any trust in God, and was confounded?* This gave him mighty Encouragement in that case, and was thus expounded to him: *Begin at the Beginning of Genesis, and read to the End of the Revelations, and see if you can find there was any that ever trusted in God and was confounded. And if none that trusted in God ever miscarried,*



*carried, then your Duty is to trust in God, and not to concern yourself about Election, which is a secret Thing.*

Another Temptation that violently assaulted him, was; *How if the Day of Grace should be past and gone?* And to aggravate this, the Tempter suggested to him, that the good People in *Bedford* (before named) being converted already, they were all that God would save in those Parts, and therefore he was come too late, for they had got the Blessing before him. This was a very cutting Thing to him, for he verily thought it might be so; And those Thoughts made him wander up and down in the Bitterness of his Spirit, bemoaning his sad Condition, and crying out, *O that I had turned sooner! O how have I trifled away my Time, till Heaven and my Soul are lost.* But after he had passed many Days in this disconsolate State, it pleased the Father of Mercies to shine upon his Soul, by the blessed Word, *Luke xiv. 23, 24. Compel them to come in, that my House may be filled: AND YET THERE IS ROOM.* The last Words gave him abundant Consolation, and were a full Answer to Satan's Suggestions, *That the Day of Grace was past.*

But this holy Man had been a great Sinner, which he always aggravated against himself on all Occasions; reckoning up, like *Paul*, his own Vileness before his Conversion: *I was mad against the Saints*, says that blessed Apostle in one Place; and in another, *I persecuted the Church of God.* So in the like Manner our worthy Mr. Bunyan, cries out of himself, *I was a Town-Sinner; I was the vilest in the Country, a Jerusalem Sinner; murdering the Son of God afresh, by my ungodly Deeds, and putting him to open Shame.* This I say, made him undergo many of the Buffetings of Satan, and the Hiding of God's Countenance for Months and Years together, still mourning as a Dove, and chattering as a Crow. And yet in this also, behold the Wisdom and Goodness of God; For by these Things Men live, and in all these Things was the  
Life

Life of his Spirit. God wonderfully fitted him by all these Temptations, to be a Support to many others that laboured under those or other Temptations. For by this Means he was one that knew how to speak a Word in Season to the weary and fainting Soul, administering to others those Comforts wherewith he himself had been comforted of God.

But to return where we left off, even to his Temptations; He was mightily buffeted by the Enemy of Souls, about effectual Calling; for that being one of the Links of that golden Chain of Salvation, mentioned by the Apostle in the Sixth of the *Romans*, *If that be left out, the whole Chain was broken*: This made him pant and breathe, and cry, with all the Longing of an enamoured Soul to Christ, to call him; for then he saw such a Beauty in a converted and called State, that he could not be contented without it: And I have heard him affirm, that at any Time, had he had the whole World, it had all gone; yea, Ten Thousand Worlds could he have purchased the Blessings of a called and converted State with them! For such were the only lovely Persons in his Eyes. But that Word of Christ, *Mark iii. 13.* stood like a brazen Wall against him, to shut him out from all the Hopes of Happiness: His Words were these: *He (Christ) went up into a Mountain, and CALLED to him WHOM HE WOULD.* This Word made him faint and fear, and yet it kindled a Fire in his Soul: That which made him fear was, lest Christ should have no liking to him, for HE CALLED WHOM HE WOULD. And God was pleased to let him lie many Months in that Condition; and then he gave him Comfort, by that Word in *Joel iii. 21.* *I will cleanse their Blood that I had not cleansed.* Encouraging him thereby still to wait upon God; and though he was not already, yet he might still be called.

About this Time he began to make his Condition known to those poor People, whose Discourse had been  
been

been the first Occasion of his real Conversion: When they had heard him, they told Mr. *Gifford*, who was the worthy Pastor of that Church, who was himself willing to be well persuaded of him, and he invited him to his own House, where he heard him converse with others about the Dealings of God with their Souls. From which he still received further Convictions, and saw more of the Deceitfulness of his own Heart.

After this, a very great Storm of Temptation fell upon him, whereof he had some Warning before, from that Scripture following of him, *Simon, Simon, when thou art converted, strengthen thy Brethren*; although then he understood not the Meaning of it. This Temptation was a Flood of blasphemous Thoughts poured in upon him, inasmuch that he questioned the very Being of God, and of his beloved Son, doubting whether there was at all in Truth a God or Christ, and whether the holy Scripture were not rather cunningly devised Fables, than the pure Word of God.

The Tempter also assaulted him with this, *How can you tell but the Turks may have as good a Scripture, to prove their Mahomet the Saviour, as we have to prove that our Jesus is?* With many, the like blasphemous Suggestions.

Under this sore Affliction and Desertion he went a great While: But when God's Time to comfort him was come, he heard one preach a Sermon on *Canticles* iv. 1. *Behold thou art fair, my Love, behold thou art fair.* But at that Time the Minister made these two Words, *My Love*, the Subject of his Sermon: From which, after he had a little opened the Text, he observed these several Conclusions:

1. That the Church, and so every sacred Soul, is Christ's Love, when loveless.
2. Christ's Love without a Cause.
3. Christ's Love when hated of the World.
4. Christ's Love when under Temptation and Desertion.
5. Christ's Love from First to Last.

The

The Sermon (though very excellent) was nothing to him: But that which most affected him, was the Application of the fourth Particular, which was, *If it be so, that the saved Soul, is Christ's Love, when under Temptations, and under Desertion, then poor tempted Soul, when thou art assaulted and afflicted with Temptations, and the Hiding of God's Face, yet still think on these two Words, My Love.* And as he was going Home, these Words came into his Thoughts again, insomuch that he said in his Heart, *What shall I get by thinking on these Words?* And this Thought had no sooner past, but these Words began to kindle on his Spirit, *Thou art my Love, Thou art my Love,* twenty Times together? and still as they ran in his Mind, they grew stronger and warmer; and began a little to revive him: But being still between Hope and Fear, he said in his Heart, *But is it true? But is it true?* ingeminating the Words. At which that Sentence darted into his Mind, *He wist not that it was true that was done unto him of the Angel,* Acts xii. 6. And then he began to give Place to the Word which made this joyful Sound within his Soul: *Thou art my Love, Thou art my Love, and nothing shall separate thee from my Love.*

Many more were his Temptations at sundry Times and on divers Occasions, but God delivered him out of them all, and at last set his Feet in large Place, filling his Soul with Joy and Gladness.

About the Year 1655 he was baptized, and admitted a Member of the Church at *Bedford*; who having had Experience of the Grace of God that was in him, and how eminently God had fitted him for the Work of the Ministry, he was earnestly desired by the Congregation, to communicate to them those Spiritual Gifts, with which God had blessed him. He at first very modestly excused himself, out of a Sense of his own *Weakness* and *Inability*; but being further pressed unto it by them, he consented; but though his Bashfulness did at first decline a public Assembly,  
and



and dispensed his Gift only in private among Friends; but it was with so much Life and Power, and so exceedingly to their Edification, that they could not but give Thanks to the Father of Mercies, for the great Grace he had bestowed upon him.

After this, when some of the Congregation were sent forth into the Country to teach, they desired Mr. *Bunyan* to go along with them, which accordingly he did; and by their Persuasions, did exercise his Gift (but still privately) among the good People where he came: Which they also received, with rejoicing at the Mercy of God shewed toward him, professing their Souls very greatly edified thereby.

Some Time after which, he was by solemn Prayer to the Lord, and Fasting, more particularly called forth, and set apart for the more public Preaching of the Word of God; which he entered upon with great Fear and Trembling, and with a deep Sense of his own Unworthiness: And God was pleased to bless and prosper the Work of his Hand, so that many Souls were every where brought to lay hold upon the Lord Jesus, by believing, and to the receiving of the Truth in the Love thereof, through his Ministry, to the Praise and Glory of God's Grace.

One remarkable instance I cannot omit, and that is, That being to preach in a Church in a Country Village (before the Restoration of King *Charles*) in *Cambridgeshire*, and the People being gathered together in the Church-yard, a *Cambridge* Scholar, and none of the soberest of them neither, enquired what the Meaning of that Concourse of People was (it being upon a Week-Day,) and being told that one *Bunyan*, a Tinker, was to preach there, he gave a Boy Two-pence to hold his Horse, saying, He was resolved to hear the Tinker prate: And so he went into the Church to hear him. But God met him there by his Ministry, so that he came out much changed, and would, by his Good-will, hear none but the Tinker

c

for

for a long Time after, he himself becoming a very eminent Preacher in that County afterwards. This Story I know to be true, having many Times discoursed with the Man, and therefore I could not but set it down as a singular Instance of the Power of God, that accompanied his Ministry.

But a powerful Ministry, being the greatest Enemy to the Devil's Kingdom, as that which plucks his Vassals out of the very Jaws of Hell, no Wonder that he rallied all his Force against Mr. *Bunyan*; for he having preached the Gospel about five Years, was apprehended at a Meeting, and carried before a Justice of Peace, who committed him to Prison, though he offered Security for his appearing at the next Sessions; his Reason for it being, because his Security would not consent to being bound up that he should preach no more to the People.

At the Sessions he was indicted for an Upholder and Maintainer of unlawful Assemblies and Conventicles, and for not conforming to the Church of *England*. Mr. *Bunyan* was a Man of a free and open Spirit, and would not dissemble to save himself, especially in his Master's Cause, and therefore frankly owned his being at a Meeting, and preaching to the People; and that he was a Dissenter from the established Worship, acknowledging (as the Apostle *Paul* had done before him) *That after the Way which they called Heresy, so worshipped he the God of his Fathers*. The Justices took this open and plain Dealing with them, for a Confession of the indictment, and sentenced him for a perpetual banishment, because he refused to conform, in Pursuance of an Act made by the then Parliament. Upon which he was again committed to Prison, where, though his Sentence of Banishment was never executed upon him, yet he was kept in Prison for Twelve Years together, bearing that tedious Imprisonment in an uncomfortable and close Prison, and sometimes under cruel and oppressive

five

five Gaolers, with that Christian Patience and Presence of Mind, as became a Minister of Jesus Christ, and such a Cause as he was engaged in, and suffered for.

But though his Enemies stirred up thereto were very many, yet were they withheld by a Divine Power from executing the Sentence of his Banishment: For God had other Work for him to do in *England*: And then his Bonds and Imprisonment, through the overruling Providence of that God, who is both wonderful in his Counsel, and excellent in Working, tending much to the Furtherance of the Gospel: and by his Suffering here, he confirmed and sealed the Truth, which before he had preached.

It was by making him a Visit in Prison, that I first saw him, and became acquainted with him; and I must profess, I could not but look upon him to be a Man of an excellent Spirit, zealous for his Master's Honour, and chearfully committing all his own Concernments unto God's Disposal. When I was there, there were above Threescore Dissenters besides himself there, taken but a little before, at a religious Meeting at *Kaistow*, in the County of *Bedford*; besides two eminent Dissenting Ministers, to wit, Mr. *Wheeler*, and Mr. *Dun*, (both very well known in *Bedfordshire*, though long since with God;) by which Means the Prison was much crouded. Yet in the midst of all that Hurry which so many New-Comers occasioned, I have heard Mr. *Bunyan* both preach and pray with that mighty Spirit of Faith and Plethory of Divine Assistance, that has made me stand and wonder.

Nor did he, while he was in Prison, spend his Time in a supine and careless Manner, or eat the Bread of Idleness, for there I have been Witness that his own Hands have ministered to his, and to his Families Necessities, making many Hundred Groce of long Tagged Thread Laces, to fill up the Vacancies of his Time, which he had learned for that Purpose, since he had been in Prison. There also I surveyed his

Library, the least and yet the best that ever I saw, consisting only of two Books, a Bible, and the Book of Martyrs. And during his Imprisonment (since I have spoke of his Library) he writ several excellent and useful Treatises; particularly, *The Holy City; Christian Behaviour; The Resurrection of the Dead; and Grace abounding to the Chief of Sinners*; with several others.

I cannot leave the Subject of his Imprisonment, till I have given the Reader a Taste of some of his Experience there. He professed he never had so great an Inlet in all his Life, into the Word of God as then. Those Scriptures that he saw nothing in before, were then in Prison made to shine upon him. Jesus Christ also was never more real and apparent to him, than then: *For there*, said he, *I have seen him and felt him indeed*: And that Word, 2 Pet. i. 16. *We have not preached unto you cunningly devised Fables*, was a blessed Word unto him there. He has sometimes been so carried up above all Fears and Temptations, that he has been able to laugh at Destruction, and to fear neither the Horse nor his Rider. There it was that God gave him sweet and precious Sights of the Forgiveness of his Sins, and of his being with Jesus in another World. Yea, here it was that he found, upon every Temptation, that God stood by him, and rebuked the Tempter.

But notwithstanding all this, he found he was a Man compassed with Infirmities, and that a Concernment for his poor Wife and Children would now and then be thrusting in, the parting from whom would be to him like the pulling off the Flesh from his Bones, for he was both a loving and tender Husband, and an indulgent Father, perhaps somewhat to a Fault; and the many Miseries, Hardships, and Wants, that his poor Family was like to meet withal, if he should be taken from them, would often come into his Mind, especially his Daughter, who was blind, which lay nearer his Heart than all the rest: And the  
Thoughts



Thoughts of her enduring Hardship, would at some Times be almost ready to break his Heart: but he found God gracious to him, even in this Particular also, greatly supporting him by these two Scriptures, *Jer. xxxix. 11. xv. 11. Leave thy fatherless Children, I will preserve them alive: And let thy widows trust in me: The Lord said, Verily it shall go well with thy Remnant: Verily I will cause the Enemy to intreat thee well in the Time of Evil.*

After this blessed Man had suffered Twelve Years Imprisonment, for the Testimony of a good Conscience, and stopt the Mouths of his greatest Enemies, by his holy, harmless, and inoffensive Conversation, it pleased God to stir up the Heart of Dr. Barlow, Bishop of *Lincoln*, to be a Means of his Deliverance; which I mention to this Bishop's Honour.

After his being at Liberty, he made it a great part of his Business to visit the Saints of God abroad, paying his Christian Acknowledgements to them, especially such whose Hearts God had drawn forth to support him under his Sufferings, preaching the Gospel where ever he came, and exhorting all, not to be afraid or ashamed of taking up the Cross of Christ, or to forsake the Assembling of themselves together, though the laws were against it, as knowing that God ought to be obeyed before Man. And for such as were under Sufferings upon that Score, he made it his particular Care to get and send Relief to them. He also took great Care to visit the Sick, and to support them both externally and internally, according to their Wants, and his Ability. And God so blessed his Ministry, and accompanied it with his special Presence, that many Souls were brought to the Acknowledgement of the Truth, as it is in Jesus.

He was also very ready and successful in reconciling the Differences that were among God's People, wherever he found them; and by that Means often saved

many Families from Ruin ; being an Ambassador of Peace in every Respect.

He would frequently look back upon former Deliverances, and blessed God of which some were exceedingly remarkable, and none more so, than that which I am now going to relate. Being a Soldier in the Parliament's Army, at the Siege of *Leicester*, in 1645, he was drawn out to stand Centinel, but another Soldier voluntarily desired to go in his room; which Mr. *Bunyan* consenting to, he went; and, as he stood Centinel there, was shot into the Head with a Musket-Bullet, and died. This was a Deliverance that Mr. *Bunyan* would often mention, but never without Thanksgiving to God.

He was a Man of a piercing Judgment, and had a great Insight into Things; as appeared in the late Reign, when *Liberty of Conscience* was so unexpectedly given by King *James II.* to Dissenters of all Persuasions. He saw it was not out of Kindness to Dissenters that they were so suddenly set at Liberty, and freed from the hard Persecutions that had so long lain so heavily upon them. He acknowledged, That *Liberty of Conscience* was good, and was every Man's Birth-Right, by a Divine Charter; but he could not believe it was then given out of a good End; and that the bright Sun-shine of the present Liberty, was but to introduce a black Cloud of Slavery upon us, when once the Designs then laying were ripe for Execution; and therefore exhorted his Congregation at *Bedford*, and others also, to make use of the *Ninevites* Remedy, to avert the impending Storm.

It was his constant Practice, when he had his Liberty, to come up once a year to *London*, and to preach in several Places there, but more particularly in *Southwark*, near the *Falcon*; and his Labours met with a general Acceptance from all his Auditors. And from *London*, he used to ride his Circuit in the Country, visiting

visiting the Saints, and strengthening their Hands, in the Ways of God.

In his Family he kept up a daily and constant Course of Prayer, Reading, and Exhortation; instructing his Children; and exhorting them to walk in the Ways of God. He had the Blessing that *Agar* prayed for, *Neither Poverty nor Riches*; but God always gave him Food convenient. I once told him of a Gentleman in *London*, a wealthy Citizen, that would take his Son *Joseph* Apprentice without Money, which might be a great Means to advance him: But he replied to me, *God did not send him to advance his Family, but to preach the Gospel.*

The last Act of his Life was a *Labour of Love and Charity*: For a young Gentleman, who was Mr. *Bunyan's* Neighbour, having fallen into the Displeasure of his Father, he desired Mr. *Bunyan* to be the Instrument of making up the Breach, which he both undertook, and happily effected. But in his Return to *London*, being overtaken with excessive Rains, and coming to his Lodgings very wet, (which was at Mr. *Straddock's*, a Grocer, at the *Star* upon *Snow-Hill*) he fell sick of a violent Fever, which he bore with much Constancy and Patience, resigned himself up to the Will of God, and desiring to be dissolved, that he might be with Christ; looking upon Life as a Delay of that Blessedness which his Soul was aspiring to, and thirsting after: And in this holy longing Frame of Spirit, after a Sickness of Ten Days, he breathed out his Soul into the Hands of his Blessed Redeemer, following his happy Pilgrim from the City of *Destruction* to the Heavenly *Jerusalem*.

A SHORT  
E L E G Y  
IN MEMORY OF  
Mr. J O H N B U N Y A N,  
Who departed this Life, *August* 17, 1688,  
and in the fifty-ninth Year of his Age.  
Written by a Friend of his, &c.

*THE Pilgrim travelling the World's vast Stage,  
At last does end his weary Pilgrimage :  
He now in pleasant Vallies does sit down,  
And for his Toil receives a glorious Crown ;  
The Storms are past, the Terrors vanish all,  
Which in his Way did so affrighting fall.  
He grieves not, sighs no more, his Race is run  
Successfully, that was so well begun.  
You'll say, He's dead : Alas, he cannot die ;  
He's only chang'd to Immortality :  
Weep not for him who has no Cause of Tears :  
Hush then your Sighs, and calm your endless Fears.  
If any Thing in Love to him is meant,  
Tread his last Steps and your own Sins repent.  
If Knowledge of Things here at all remains,  
Beyond the Grave to please him for his Pains  
And Sufferings in this World, then live upright,  
And that will be to him a grateful Sight.  
Run such a Race, as you again may meet,  
And find your Conversation far more sweet,  
When purg'd from Dross, you shall, unmix'd, possess  
The purest Essence of Eternal Bliss.*

THE



THE  
*Author's* APOLOGY  
FOR HIS  
B O O K.

*W*HEN at the first I took my Pen in Hand,  
Thus for to write, I did not understand  
That I at all should make a little Book  
In such a Mode: Nay, I had undertook  
To make another; which, when almost done,  
Before I was aware, I this begun.

*And thus it was: I writing of the Way  
And Race of Saints in this our Gospel-Day,  
Fell suddenly into an Allegory  
About their Journey, and the Way to Glory,  
In more than twenty Things which I set down;  
This done, I twenty more had in my Crown;  
And they again began to multiply,  
Like Sparks that from the Coals of Fire do fly.  
Nay, then, thought I, if that you breed so fast,  
I'll put you by yourselves, lest you at last  
Should prove ad infinitum, and eat out  
The Book that I already am about.  
Well, so I did; but yet I did not think  
To shew to all the World my Pen and Ink  
In such a Mode; I only thought to make  
I knew not what: Nor did I undertake*

xxxiv      The Author's APOLOGY.

*Thereby to please my Neighbour; no not I,  
I did it my ownself to gratify.*

*Neither did I but vacant Seasons spend  
In this my Scribble; nor did I intend  
But to divert myself in doing this,  
From worser Thoughts which make me do amiss.  
Thus I set Pen to Paper with Delight,  
And quickly had my Thoughts in Black and White.  
For having now my Method by the End,  
Still as I pull'd, it came; and so I penn'd  
It down; until it came at last to be  
For Length and Breadth the Bigness which you see.*

*Well, when I had thus put my End's together,  
I shew'd them others, that I might see whether  
They would condemn them, or them justify:  
And some said, let them live; some, let them die;  
Some said, John, print it, others said, Not so.  
Some said it might do Good, others said, No.*

*Now I was in a Streight, and did not see  
Which was the best thing to be done by me:  
At last I thought, since ye are thus divided,  
I print it will; and so the Case decided.*

*For, thought I, some I see would have it done,  
Though others in that Channel do not run:  
To prove then who advis'd for the best,  
Thus I thought fit to put it to the Test.*

*I farther thought, if now I did deny  
Those that would have it, thus to gratify;  
I did not know, but hinder them I might  
Of that which would to them be great Delight:  
For those which were not for it coming forth,  
I said to them, Offend you I am loth:*

*Yet*

The Author's APOLOGY. XXXV

*Yet since your Brethren pleased with it be,  
Forbear to judge, till you do farther see.*

*If that thou wilt not read, let it alone ;  
Some love the Meat, some love to pick a Bone.  
Yea, that I might them better moderate  
I did too with them thus expostulate.*

*May I not write in such a Style as this ?  
In such a method too and yet not miss  
My End, thy Good ? Why may it not be done ?  
Dark Clouds bring Waters, when the bright bring none,  
Yea, dark or bright, if they their Silver Drops  
Cause to descend, the Earth by yielding Crops,  
Gives Praise to both, and carpeth not at either,  
But treasures up the Fruit they yield together,  
Yea, so commixes both, that in their Fruit  
None can distinguish this from that ; they suit  
Her well when Hungry : But if she be full,  
She spews out both, and makes their Blessing null.*

*You see the Ways the Fisherman doth take  
To catch the Fish ; what Engines doth he make ?  
Behold ! How he engageth all his Wits,  
Also his Snares, Lines, Angles, Hooks, and Nets :  
Yet Fish there be, that neither Hook nor Line,  
Nor Snare, nor Net, nor Engine, can make thine ;  
They must be groped for, and be tickled too,  
Or they will not be catch'd whate'er you do.*

*How does the Fowler seek to catch the Game  
By divers Means ? All which one cannot Name ;  
His Gun, his Nets, his Lime-twigs, Light and Bell :  
He creeps, he goes, he stands : yea, who can tell  
Of all his Postures ? Yet, there's none of these  
Will make him Master of what Fowls he please.*

*Yea,*

xxxvi    The Author's APOLOGY.

*Yea, he must pipe and whistle, to catch this,  
Yet if he does so, that Bird he will miss.  
If that a Pearl may in a Toad's Head dwell,  
And may be found too in an Oyster-shell;  
If Things that promise nothing do contain  
What better is than Gold; who will disdain,  
That have an Inkling of it, there to look,  
That they may find it? Now my little Book,  
(Though void of all these Paintings that may make  
It with this or the other Man to take)  
Is not without those Things that do excel  
What do in brave, but empty Notions dwell.*

*Well, yet I am not fully satisfy'd,  
That this your Book will stand, when soundly try'd.*

*Why, what's the Matter? It is dark: What though?  
But it is feigned: What of that? I tro  
Some Men by feigned Words, as dark as mine,  
Make Truth to spangle, and its Rays to shine!  
But they want Solidness, Speak, Man, thy Mind:  
They drown the Weak, Metaphors make us blind.*

*Solidity, indeed, becomes the Pen  
Of him that writeth Things divine to Men:  
But must I needs want Solidness, because  
By Metaphors I speak? Were not God's Laws,  
His Gospel Laws, in older Times held forth  
By Types, Shadows, and Metaphors? Yet loth  
Will any sober Man be to find Fault  
With them, lest he be found for to assault  
The highest Wisdom: No, he rather stoops,  
And seeks to find out by what Pins and Loops,  
By Calves and Sheep, by Heifers and by Rams  
By Birds and Herbs, and by the Blood of Lambs,*

God



The Author's APOLOGY. xxxvii.

*God speaketh to him; and happy is he  
That finds the Light and Grace that in them be.*

*Be not too forward therefore to conclude  
That I want Solidness; that I am rude:  
All Things solid in Shew, not solid be;  
All Things in Parables despise not we,  
Lest Things most hurtful lightly we receive;  
And Things that good are, of our Souls bereave.*

*My dark and cloudy Words they do but hold  
The Truth, as Cabinets inclose the Gold.*

*The Prophets used much by Metaphors  
To set forth Truth; Yea, who so considers  
Christ, his Apostles too shall plainly see,  
That Truths to this Day in such Mantles be.*

*Am I afraid to say, that Holy Writ  
Which for its Stile and Phrase puts down all Wit,  
Is every where so full of all these Things,  
(Dark Figures, Allegories) yet there springs  
From that same Book, that lustre and those Rays  
Of Light, that turn our darkest Nights to Days.*

*Come, let my Carper to his Life now look,  
And find there darker Lines than in my Book  
He findeth any: Yea, and let him know,  
That in his best Things there are worse Lines too.*

*May we but stand before impartial Men,  
To his poor One I dare adventure ten,  
That they will take my Meaning in these Lines  
Far better than his Lyes in Silver Shrines.  
Come, Truth, although in swadling Clouts, I find,  
Informs the Judgment, rectifies the Mind;*

*Pleases*

### xxxviii The Author's APOLOGY.

*Pleases the Understanding, makes the Will  
Submit, the Memory too it doth fill  
With what doth our imagination please;  
Likewise it tends our Troubles to appease.*

*Sound Words, I know, Timothy is to use,  
And Old Wives' Fables he is to refuse:  
But yet grave Paul him no where did forbid  
The Use of Parables; in which lay hid  
That Gold, those Pearls, and precious Stones that were  
Worth digging for, and that with greatest Care.*

*Let me add one Word more. O Man of God,  
Art thou offended? Dost thou wish I had  
Put forth my matter in another Dress?  
Or, that I had in Things been more exprefs?  
To those that are my Betters, as is fit,  
Three Things let me propound, then I submit.*

*1. I find not that I am denyed the Use  
Of this my Method, so I no Abuse  
Put on the Words, Things, Readers, or be rude  
In handling Figure or Similitude,  
In Application; but all that I may,  
Seek the Advance of Truth this or that Way;  
Denied, did I say? Nay, I have Leave,  
(Examples too and that from them that have  
God better pleased by their Words or Ways,  
Than any Man that breathes now-a-days)  
Thus to exprefs my Mind, thus to declare  
Things unto thee that excellentest are.*

*2. I find that Men (as high as Trees will write  
Dialogue-wise; yet no Man doth them slight  
For writing so: Indeed if they abuse  
Truth, cursed be they, and the Craft they use*

The Author's APOLOGY. xxxix

*To that Intent ; but yet let Truth be free  
To make her Sallies upon thee and me,  
Which Way it pleases God : For who knows how  
Better than he that taught us first to plow,  
To guide our Minds and Pens for his Design ?  
And he makes base Things usher in Divine.*

*3. I find that Holy-Writ in many Places  
Hath Semblance with this Method, where the Cases  
Do call for one Thing to set forth another ;  
Use it I may then, and yet nothing smother  
Truth's golden Beams : Nay, by this Method may  
Make it cast forth it's Rays as light as Day.*

*And now, before I do put up my Pen,  
I'll shew the Profit of my Book, and then  
Commit both thee and it unto that Hand  
That pulls the strong down, and makes weak ones stand.*

*This Book it chalked out before thine Eyes  
The Man that seeks the Everlasting Prize :  
It shews you whence he comes, whither he goes ;  
'That he leaves undone ; also what he does ;  
It also shews you how he runs, and runs,  
Till he unto the Gate of Glory comes.*

*It shews you too, who set out for Life amain,  
As if the lasting Crown they would obtain :  
Here also you may see the Reason why  
They lose their Labour and like Fools do die.*

*This Book will make a Traveller of Thee,  
If by its Counsel thou wilt ruled be ;  
It will direct thee to the Holy-Land,  
If thou wilt it's directions understand :  
Yea, it will make the Slothful active be ;  
The Blind also delightful Things to see.*

*Art*

xl      The Author's APOLOGY.

*Art thou for something rare and profitable?  
Wouldest thou see a Truth within a Fable?  
Art thou forgetful? Wouldest thou remember  
From New-Year's Day to the last of December?  
Then read my Fancies, they will stick like Burs  
And may be to the Helplefs, Comforters.*

*This Book is wrote in such a Dialect,  
As may the Minds of listless Men affect:  
It seems a Novelty and yet contains  
Nothing but sound and honest Gospel-Strains.*

*Would'st thou divert thyself from Melancholy?  
Would'st thou be pleasant, yet be far from Folly?  
Would'st thou read Riddles and their Explanation?  
Or else be drowned in thy Contemplation?  
Dost thou love picking Meat? Or would'st thou see  
A Man i' the Clouds, and hear him speak to thee?  
Would'st thou be in a Dream, and yet not sleep?  
Or, would'st thou in a moment laugh and weep?  
Or, would'st thou lose thyself, and catch no Harm?  
And find thyself again without a Charm?  
Would'st thou read thyself; and read thou know'st not what,  
And yet know whether thou art blest or not,  
By reading the same Lines? O then come hither,  
And lay my Book, thy Head and Heart together.*

JOHN BUNYAN.

THE





THE

*Pilgrim's Progress :*

IN THE

SIMILITUDE

OF A

DREAM.


 I walked throughout the Wilderness of this World, I lightened on a certain Place, where was a\* \* *The Jail.* Den, and laid me down in that Place to sleep: And as I slept, I dreamed a Dream. I dreamed, and behold, *I saw a Man cloathed with Rags, standing in a certain Place, with his Face from his own House, a Book in his Hand, and a great Bur-* *Isa. lxiv. 6. Luke xiv. 33. Psal. xxxviii. 4.* *den upon his Back.* I looked, and saw him *Heb. ii. 2.* open the Book, and read therein; and as *Acts xvi. 31.* he read, he wept, and trembled, and not being able longer to contain, he brake out with a lamentable Cry, saying, *What* *+ His Outcry* *Acts ii. 37.* *shall I do?*

B

In

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

In this Plight therefore he went Home, and refrained himself as long as he could, that his Wife and Children should not perceive his Distress; but he could not be silent long, because that his Trouble increased: Wherefore at length he brake his Mind to his Wife and Children; and thus he began to talk to them: *O my dear Wife, said he, and you the Children of my Bowels, I, your dear Friend, am in myself undone, by Reason of a Burden that lieth hard upon me: Moreover, I am certainly informed,*

- *This World that \* this our City will be burned with Fire from Heaven: In which fearful Overthrow, both myself, with thee my Wife, and you my sweet Babes, shall miserably come to Ruin,*

† *He knew no except (the which † yet I see not) some Way of Way of Escape Escape may be found, whereby we may be as yet.*

*delivered.* At this his Relations were sore amazed; not for that they believed that what he had said to them was true, but because they thought some Frenzy Distemper had got into his Head; therefore it drawing towards Night, and they hoping that Sleep might settle his Brains, with all Haste they got him to Bed: But the Night was as troublesome to him as the Day; wherefore, instead of Sleeping, he spent it in Sighs and Tears. So when the Morning was come, they would know how he did; he told them *worse and worse*; he also set to talking to them again, but they began to be hardened. ‡ They also thought to drive away his Distemper by harsh and surly Carriage to him: Sometimes they would deride, sometimes they would chide, and sometimes they would quite

† *Carnal Physic for a sick soul.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

3

quite neglect him. Wherefore he began to retire himself to his Chamber, to pray for and pity them; and also to condole his own Misery: He would also walk solitarily in the Fields, sometimes reading, and sometimes praying; and thus for some Days he spent his Time.

Now I saw, upon a Time, when he was walking in the Fields, that he was (as he was wont) reading in his Book, and greatly distressed in his Mind; and as he read, he burst out, as he had done before, crying, *What shall I do to be saved?*

Acts xvi.

I saw also that he looked *this* Way, and *that* Way, as if he would run, yet he stood still, because (as I perceived) he could not tell which Way to go. I looked then, and saw a Man named *Evangelist* coming to him, and asked, *Wherefore dost thou cry?*

30. 31.

He answered, Sir, I perceive, by the Book in my Hand, that I am condemned to die, and after that to come to Judgment; and I find that I am not willing to do the first, nor able to do the second.

Heb. ix. 27.

Job xvi.

21, 22.

Ezek. xxii.

Then said *Evangelist*, Why not willing to die, since this Life is attended with so many Evils? The Man answered, Because I fear that this Burden that is upon my Back, will sink me lower than the Grave; and I shall fall into *Tophet*. And, Sir, if I be not fit to go to Prison, I am not fit to go to Judgment, and from thence to Execution; and the Thoughts of these Things make me cry.

14

Isa. xxx. 33.

B 2

Then

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Then said *Evangelist*, If this be thy Condition, Why standest thou still? He answered, Because I know not whither to go, Then he gave him a \* *Parchment Roll*, and there was written within, *Fly from the Wrath to come.*

\* *Conviction of the Necessity of Flying.*  
Matt. iii. 7.

Mat. vii. 13.

14.

Psal. cxix.

105.

2 Pet. i. 19.

† *Christ, and the Way to him cannot be found without the Word.*

Luke xiv. 26.

Gen. xix 17.

Jer. xx. 10.

*They that fly from the Wrath to come are a Gazing Stock to the World.*

The Man therefore read it, and looking upon *Evangelist* very carefully, said, Whither must I fly? Then said *Evangelist*, pointing with his Finger over a very wide Field, Do you see yonder *Wicket-Gate*? The Man said, No: Then, said the other, Do you see yonder *Shining Light*? He said, I think I do. Then, said *Evangelist*, † Keep that Light in your Eye, and go up directly thereto, so shalt thou see the Gate; at which, when thou knockest, it shall be told thee what thou shalt do. So I saw in my Dream that the Man began to run: Now he had not run far from his own Door, but his Wife and Children perceiving it, began to cry after him to return; but the Man put his Fingers in his Ears, and ran on, crying, *Life! Life! Eternal Life!* So he looked not behind him, but fled towards the Middle of the Plain.

The Neighbours also came out to † see him run, and as he ran some mocked, others threatened, and some cried after him to return; and among those that did so,

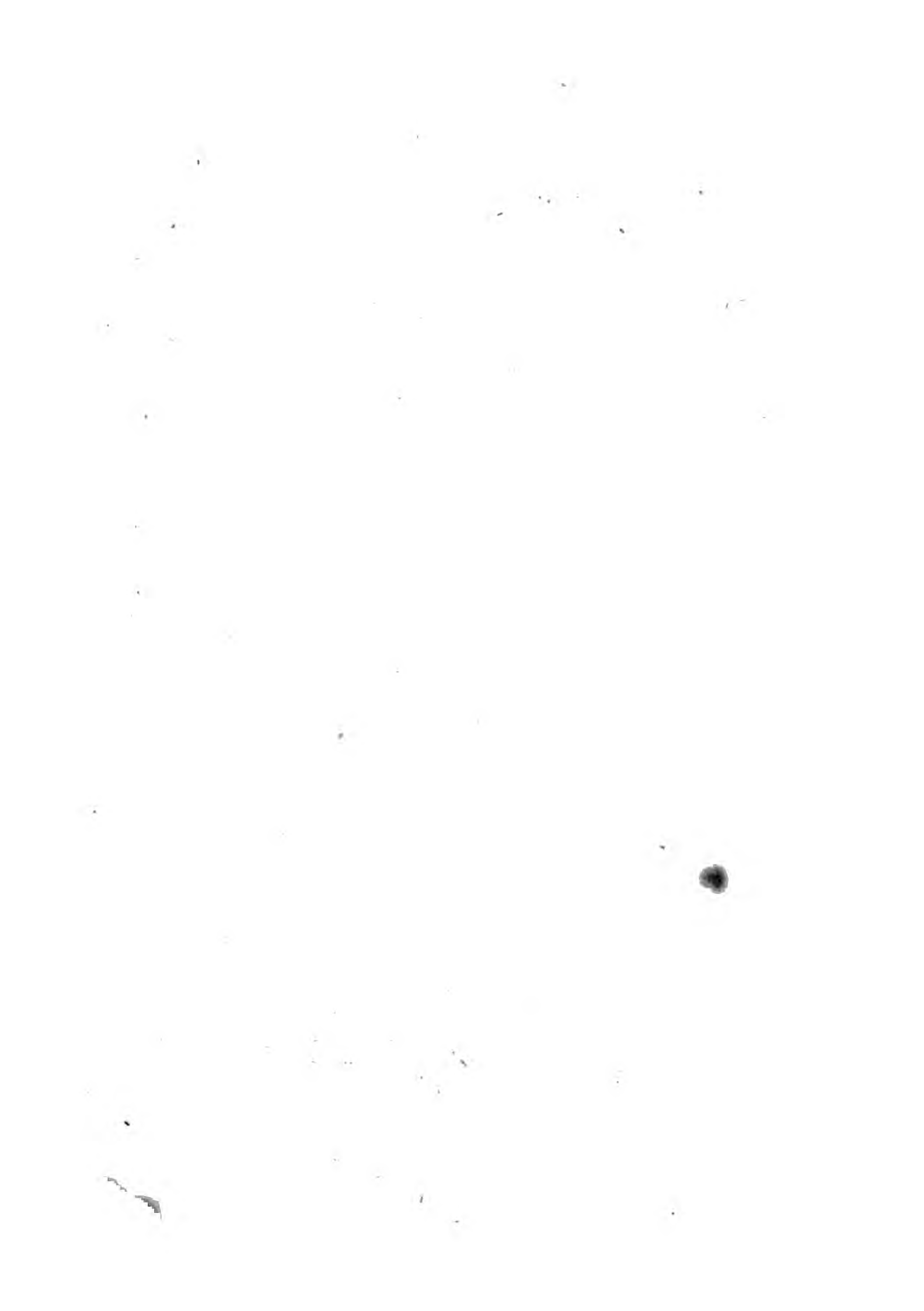
---

*Christian no sooner leaves the World, but meets  
Evangelist, who lovingly him greets  
With Tidings of another: And doth show  
Him how to mount to that from this below.*





Christian leaves the City of Destruction, and meets Evangelist.



so, there were two that were resolved to fetch him back by Force. \* The Name of \* Obſtinate the one was *Obſtinate*, and the Name of *and Pliable* the other *Pliable*. Now by this Time the *follow him.* Man was got a good Diſtance from them; but however they were reſolved to purſue him, which they did, and in a little Time they overtook him. Then ſaid the Man, Neighbours, *Wherefore are ye come?* They ſaid, To perſuade you to go back with us; but he ſaid, That can by no Means be: You dwell (ſaid he) in the City of *Deſtruction* (the Place alſo where I was born) I ſee it to be ſo: And dying there, ſooner or later, you will ſink lower than the Grave, into a Place that burns with Fire and Brimſtone: Be content, good Neighbours, and go along with me.

† What, ſaid *Obſtinate*, and leave our † Obſtinate Friends and our Comforts behind us!

‡ Yes, ſaid *Chriſtian*, (for that was his † Chriſtian. Name) becauſe that *All which you ſhall forſake*, is not worthy to be compared with a Cor. iv. 18. little of that that I am ſeeking to enjoy; and if you will go along with me, *and bold it*, you ſhall fare as I myſelf; for there where I go, is enough and to ſpare; Luke xv. 17. Come away, and prove my Words.

*Obſt.* What are the Things you ſeek, ſince you leave all the World to find them?

*Cbr.* I ſeek an *Inheritance incorruptible*, 1 Pet. i. 4. *undefiled, and that fadeth not away*: And it is laid up in Heaven, and ſafe there, to Heb. xi. 16. be beſtowed, at the Time appointed, on



## The Pilgrim's Progress.

them that diligently seek it. Read it so, if you will, in my Book.

*Obst.* Tush, said *Obstinate*, away with your Book: Will you go back with us, or no?

*Cbr.* No, not I, said the other; because  
 Luke ix. 62. I have laid my Hand to the Plough.

*Obst.* Come then, Neighbour *Pliable*, let us turn again, and go home without him: There is a Company of these crazy-headed Coxcombs, that when they take a Fancy by the End, are wiser in their own Eyes than seven Men that can render a Reason.

*Pli.* Then, said *Pliable*, do not revile; if what the good *Christian* says is true, the Things he looks after are better than our's; my Heart inclines to go with my Neighbour.

*Obst.* What! more Fools still? Be ruled by me, and go back; who knows whither such a Brain-sick Fellow will lead you? Go back, go back, and be wise.

\* Christian  
 and Obstinate  
 pull for Pliable's Soul.

Heb. ix. 17,  
 18, 19, 20,

21.  
 † Pliable consented to go with Christian.

*Cbr.* Nay, but do thou \* come with thy Neighbour *Pliable*; there are such Things to be had which I spoke of, and many more Glories besides; if you believe not me, read here in this Book, and for the Truth of what is expressed therein, behold all is confirmed by the Blood of him that made it.

*Pli.* † Well neighbour *Obstinate*, (saith *Pliable*) I begin to come to a Point; I intend to go along with this good Man, and to cast in my Lot with him; but, my good Companion, do you know the Way to this desired Place?



## The Pilgrim's Progress.

7

*Chr.* I am directed by a Man whose Name is *Evangelist*, to speed me to a little Gate that is before us, where we shall receive Instructions about the Way.

*Pli.* Come then, good Neighbour, let us be going; then they went both together.

*Obst.* And I will go back to my Place, said *Obstinate*: \* I will be no Companion of such misled fantastical Fellows.

\* *Obstinate goes railing back.*

Now I saw in my Dream, that when *Obstinate* was going back, *Christian* and *Pliable* went † talking over the Plain; and thus they began their Discourse.

† *Talk between Christian and Pliable.*

*Chr.* Come, Neighbour *Pliable*, how do you do? I am glad you are persuaded to go along with me; had even *Obstinate* himself but felt what I have felt of the Powers and Terrors of what is yet unseen, he would not thus lightly have given us the Back.

*Pli.* Come, Neighbour *Christian*, since there are none but us two here, tell me now farther, what the Things are? and how to be enjoyed, whither we are going?

*Chr.* I can ‡ better conceive of them with my Mind, than to speak of them with my Tongue: But yet since you are desirous to know, I will read of them in my Book.

‡ *God's Things unspeakable.*

*Pli.* And do you think that the Words of your Book are certainly true?

*Chr.* Yes verily, for it was made by him that cannot lye.

*Tit. i. 2.*

*Pli.* Well said, What things are they?

*Chr.* There is an endless Kingdom to be inhabited, and everlasting Life to be given us, that we may inhabit that Kingdom for ever.

*Isa. xlv. 17. John x. 27. 28, 29.*

# The Pilgrim's Progress.

Pli. *Well said; and what else?*

2 Tim. iv. 8. Cbr. There are Crowns of Glory to be  
Rev. xxii. 5. given us; and Garments that will make  
Matth. xiii. us shine like the Sun in the Firmament  
43. of Heaven.

Pli. *This is very pleasant; and what else?*

Isa. xv. 18. Cbr. There shall be no more crying,  
Rev. vii. 16. nor Sorrow; for he that is Owner of the  
17. Place will wipe all Tears from our Eyes.

Chap. xxi. 4. Pli. *And what Company shall we have there?*

Isa. vi. 2. Cbr. There we shall be with *Seraphims*  
1 Thes. iv. 16, and *Cberubims*, Creatures that will daz-  
17. Rev. v. 11. zle your Eyes to look on them: There also

we shall meet with Thousands and ten  
Thousands that have gone before us to that  
Place; none of them are hurtful, but lov-  
ing and holy, every one walking in the  
Sight of God, and standing in the Pre-  
sence with Acceptance for ever: In a

Rev. iv. 4. Word, there we shall see the Elders  
with their golden Crowns: There we shall

Chap. xiv. see the Holy Virgins with their golden

1, 2, 3, 4, 5. Harps: There we shall see Men, that  
John xii. by the World were cut in Pieces, burnt  
25. in Flames, eaten of Beasts, drowned in

the Seas, for the Love that they bare to  
the Lord of the Place; all well, and  
cloathed with Immortality, as with a  
Garment.

2 Cor. v.  
2, 3, 4.

Pli. *The hearing of this is enough to ra-  
vish one's Heart: but are these Things to be  
enjoyed? How shall we get to be Sharers  
thereof?*

Isa. lv. 12. Cbr. The Lord, the Governor of the  
John vii. 37. Country, hath recorded that in this  
Cap. vi. 37. Book, the Substance of which is, if we  
Rev. xxi. 6. be  
Chap. xxii.  
17.

be truly willing to have it, he will bestow it upon us freely.

Pli. *Well, my good Companion, glad am I to bear of these Things ; come on, let us mend our Pace.*

Chr. I cannot go so fast as I would, by Reason of this Burden that is on my Back.

Now I saw in my Dream, that just as they had ended this Talk, they drew nigh to a very \* *Miry Slough* that was in the \* *The Slough* Midst of the Plain, and they being heed- *of Despond.* less, did both fall suddenly into the Bog. The Name of the Slough was *Despond*. Here therefore they wallowed for a Time, being grievously bedaubed with Dirt ; and *Christian*, because of the Burden that was on his Back, began to sink in the Mire.

Pli. *Then said Pliable, Ah, Neighbour Christian, where are you now ?*

Chr. Truly, said *Christian*, I do not know.

Pli. At this *Pliable* began to be offended, and angrily said to his Fellow, is this the Happiness you have told me all this while of ? If we have such ill Speed at our first setting out, what may we expect betwixt this and our Journey's End ? † May † *It is not enough to be Pliable.* I get out again with my Life, you shall possess the brave Country alone for me. And with that he gave a desperate Struggle or two, and got out of the Mire on that Side of the Slough which was next his own House ; so away he went, and *Christian* saw him no more.

Wherefore *Christian* was left to tumble in the Slough of *Despond* alone ; but still he

\* Christian  
in Trouble  
seeks still to  
get farther  
from his own  
House..

he endeavoured to struggle to that Side of the Slough that was farther \* from his own House, and next to the Wicket-Gate; the which he did, but could not get out, because of the Burthen that was upon his Back: But I beheld in my Dream, that a Man came to him, whose Name was *Help*, and asked him, *What he did there?*

*Cbr.* Sir, said *Christian*, I was bid to go this Way, by a Man called *Evangelist*, who directed me also to yonder Gate, that I might escape the Wrath to come. And as I was going thither, I fell in here.

† The Promises.

*Help.* But why did not you look for the Steps?

*Cbr.* Fear followed me so hard, that I fled the next Way, and fell in.

† Help lifts him out.  
Psal. xl. 2.

*Help.* Then, said he, † give me thy Hand; so he gave him his Hand, and he drew him out, and set him upon sound Ground, and bid him go on his Way.

§ What makes the Slough of Despond.

Then I stepped to him who plucked him out, and said, Sir, wherefore, since over this Place is the Way from the City of *Destruction* to yonder Gate, is it, that this Plat is not mended, that poor Travellers might go thither with more Security? And he said unto me, This *Miry Slough* is such a Place as cannot be mended: It is the Descent whither the § Scum and Filth that attends Conviction for Sin doth continually run, and therefore it is called the *Slough of Despond*; for still as the Sinner is awakened about his lost Condition, there arise in his Soul many Fears and Doubts, and discouraging Apprehensions, which all of them get together,



ther, and settle in this Place : And this is the Reason of the Badness of this Ground.

It is not the Pleasure of the King that this Place should remain so bad ; his Labourers also have, by the Directions of his Majesty's Surveyors, been for above these sixteen hundred Years employed about *this Patch* of Ground, if perhaps it might have been mended : Yea, and to my Knowledge said he, here have been swallowed up at least twenty thousand Cart Loads ; yea, Millions of wholesome Instructions, that have at all Seasons been brought from all Places of the King's Dominions (and they that can tell, say, They are the best Materials to make good Ground of the Place) if so be it might have been mended ; but it is the *Slough of Despond* still ; and so will be when they have done what they can.

True, there are, by the Direction of the Law-giver, certain good and substantial \* Steps, placed even thro' the very Midst of this *Slough* ; but at such Time as this Place doth much spue out of its Filth, as it doth against Change of Weather, these Steps are hardly seen, or if they be, Men, through the Dizziness of their Heads, step besides ; and then they are *bemired to purpose*, notwithstanding the Steps be there ; but the Ground is good when they are once got in at the Gate.

Now I saw in my Dream, that by this Time *Pliable* was got home to his House. † So his Neighbours came to visit him ; and some of them called him *wise Man* for coming

\* The Promises of Forgiveness and Acceptance to Life by Faith in Christ.

1 Sam. xii.

† Pliable is gone Home and is visited by his Neighbours.

† His Entertainment by them at his coming Return.

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

coming back ; and some called him *Fool* for hazarding himself with *Christian*; others again did mock his *Cowardliness*; saying, *Surely, since you began to venture, I would not have been so base to have given out for a few Difficulties* : So *Pliable* sat sneaking among them. But at last he got more Confidence, and then they all turned their Tales, and began to deride poor *Christian* behind his Back. And thus much concerning *Pliable*.

\*Mr. Worldly Wiseman meets with Christian.

Now as *Christian* was walking solitarily by himself, he espied one afar off, crossing over the Field \* to meet him, and their Hap was to meet just as they were crossing the Way to each other. The Gentleman's Name that met him was Mr. *Worldly Wiseman*; he dwelt in the Town of *Carnal Policy*, a very great Town, and also hard by from whence *Christian* came. This Man then, meeting with *Christian*, and having some Knowledge of him (for *Christian*'s setting forth from the City of *Destruction*, was much noised abroad, not only in the Town where he dwelt, but also it began to be the Town-talk in some other Places) Mr. *Worldly Wiseman* therefore having some Guess of him, by beholding his laborious going, by observing his Sighs and Groans, and the like ; began thus to enter into some Talk with *Christian*.

† Talk between Mr. Worldly Wiseman and Christian.

World. † How now, good Fellow, whither away after this burdened Manner ?

Chr. A burdened Manner indeed, as ever, I think, poor Creature had ! And whereas you ask me, *Whither away* ? I tell you, Sir, I am going to yonder Wicket

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

13

ket-Gate before me; for there, as I am informed, I shall be put in a Way to be rid of my heavy Burden.

World. *Hast thou a Wife and Children?*

Chr. Yes; but I am so laden with this Burden, that I cannot take that Pleasure in them as formerly: Methinks I am as if I had none.

1 Cor. vii.

World. *Wilt thou hearken to me if I give thee Counsel?*

Chr. If it be good I will; for I stand in need of good Counsel.

World. \* *I would advise thee then, that* \* *thou with all Speed get thyself rid of thy Bur-* Mr. World-ly Wiseman's Counsel to Christian.  
*den; for thou wilt never be settled in thy Mind*  
*till then: Nor canst thou enjoy the Benefits of*  
*the Blessings which God hath bestowed upon*  
*thee, till then.*

Chr. That is that which I seek for, even to be rid of this heavy Burden; but get it off myself, I cannot: Nor is there a Man in our own Country, that can take it off my Shoulders; therefore am I going this Way, as I told you, that I may be rid of my Burden.

World. *Who bid thee go this Way to be rid of thy Burden?*

Chr. A Man that appeared to me to be a very great and honourable Person, his Name, as I remember, is Evangelist.

World. † *Beshrew him for his Counsel.* † *There is nat a more dangerous and troublesome* Mr. World-ly Wiseman condemns Evangelist's Counsel.  
*Way in the World, than is that unto which*  
*he hath directed thee; and that thou shalt find,*  
*if thou wilt be ruled by his Counsel. Thou*  
*hast met with something (as I perceive al-*  
*ready); I see the Dirt of the Slough of*  
*Despond*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Despond is upon thee; but that Slough is the Beginning of the Sorrows that do attend those that go on in that Way: Hear me, I am older than thou; thou art like to meet with, on the Way which thou goest, Wearisomeness, Painfulness, Hunger, Perils, Nakedness, Sword, Lions, Dragons, Darknes, and in a Word, Death, and what not? These Things are certainly true, having been confirmed by many Testimonies. And why should a Man so carelessly cast away himself, by giving heed to a Stranger?

*Chr.* Why, Sir, this Burden on my Back is more terrible to me, than are all these Things which you have mentioned:

\* *The Frame of the Heart of a young Christian.*

\* Nay, methinks I care not what I meet with in my Way, if so be I can also meet with Deliverance from my Burden.

*World.* How camest thou by the Burden at first?

*Chr.* By reading this Book in my Hand.

† *Mr. Worldly Wiseman does not like that Man should be serious in reading the Bible.*

*World.* † I thought so; and it has happened unto thee as to other weak Men, who, meddling with Things too high for them, do suddenly fall into thy Distractions; which Distractions do not only unman Men (as thine I perceive have done thee) but they run them upon desperate Ventures, to obtain they know not what.

*Chr.* I know what I would obtain; it is Ease for my heavy Burden.

*World.* But why wilt thou seek for Ease this Way, seeing so many Dangers attend it? especially, since (hadst thou but Patience to hear me) I could direct thee to the obtaining of what thou desirest, without the Dangers that thou in this Way wilt run



run thyself into. Yes, and the Remedy is at Hand. Besides, I will add, that instead of these Dangers, thou shalt meet with much Safety, Friendship, and Content.

Chr. *Pray, Sir, open the Secret to me.*

World. \* Why in yonder Village (the Village is named *Morality*) there dwells a Gentleman, whose Name is *Legality*, a very judicious Man, (and a Man of very good Name,) that has Skill to help Men off with such Burdens as thine is, from their Shoulders; yea, to my Knowledge, he hath done a great deal of Good this Way: And besides, he hath Skill to cure those that are somewhat crazed in their Wits with their Burden. To him, as I said, thou mayest go, and be helped presently. His House is not quite a Mile from this Place; and if he should not be at Home himself, he hath a pretty young Man to his Son, whose Name is *Civility*, that can do it (to speak on) as well as the old Gentleman himself: There, I say, thou mayest be eased of thy Burden; and if thou art not minded to go back to thy former Habitation, as indeed I would not wish thee: thou mayest send for thy Wife and Children to thee to this Village, where there are Houses now stand empty, one of which thou mayest have at a reasonable Rate: Provision is there also cheap and good, and that which will make thy Life more happy is, to be sure there thou shalt live by honest Neighbours, in Credit, and good Fashion.

\* Mr. Worldly prefers Morality before the Strait Gate.

† Now was *Christian* somewhat at a stand; but presently he concluded, If this

† Christian snared by Mr. Worldly Wiseman's

this Words.

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

this be true which this Gentleman hath said, my wisest Course is to take his Advice; and with that he thus farther spake.

*Cbr.* Sir, which is my Way to this honest Man's House?

\**Mount Sinai* *World.* Do you see yonder \* high Hill?

*Cbr.* Yes, very well.

*World.* By that Hill you must go, and the first House you come at his is.

So *Christian* turned out of his Way, to go to Mr. *Legality's* House for Help: But behold when he was got now hard by the Hill, it seemed so high, and also that Side of it that was next the Way-side, did hang so much over, that *Christian* was

† *Christian*  
*afraid that*  
*Mount Sinai*  
*would fall on*  
*his Head.*

Exod. xix. 18  
Ver. 16.  
Heb. xii.  
21.

† afraid to venture farther, lest the Hill should fall on his Head; wherefore there he stood still, and knew not what to do.

Also his Burden now seemed heavier to him than while he was in his Way. There

came also Flashes of Fire out of the Hill, that made *Christian* afraid that he should

be burned: Here therefore he sweat and did quake for Fear. And now he began

to be sorry that he had taken Mr. *Worldly Wiseman's* Counsel; and with that he saw

† *Evangelist*  
*findeth Chris-*  
*tian under*  
*Mount Sinai,*  
*and looketh se-*  
*verely upon*  
*him.*

† *Evangelist* coming to meet him; at the Sight also of whom he began to blush for Shame. So *Evangelist* drew nearer and nearer, and coming up to him, he looked upon him with a severe and dreadful Countenance, and thus began to reason with *Christian*.

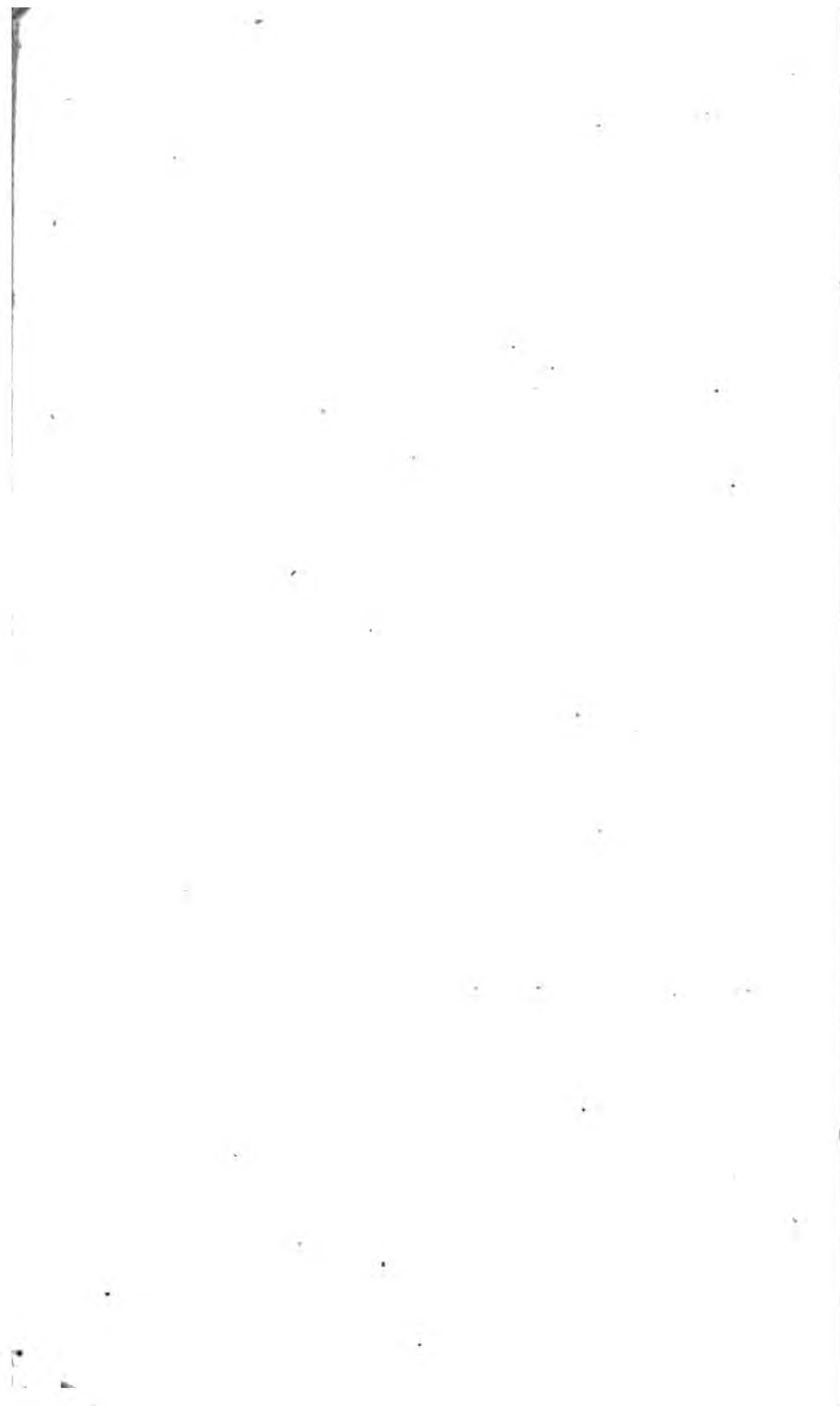
§ *Evangelist*  
*reasons afresh*  
*with Chris-*  
*tian.*

*Evan.* § What dost thou here *Christian*? said he: At which Words, *Christian* knew not what to answer; wherefore at present he





Christian lost his way, and meets Evangelist a second time .





he stood speechless before him. Then said *Evangelist* farther, Art not thou the Man that I found crying without the Walls of the City of *Destruction*?

*Chr.* Yes, dear Sir, I am the Man.

*Evang.* Did not I direct thee the Way to the little Wicket-gate?

*Chr.* Yes, dear Sir, said *Christian*.

*Evang.* How is it then that thou art so quickly turned aside? For thou art now out of the Way.

*Chr.* I met with a Gentleman so soon as I had got over the *Slough of Despond*, who persuaded me, that I might, in the *Village* before me, find a Man that could take off my Burden.

*Evang.* What was he?

*Chr.* He looked like a Gentleman, and talked much to me, and got me at last to yield; so I came hither: But when I beheld this Hill, and how it hangs over the Way, I suddenly made a Stand, lest it should fall on my Head.

*Evang.* What said that Gentleman to you?

*Chr.* Why, he asked me whither I was going? And I told him.

*Evang.* And what said he then?

*Chr.* He asked me if I had a Family? And I told him: But, said I, I am so loaded with the Burden that is on my Back, that I cannot take Pleasure in them as formerly.

*Evang.* And what said he then?

*Chr.* He bid me with Speed get rid of my Burden; and I told him it was Ease that I sought: And, said I, I am therefore going to yonder Gate, to receive farther Direction how I might get to the Place of  
C Deliverance.

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

**Deliverance.** So he said that he would show me a better Way, and short, not so attended with Difficulties, as the Way, Sir, that you set me in; which Way, said he, will direct you to a Gentleman's House that has skill to take off these Burdens: So I believed him, and turned out of *that* Way into *this*, if happily I might be soon eased of my Burden. But when I came to this Place, and beheld Things as they are, I stopped for fear (as I said) of Danger: But I know now not what to do.

Heb. xii.  
25.

\* Evangelist  
convince  
Christian  
of his Error.  
Chap. x.  
38.

*Evangelist.* Then (said *Evangelist*) stand still a little, that I may show thee the Words of God. So he stood trembling. Then said *Evangelist*. See that you refuse not him that speaketh; for if they escaped not, who refused him that spake on Earth, \* much more shall not we escape, if we turn away from him that speaketh from Heaven. He said moreover, Now the Just shall live by Faith; but if any Man draws back, my Soul shall have no Pleasure in him. He also did thus apply them. Thou art the Man that art running into this Misery: Thou hast begun to reject the Counsel of the Most High, and to draw back thy Foot from the Way of Peace, even almost to the hazarding of thy Perdition.

Then *Christian* fell down at his Feet as dead, crying, *Woe is me, for I am undone!*  
At

---

*When Christians unto carnal Men give Ear,  
Out of their Way they go, and pay for't dear.  
For Master Worldly Wiseman can but show  
A Saint the Way to Bondage and to Woe.*

At the Sight of which, *Evangelist* caught him by the right Hand, saying, All Manner of Sin and Blasphemies shall be forgiven unto Men; be not faithless, but believing: Then did *Christian* again a little revive, and stood up trembling, as at first, before *Evangelist*.

Then *Evangelist* proceeded, saying, Give more earnest Heed to the Things that I shall tell thee of. I will now show thee who it was that deluded thee, and who it was also to whom he sent thee. \*The Man that met thee is one *Worldly Wiseman*, and rightly he is so called; partly because he savoureth only of the Doctrine of this World; (therefore he always goes to the Town of *Morality* to Church;) and partly because he loveth that Doctrine best; for it saveth him from the Cross; and because he is of this carnal Temper, therefore he seeketh to prevent my Ways, though right. †Now there are three Things in this Man's Counsel, that thou must utterly abhor:

\* Mr. Worldly Wiseman described by *Evangelist*.  
1 John iv. 5.

Col. vi. 12.

† *Evangelist* discovers the Deceit of Mr. Worldly Wiseman.

1. His turning thee out of the Way.
2. His labouring to render the Cross odious to thee.
3. And his setting thy Feet in that Way that leadeth unto the Administration of Death.

*First.* Thou must abhor his turning thee out of the Way; yea, and thine own consenting thereto; because this is to reject the Counsel of God for the Sake of the Counsel of a *Worldly Wiseman*. The Lord says, Strive to enter in at the Strait Gate,

† Luke xii. the 24.

Mat. vii. 13 the Gate to which I send thee; for strait is  
 14. the Gate that leadeth unto Life, and few  
 there be that find it. From this little Wick-  
 et-gate, and from the Way thereto, hath  
 this wicked Man turned thee, to the bring-  
 ing of thee almost to Destruction: Hate,  
 therefore, his turning thee out of the Way,  
 and abhor thyself for hearkening to him.

Secondly, Thou must abhor his labour-  
 ing to render the Cross odious unto thee;  
 Heb. xi. 25 for thou art to *prefer it before the Treasures*  
 26. *in Egypt*: Besides, the King of Glory hath  
 Mark viii. told thee, *That he that will save his Life*  
 35. *shall lose it*: And, *he that comes after him,*  
 John xii. 25. *and hates not his Father and Mother, and*  
 Mat. x. 39. *Wife, and Children, and Brethren, and Sisters,*  
 Luke xiv. 26 *yea, and his own Life also, he cannot be my*  
*Disciple.* I say therefore, for a Man to la-  
 bour to persuade thee that that shall be  
 thy Death, without which, the Truth hath  
 said thou canst not have eternal Life:  
 This Doctrine thou must abhor.

Thirdly, Thou must hate his setting of  
 thy Feet in the Way that leadeth to the  
 Ministration of Death. And for this thou  
 must consider to whom he sent thee, and  
 also how unable that Person was to deliver  
 thee from thy Burden.

Gal. iv. 21 He to whom thou was sent for Ease,  
 22, 23, 24. being by Name *Legality*, is the Son of the  
 25, 26, 27. Bond-woman which now is, and is in  
 \* *The Bond-* Myſtery this Mount \* *Sinai*, which thou  
*Woman.* haſt feared will fall on thy Head. Now  
 if he with her Children are in Bondage,  
 How



How canst thou expect by them to be made free? This *Legality*, therefore, is not able to set thee free from thy Burden. No Man was as yet ever rid of his Burden by him; no, nor ever is like to be: Ye cannot be justified by the Works of the Law, for by the Deeds of the Law no Man living can be rid of his Burden: Therefore Mr. *Worldly Wiseman* is an Alien, and Mr. *Legality* a Cheat: As for his Son *Civility*, notwithstanding his *smiling* Looks, he is but an Hypocrite, and cannot help thee. Believe me, there is nothing in all this Noise that thou hast heard of these sottish Men, but a Design to beguile thee of thy Salvation, by turning thee from the Way in which I had set thee. After this, *Evangelist* called aloud to the Heavens for Confirmation of what he had said; and with that there came Words and Fire out of the Mountain under which poor *Christian* stood, that made the Hair of his Flesh stand up: The Words were thus pronounced, *As many as are of Gal. iii. 10. the Works of the Law, are under the Curse; for it is written, cursed is every one that continueth not in all Things which are written in the Book of the Law to do them.*

Now *Christian* looked for nothing but Death, and began to cry out lamentably; even cursing the Time in which he met with Mr. *Worldly Wiseman*; still calling himself a thousand Fools for hearkening to his Counsel: He also was greatly ashamed to think that this Gentleman's Arguments, flowing only from the Flesh, should have the Prevalency with him as to cause him to for-

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

take the right way. This done, he applied himself again to *Evangelist* in Words and Sense as follow :

\* Christian  
*enquires if he  
may yet be  
happy.*

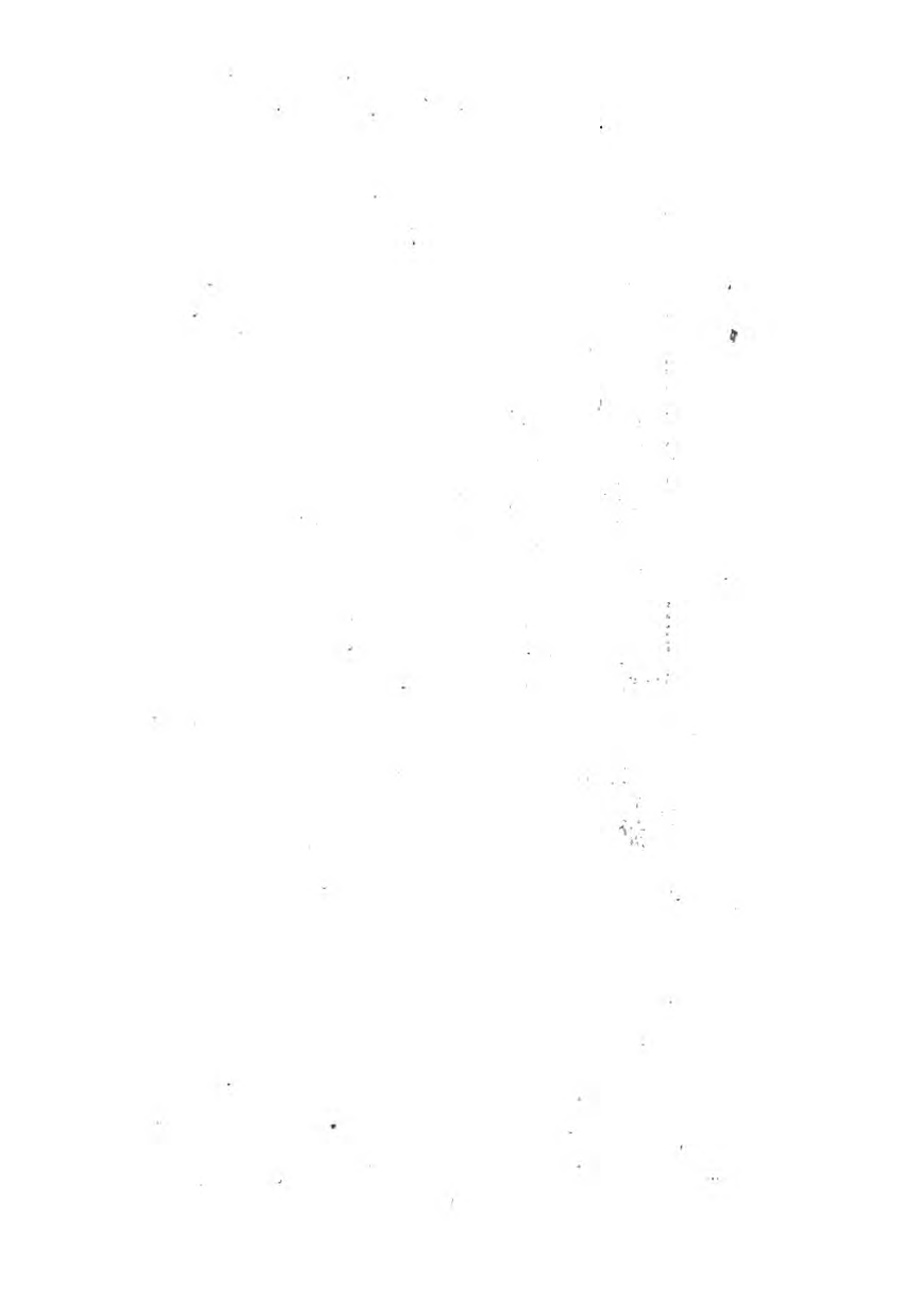
*Cbr.* Sir, \* What think you? Is there Hopes? May I now go back, and go up to the *Wicket-gate*? Shall I not be abandoned for this, and sent back from thence ashamed? I am sorry I have hearkened to this Man's Counsel; but may my Sin be forgiven?

+ Evangelist  
*comforts him.*

Pfalm ii. *last  
Verse.*

*Evang.* Then said *Evangelist* to him, Thy Sin is very great, for by it thou hast committed two Evils; thou hast forsaken the Way that is good, to tread in forbidden Paths; † yet will the Man at the Gate receive thee, for he has *Good-will* for Men; only, said he, take heed that thou turn not aside again, lest thou perish from the Way, when his Wrath is kindled but a little. Then did *Christian* address himself to go back; and *Evangelist*, after he had kissed him, gave him one Smile, and bid him God speed: So he went on with Haste, neither spake he to any man by the Way; nor if any asked him, would he vouchsafe them an Answer. He went like one that was all the while treading on forbidden Ground, and could by no Means think himself safe, till again he was got into the Way which he left to follow Mr. *Worldly Wiseman's* Counsel: So in Process of Time *Christian* got up to the Gate. Now over the Gate there was written, *Knock, and it shall be opened unto you.*

Mat. vii. 8







Christian enters the Wicket Gate.



He knocked therefore more than once or twice, saying,

*May I now enter here? Will he within  
Open to sorry me, though I have been  
An undeserving Rebel? Then shall I  
Not fail to sing his lasting Praise on high.*

At last there came a grave Person to the Gate, named *Goodwill*, who asked, Who was there; and whence he came, and what he would have?

*Cbr.* Here is a poor burdened Sinner. I come from the City of *Destruction*, but am going to Mount *Zion*, that I may be delivered from the Wrath to come; I would therefore, Sir, since I am informed that by this Gate is the Way thither, know if you are willing to let me in.

*Goodwill.* \* I am willing with all my Heart, said he; and with that he opened the Gate. \* The Gate will be opened to broken hearted Sinners.

So when *Christian* was stepping in, the other gave him a Pull: Then said *Christian*, what Means that? The other told him, A little Distance from this Gate, there is erected a strong Castle, of which † *Beelzebub* is the Captain; from thence both he, and them that are with him, shoot Arrows at those that come up to the Gate, if happily they may die before they can enter in, † Satan envies those that enter the trait Gate.

C 4

Then

---

*He that would enter in, must first without  
Stand knocking at the Gate, nor need we doubt  
That is a Knocker, but to enter in,  
For God can love him, and forgive his Sin.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Then said *Christian*, \* I rejoice and tremble. So when he was got in, the Man of the Gate asked him who directed him thither?

*Chr. Evangelist* † bid me come hither and knock, as I did, and he said, that you, Sir, would tell me what I must do.

*Goodwill*. An open Door is before thee, and no Man can shut it.

*Chr.* Now I begin to reap the Benefits of my Hazards.

*Goodwill*. But how is it that you come alone?

*Chr.* Because none of my Neighbours saw their Danger, as I saw mine.

*Goodwill*. Did any of them know of your coming?

*Chr.* Yes, my Wife and Children saw me at the first, and called after me to turn again: Also some of my Neighbours stood crying and calling after me to return; but I put my Fingers in my Ears, and so came on my Way.

*Goodwill*. But did none of them follow you to persuade you to go back?

*Chr.* Yes, both *Obstinate* and *Pliable*: But when they saw that they could not prevail, *Obstinate* went railing back, but *Pliable* came with me a little Way.

*Goodwill*. But why did he not come through?

*Chr.* We indeed came both together, until we came to the *Slough of Despond*, into the which we also suddenly fell. And then was my Neighbour *Pliable* discouraged, and would not adventure farther,

ther. \* Wherefore, getting out again on *that Side* next to his own House, he told me, I should possess the brave Country alone for him: So he went *his Way*, and I came *mine*. He after *Obstinate*, and I to this Gate.

\* A Man may have Company when he sets out for Heaven, and yet go thither alone.

*Goodwill*. Then said *Goodwill*, Alas! poor Man, is the Cœlestial Glory of so small Esteem with him, that he counteth it not worth running the Hazard of a few Difficulties to obtain it?

*Chr*. Truly said *Christian*, I have said the Truth of *Pliable*, and if I should also say all the Truth of myself, it will appear there is † no Difference betwixt him and myself. 'Tis true, he went back to his own House, but I also turned aside to go in the Way of Death, being persuaded thereto by the carnal Argument of one *Mr. Worldly Wiseman*.

† Christian accuseth himself before the Man at the Gate.

*Goodwill*. Oh! did he light upon you? What, he would have had you sought for Ease at the Hands of *Mr. Legality*; they are both of them very Cheats; but did you take his Council.

*Chr*. Yes, as far as I durst; I went to find out *Mr. Legality*, until I thought that the Mountain that stands by his House would have fallen upon my Head; wherefore there I was forced to stop.

*Goodwill*. That Mountain has been the Death of many, and will be the Death of many more: It is well you escaped being dashed in Pieces by it.

*Chr*.

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

*Chr.* Why truly I do not know what had become of me there, had not *Evan-gelist* happily met me again as I was musing in the Midst of my *Dumps*: But it was God's Mercy that he came to me again, for else I had never come hither, But now I am come, such a one as I am, more fit indeed for Death by that Mountain, than thus to stand talking with my Lord: But oh! what a Favour is this to me, that yet I am admitted Entrance here!

\* Christian is comforted again.  
John vi. 37.

† Christian directed yet on his Way.  
14.

‡ Christian afraid of losing his Way.

Mat. vii.

§ Christian weary of his burden.

*Goodwill.* \* We make no Objections against any, notwithstanding all that they have done before they came hither. They in no wise are cast out; and therefore, good *Christian*, come a little Way with me, and I will teach thee about the Way thou must go. † Look before thee; dost thou see this narrow Way? *THAT* is the Way thou must go. It was cast up by the Patriarchs, Prophets, Christ and his Apostles, and it is as straight as a Rule can make it: This is the Way thou must go.

*Chr.* But, said *Christian*, ‡ are there no Turnings nor Windings, by which a Stranger may lose his Way?

*Goodwill.* Yes, there are many Ways *BUTT* down upon this; and they are crooked and wide: But *thus* thou mayest distinguish the right from the wrong, *the* right only being straight and narrow.

Then I saw in my Dream, That *Christian* § asked him farther, If he could not help him off with the Burden that was upon his Back? For as yet he had  
not



not got rid thereof, nor could he by any Means get it off without Help.

He told him, as to thy Burden, be content to bear it, until thou comest to the Place of \* Deliverance; for there it will fall from thy Back of itself.

Then *Christian* began to girt up his Loins, and to address himself to his Journey. So the other told him, That by that he was gone some Distance from the Gate, he would come at the House of the *Interpreter*, at whose Door he should knock, and he would shew him excellent Things. Then *Christian* took his Leave of his Friend, and he again bid him God speed.

Then he went on till he came at the House of the † *Interpreter*, where he knock-  
ed over and over; at last one came to the Door, and asked, Who was there?

*Cbr.* Sir, here is a Traveller, who was bid by an acquaintance of the good Man of this House, to call here for my Profit; I would therefore speak with the Master of the House: So he called for the Master of the House; who after a little Time came to *Christian*, and asked him what he would have?

*Cbr.* Sir, said *Christian*, I am a Man that am come from the City of *Destruction*, and am going to the Mount *Zion*; and I was told by the Man that stands at the Gate, at the Head of this Way, that if I called here, you would shew me excellent Things, such as would be a Help to me in my Journey.

*Inter.*

\* There is no Deliverance from the Guilt and Burden of Sin, but by the Death and Blood of Christ.

† Christian comes to the House of the Interpreter.

\* He is entertained.

† Illumination.

‡ Christian sees a grave Picture.

§ The Fashion of the Picture.

1 Cor. iv.

Gal. iv. 19.

|| The Meaning of the Picture.

¶ Why he shewed him the Picture first.

*Inter.* Then said the *Interpreter*, \* Come in; I will shew thee that which will be profitable to thee. So he commanded his Man † to light the Candle, and bid *Christian* follow him: So he had him into a private Room, and bid his Man open a Door; the which when he had done, ‡ *Christian* saw the Picture of a very grave Person hang up against the Wall; and this was the Fashion of it, § It had Eyes lifted up to Heaven, the best of Books in his Hand, the Law of Truth was written upon his Lips, the World was behind his Back; it stood as if it pleaded with Men, and a Crown of Gold did hang over it's Head.

*Chr.* Then said *Christian*, what meaneth this?

*Inter.* The Man whose Picture this is, is one of a Thousand; he can beget Children, ¶ travel in Birth with Children, and nurse them himself when they are born, And whereas thou seest him with his Eyes lift up to Heaven, the best of Books in his Hand, and the Law of Truth written on his Lips; it is to shew thee, that his Work is to know and unfold dark things to Sinners; even as also thou || seest him stand as if he pleaded with Men; and whereas thou seest the World as cast behind him, and that a Crown hangs over his Head; that is to shew thee, that slighting and despising the Things that are present, for the Love that he hath to his Master's Service, he is sure in the World that comes next, to have Glory for his Reward. Now, said the *Interpreter*, I have shewed thee this Picture first, because ¶ the Man whose

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

29

whose Picture this is, is the only Man whom the Lord of the Place whither thou art going, hath authorised to be thy Guide in all difficult Places thou mayest meet with in the Way: Wherefore take good heed to what I have shewed thee, and bear well in thy Mind what thou hast seen; lest in thy Journey thou meet with some that pretend to lead thee right, but their Way goes down to Death.

Then he took him by the Hand, and led him into a very large *Parlour* that was full of Dust, because never swept; the which after he had reviewed a little while, the *Interpreter* called for a Man to sweep: Now, when he began to sweep, the Dust began abundantly to fly about, that *Christian* had almost therewith been choaked. Then said the *Interpreter* to a *Damsel* that stood by, bring hither the Water, and sprinkle the Room; the which when she had done, it was swept and cleansed with Pleasure.

*Chr.* Then said Christian, What means this?

*Inter.* The *Interpreter* answered, This *Parlour* is the Heart of a Man that was never sanctified by the sweet Grace of the Gospel: The *Dust* is his Original Sin, and Inward Corruptions that have defiled the whole Man. He that began to sweep at first is the *Law*; but she that brought Water, and did sprinkle it, is the *Gospel*. Now whereas thou sawest that as soon as the first began to sweep, the Dust did so fly about, that the Room by him could not be cleansed, but that thou wast almost choaked

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Rom. vii. 6.  
1 Cor. xv.  
56.  
Rom. v. 20.

choaked therewith ; this is to shew thee, that the Law, instead of cleansing the Heart (by its working) from Sin, doth revive, put Strength into, and increase it in the Soul, even as it doth discover and forbid it, for it doth not give Power to subdue it.

Again, as thou sawest the *Damsel* sprinkle the Room with Water, upon which it was cleansed with Pleasure, this is to shew thee, that when the Gospel comes in the sweet and precious Influences thereof to the Heart, then, I say, even as thou sawest the *Damsel* lay the Dust by sprinkling the Floor with Water, so is Sin vanquished and subdued, and the Soul made clean, through the Faith of it, and consequently fit for the King of Glory to inhabit.

John xv. 2.  
Ephes. v. 26.  
Acts xv. 9.  
Rom. xvi. 25,  
26. John xv.  
13.

\* He shewed  
him Passion  
and Patience.  
Passion will  
have it now.

I saw, moreover, in my Dream, That the *Interpreter* took him by the Hand, and had him into a little Room, where sat two little Children, each one in his Chair.

\* The Name of the eldest was *Passion*, and the Name of the other *Patience*. *Passion* seemed to be much discontented, but *Patience* was very quiet. Then *Christian* asked, What is the Reason of the Discontent of *Passion*? The *Interpreter* answered, the Governor of them would have him stay for his best Things, 'till the Beginning of the next Year; but he will have all now: † But *Patience* is willing to wait.

† Patience  
for waiting

† Passion  
hath his De-  
sire.

Then I saw that one came to † *Passion* and brought him a Bag of Treasure, and poured it down at his Feet; the which he took up and rejoiced therein, and withal laughed



laughed *Patience* to scorn. But I beheld but a While, and he had \* lavished all \* away, and had nothing left him but Rags. *And quickly lavishes all away.*

*Cbr.* Then said *Christian* to the *Interpreter*, † Expound this Matter more fully to me. *† The Matter expounded.*

*Inter.* So he said, These two Lads are Figures; *Passion* of the Men of this World, and *Patience* of the Men of that which is to come; For as here thou seest, *Passion* will have all now, this Year; that is to say, in this World; so are the Men of this World: They must have all their good Things now, they cannot stay till next Year, that is, until the next World, for their Portion of Good. That Proverb, ‡ *A Bird in the Hand is worth two in the Bush*, ‡ *The World-ly Man for a Bird in the Hand.* is of more Authority with them, than are all the Divine Testimonies of the Good of the World to come. But as thou sawest, that he had quickly lavished all away, and had presently left him nothing but Rags; so will it be with all such Men at the End of this World.

*Cbr.* Then said *Christian*, Now I see that *Patience* has the best § Wisdom, and that upon many Accounts. 1. Because he stays for the best Things. 2. And also because he will have the Glory of his when the other has nothing but Rags. *§ Patience had the best Wisdom.*

*Inter.* Nay, you may add another, to-wit, the Glory of the next World will never wear out; but these are suddenly gone. Therefore *Passion* had not so much Reason to laugh at *Patience*, because he had his good Things first, as *Patience* will have to

\* *Things that are first must give Place, but Things that are last are lasting.* to laugh at *Passion*, \* because he had his best Things *last*; for *first* must give Place to *last*, because *last* must have its Time to come; but *last* gives Place to nothing; for there is not another to succeed: He therefore that hath his Portion *first*, must needs have a Time to spend it; but he that has his Portion *last*, must have it lastingly;

Luke 16.

† *Dives had his good Things first,*

Therefore it is said of † *Dives*, *In thy Life time thou receivedst thy good Things, and likewise Lazarus evil Things; but now he is comforted, and thou art tormented.*

*Cbr.* Then I perceive it is not best to covet Things that are now, but to wait for Things to come.

Cor. iv. 18.

‡ *The first Things are but Temporal.*

*Inter.* You say Truth: ‡ *For the Things that are seen are Temporal; but the Things that are not seen, Eternal: but though this be so, yet since Things present, and our fleshly Appetite are such near Neighbours one to another; and again, because Things to come, and Carnal Sense, are such Strangers one to another: Therefore it is, that the first of these so suddenly fall into Amity, and that Distance is so continually between the second.*

Then I saw in my Dream, that the *Interpreter* took *Christian* by the Hand, and led him into a Place where was a Fire burning against a Wall, and one standing by it, always casting much Water upon it, to quench it; yet did the Fire burn higher and hotter.

Then said *Christian*, What means this?

The *Interpreter* answered, This Fire is the Work of Grace that is wrought in the Heart; he that casts Water upon it, to extinguish

tinguish and put it out, is the *Devil*: But in that thou seest the Fire notwithstanding burn higher and hotter, thou shalt also see the Reason of that. So he had him about to the Backside of the Wall, where he saw a Man with a Vessel of Oil in his Hand, of the which he did also continually cast (but secretly) into the Fire.

Then said *Christian*, What means this?

The *Interpreter* answered, This is *Christ*, who continually with the Oil of his Grace maintains the Work already begun in the Heart: By the Means of which, notwithstanding what the Devil can do, the Souls of his People prove gracious still. Cor. xii. 9<sup>a</sup> And in that thou sawest, that the Man stood behind the Wall to maintain the Fire; this is to teach thee, That it is hard for the Tempted to see how this Work of Grace is maintained in the Soul.

I saw also, that the *Interpreter* took him again by the Hand, and let him into a pleasant Place, where was built a stately Palace, beautiful to behold; at the Sight of which *Christian* was greatly delighted; he saw also upon the Top therefore certain Persons walking, who were cloathed all in Gold.

Then said *Christian*, May we go in thither?

Then the *Interpreter* took him and led him up towards the Door of the Palace; and behold, at the Door stood a great Company of Men, as desirous to go in, but durst not. There also sat a Man at a little Distance from the Door, at a Table Side with a Book, and his Inkhorn before him, to take the Name of him that

D

should

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

+ *The Vali-  
ant Man.*

Acts xiv.  
22.

should enter therein: He saw also, that in the Door-way stood many Men in Armour to keep it, being resolved to do to the Men that would enter, what Hurt and Mischief they could. Now was *Christian*, somewhat in Amaze: At last, when every Man started back for fear of the armed Men, *Christian* saw a Man of a very stout Countenance, come up to the Man that sat there to write, saying, † *Set down my Name Sir*; the which when he had done, he saw the Man draw his Sword, and put an Helmet upon his Head, and rush toward the Door upon the armed Men, who laid upon him with deadly Force; But the Man, not at all discouraged, fell to cutting and hacking most fiercely. So after he had received, and given many Wounds to those that attempted to keep him out, he cut his Way through them all, and pressed forward into the Palace; at which there was a pleasant Voice heard from those that were within, even of those that walked upon the Top of the Palace, saying,

*Come in, come in;  
Eternal Glory thou shalt win.*

So he went in, and was cloathed with such Garments as they. Then *Christian* smiled, and said, I think verily I know the Meaning of this.

Now, said *Christian*, let me go hence. Nay, stay (said the *Interpreter*) till I have shewed thee a little more, and after that thou shalt go on thy Way. So he took  
him



him by the Hand again, and led him into a very dark Room, where there sat a Man in an *Iron Cage*.

Now the Man, to look on, seemed very sad; he sat with his Eyes looking down to the Ground, his Hands folded together, and he sighed as if he would break his Heart. Then said *Christian*, What means this? At which the *Interpreter* bid him talk with the Man.

\* Despair  
like an Iron  
Cage.

Then said *Christian* to the Man, What art thou? The Man answered, I am what I was not once.

*Chr.* What wast thou once?

*Man.* The Man said, I was once a fair and flourishing Professor, both in mine *Luke viii.* own Eyes, and also the Eyes of others: <sup>13.</sup> I once was, as I thought, fair for the *Cœlestial City*, and had then even Joy at the Thoughts that I should get thither.

*Chr.* Well, but what art thou now?

*Man.* I am now a Man of *Despair*, and shut up in it, as in *this Iron Cage*. I cannot get out; O now I cannot.

*Chr.* But how camest thou in this Condition?

*Man.* I left off to watch, and be sober; I laid the Reins upon the Neck of my Lusts; I sinned against the Light of the Word, and the Goodness of God: I have grieved the Spirit, and he is gone; I tempted the Devil, and he is come to me; I have provoked God to Anger, and he has left me; I have so hardened my Heart that I cannot repent.

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Then said *Christian* to the *Interpreter*,  
But is there no Hope for such a Man as  
this? Ask him, said the *Interpreter*.

*Chr.* Then said *Christian*, Is there no  
Hope, but you must be kept in the Iron  
Cage of Despair.

*Man.* No, none at all.

*Chr.* Why? The Son of the Blessed is  
very pitiful.

Heb. vi.

6.

Luke xix.

14.

Heb. x. 28.

29.

*Man.* I have crucified him to myself  
afresh; I have despised his Person, I have  
despised his Righteousness, I have counted  
his Blood an unholy Thing, I have done  
Despite to the Spirit of Grace: There-  
fore I shut myself out of all the Promises;  
and there now remains to me nothing but  
Threatenings, dreadful Threatnings, fear-  
ful Threatnings of certain Judgment and  
fiery Indignation, which shall devour me  
as an Adversary.

*Chr.* For what did you bring yourself  
into this Condition?

*Man.* For the Lusts, Pleasures, and  
Profits of this World; in the Enjoyment  
of which, I did then promise myself much  
Delight: But now every one of those  
Things also bite me, and gnaw me, like a  
burning Worm.

*Chr.* But canst thou not repent and  
turn?

*Man.* God hath denied me Repentance.  
His Word gives me no Encouragement to  
believe; yea, himself hath shut me up in  
this Iron Cage: Nor can all the Men in  
the World let me out. O Eternity! Eter-  
nity! How shall I grapple with the Misery  
that I must meet with in Eternity?

*Inter.*

*Inter.* Then said the *Interpreter* to *Christian*, Let this Man's Misery be remembered by thee, and be an everlasting Caution to thee.

*Chr.* Well said *Christian*, this is fearful ! God help me to watch and be sober, and to pray that I may shun the Cause of this Man's Misery. Sir, is it not Time for me to go on my Way now ?

*Inter.* Tarry till I shall shew thee one Thing more, and then thou shalt go on thy Way.

So he took *Christian* by the Hand again, and led him into a Chamber, where there was one rising out of Bed ; and as he put on his Raiment, he shook and trembled. Then said *Christian*, Why doth this Man thus tremble ? The *Interpreter* then bid him to tell *Christian* the Reasons of his so doing : So he began and said, This Night as I was in my Sleep, I dreamed, and behold the Heavens grew exceeding black : Also it thundered and lightened in most fearful wise, that it put me into an Agony. So I looked up in my Dream, and saw the Clouds racked at an unusual Rate ; upon which I heard a great Sound of a Trumpet, and saw also a Man sit upon a Cloud, attended with the Thousands of Heaven : They were all in flaming Fire, also the Heavens were in a burning Flame. I heard then a Voice, saying, Arise, ye Dead, and come to Judgment ; and with that the Rocks rent, the Graves opened, and the Dead, that were therein, came forth ; some of them were exceeding glad, and looked upward ; and some sought to hide them-

1 Cor. xv.  
1 Thess. iv.  
Jude xv.  
John v. 28.  
2 Thess. i. 8.  
Rev. xx. 11,  
12, 13, 14.  
Isa. xxvi. 21.  
Mich. vii.  
16, 17.  
Psalm v. 1.  
2, 3.

selves under the Mountains : Then I saw  
 the Man that sat upon the Cloud, open the  
 Book, and bid the World draw near. Yet  
 there was, by reason of a fierce Flame  
 which issued out and came before him, a  
 convenient Distance betwixt him and them  
 as betwixt the Judge and the Prisoners at  
 the Bar. I heard it also proclaimed to  
 them that attended on the Man that sat  
 on the Cloud, *Gather together the Tares,*  
*the Chaff and Stubble, and cast them into the*  
*burning Lake* ; and with that the bottom-  
 less Pit opened, just whereabout I stood :  
 Out of the Mouth of which there came,  
 in an abundant Manner, Smoak, and  
 Coals of Fire, with hideous Noises. It  
 was also said to the same Persons, *Ga-*  
*ther my Wheat into the Garner*. And with  
 that I saw many caught up and carried  
 away into the Clouds, but I was left be-  
 hind. I also sought to hide myself, but I  
 could not, for the Man that sat upon the  
 Cloud still kept his Eye upon me : My  
 Sins also came into my Mind ; and my  
 Conscience did accuse me on every Side.  
 Upon this I awaked from my Sleep.

Mal. iii. 2, 3.  
 Dan. vii. 9,  
 10.

Mark iii.  
 13.  
 Chap. xiv.  
 30.  
 Mal. iv. 1.

Luke iii.  
 17,  
 1 Theff. vii.  
 16, 17.

Rom. ii. 14,  
 15.

*Chr.* But what was it that made you so  
 afraid of this Sight ?

*Man.* Why, I thought that the Day of  
 Judgment was come, and that I was not  
 ready for it ; But this frightened me the most,  
 that the Angels gathered up several, and  
 left me behind ; also the Pit of Hell open-  
 ed her Mouth just where I stood. My  
 Conscience too afflicted me ; and, as I  
 thought, the Judge had always his Eyes  
 upon



upon me, shewing Indignation in his Countenance.

Then said the *Interpreter* to *Christian*,  
Hast thou considered all these Things ?

*Chr.* Yes, and they put me in *Hope* and *Fear*.

*Inter.* Well keep all Things so in thy Mind, that they may be as a *Goad* in thy Sides, prick thee forward in the Way thou must go. Then *Christian* began to gird up his Loins, and to address himself to his Journey. Then said the *Interpreter*, The *Comforter* be always with thee, good *Christian*, to guide thee in the Way that leads to the City. So *Christian* went on his Way, saying,

*Here I have seen Things rare and profitable,  
Things pleasant, dreadful Things to make me  
stable*

*In what I have begun to take in Hand ;  
Then let me think on them, and understand  
Wherefore they shew'd me where, and let me be  
Thankful, O good Interpreter, to thee,*

Now I saw in my Dream, That the Highway up which *Christian* was to go, was fenced on either Side with a Wall, and that Wall was called *Salvation*. Up this Way therefore did burdened *Christian* run, but not without great Difficulty, because of the Load on his Back. Isa. xxvi. 1.

He ran thus till he came at a Place somewhat ascending, and upon that Place stood a *Cross*, and a little below, in the Bottom, a Sepulchre. So I saw in my Dream,

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

That just as *Christian* came up with the Cross, his Burden loosed from off his Shoulders, and fell from off his Back, and began to tumble, and so continued to do, till it came to the Mouth of the Sepulchre; where it fell in, and I saw it no more.

*When God releases us of our Guilt and Burden, we are as those that leap for Joy.*

Then was *Christian* glad and lightsome, and said with a merry Heart, *He hath given me Rest by his Sorrow, and Life by his Death.*

Then he stood still a while to look and wonder; for it was very surprizing to him, that the Sight of the Cross should thus ease him of his Burden. He looked therefore, and looked again, even till the Springs that were in his Head sent the

Zech. xii. 10.

Waters down his Cheeks. Now, as he stood looking and weeping, behold three Shining ones came to him and saluted him, with *Peace be to thee*; so the first said to him

Mar. ii. 2.

*Thy Sins be forgiven thee*; the second

Zech. iii. 4.

*stript him of his Rags*, and cloathed him with Change of Raiment; the third also

Ephes. i. 13.

*set a Mark on his Forehead*, and gave him a Roll, with a Seal upon it, which he bid him look on as he ran, and that he should give it in at the Cœlestial Gate; so they went their Way. Then *Christian* gave three Leaps for Joy, and went on Singing;

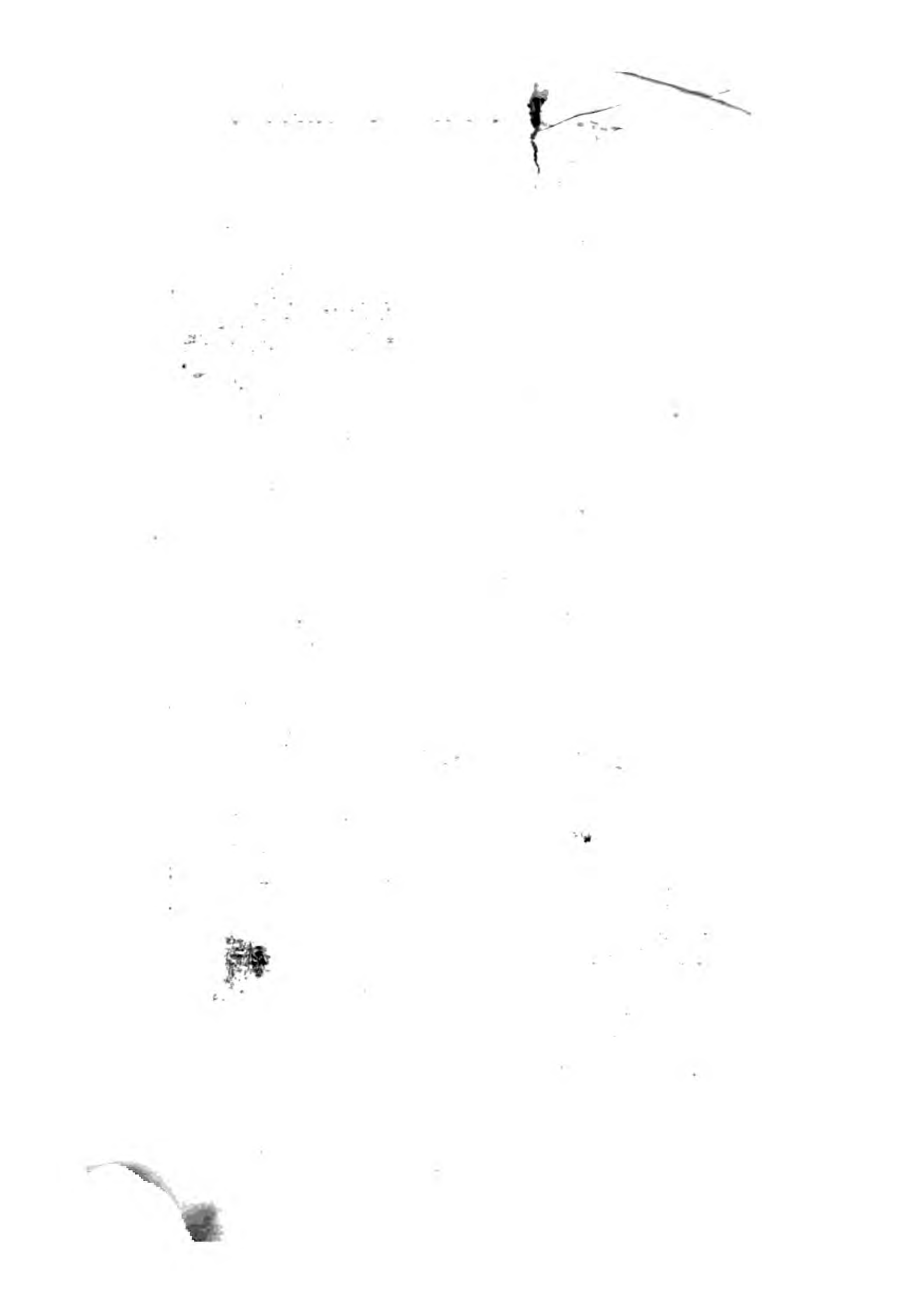
*A Christian can sing though alone when God doth give him the Joy of his Heart.*

*Thus far did I come laden with my Sin;  
Nor could aught ease the Grief that I was in,  
'Till I came hither: What a Place is this!  
Must here be the Beginning of my Bliss?*





Christian comes to the Cross, and is eased of his Burden.





## The Pilgrim's Progress.

41

*Must here the Burden fall from off my Back?  
Must here the Strings that bind it to me crack?  
Blest Cross! blest Sepulchre! blest rather be  
The Man that there was put to Shame for me!*

I saw then in my Dream, that he went on *thus*, even until he came at the Bottom, where he saw, a little out of the Way, three Men fast asleep, with Fetters upon their Heels. The Name of the one was \* Simple, another Sloth, and the third Pre-  
*sumption.*

\* Simple  
Sloth and  
Presumption.

Christian then seeing them lie in this Case, went to them, if peradventure he might awake them; and cried, You are like them that sleep on the Top of a Mast, for the Dead Sea is under you, <sup>Prov. xiii. 24.</sup> a Gulph that hath no Bottom: Awake, therefore, and come away; be willing also, and I will help you off with your Irons. He also told them, if he that go- <sup>1 Pet. v. 8.</sup> eth about like a roaring Lion, comes by, you will certainly become a Prey to his Teeth. With that they looked upon him, and began to reply in this Sort: † Simple † <sup>There is no</sup> said, I see no Danger: Sloth said, Yet a little <sup>Persuasion</sup> more Sleep: And Presumption said, Every <sup>will do, if</sup> Tub must stand upon his own Bottom. And <sup>God openeth</sup> so they lay down to sleep again, and Chri- <sup>not the Eyes.</sup> stian went on his Way.

Yet

---

*Who's this? The Pilgrim. How! 'Tis very true.  
Old Things are pass'd away; All's become New.  
Strange! He's another Man, upon my Word;  
They be fine Feathers that make a fine Bird.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Yet was he troubled to think, that Men in that Danger, should so little esteem the Kindness of him that so freely offered to help them, both by the awakening of them, counselling of them, and proffering to help them off with their Irons. And as he was troubled thereabout, he espied two Men come tumbling over the Wall, on the left Hand of the narrow Way; and they made up apace to him. The Name of the one was *Formality*, and the Name of the other *Hypocrisy*. So, as I said, they drew up unto him, who thus entered with them into Discourse.

• Christian  
talketh with  
them.

*Chr.* \* Gentlemen, Whence came you, and whither go you?

*Form.* and *Hyp.* We were born in the Land of *Vain-Glory*, and are going for Praise to Mount *Zion*.

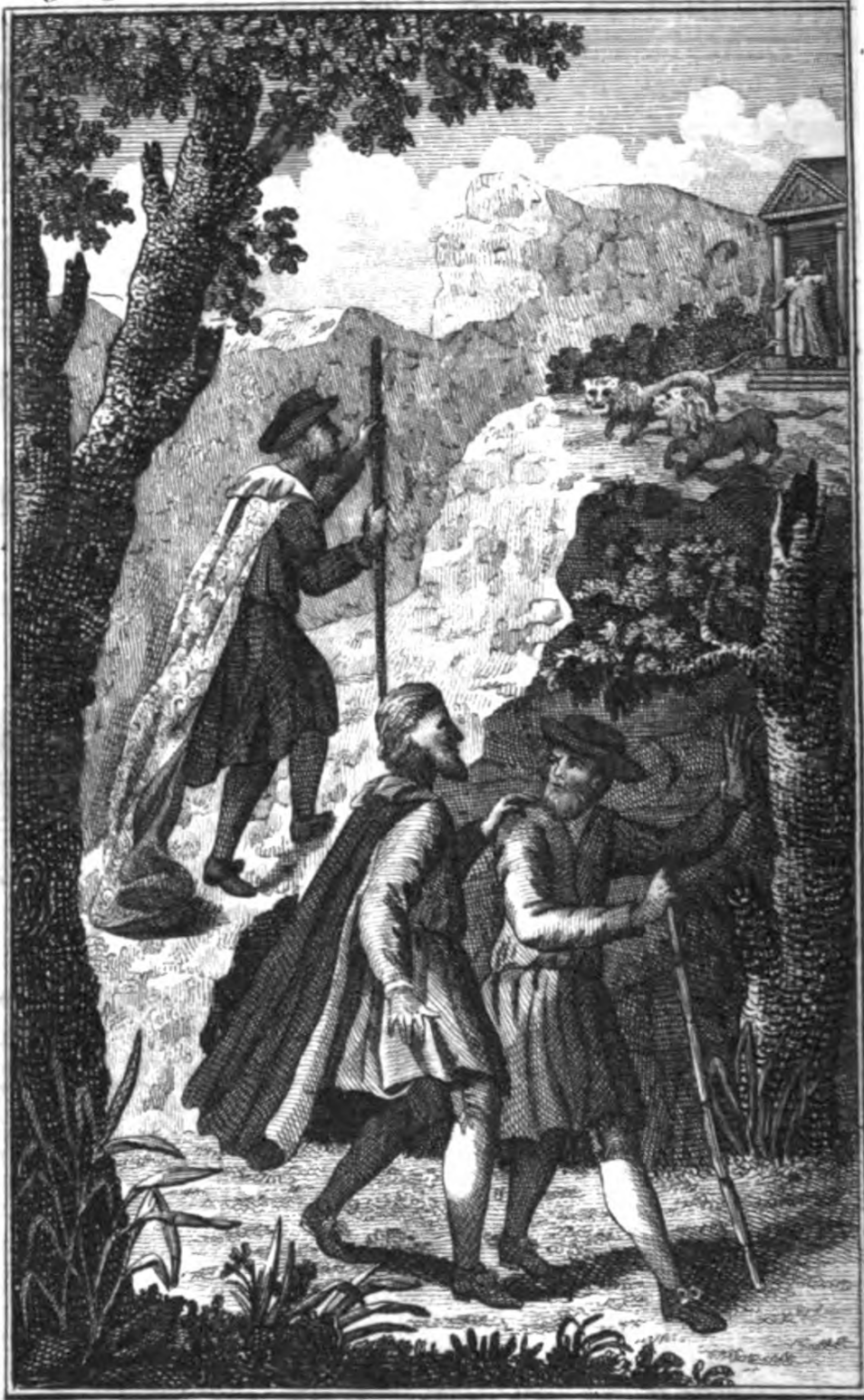
*Chr.* Why came you not in at the Gate which standeth at the Beginning of the Way? Know you not that it is written,  
John x. i. That *he that cometh not in by the Door, but climbeth up some other Way, the same is a Thief and a Robber?*

*Form.* and *Hyp.* They said, That to go to the Gate for Entrance, was by all their Countrymen counted too far about; and therefore the usual Way was to make a short Cut of it, and to climb over the Wall, as they had done.

*Chr.* But will it not be counted a Trespas against the Lord of the City, whither we are bound, thus to violate his revealed Will?

*Form.*





**Mistrust and Timorous leave Christian.**



*Form. and Hyp.* They told him, \* That \* *They that*  
as for that, he needed not to trouble his *come into the*  
**Head** thereabout; for what they did, they *Way, and not*  
had *Custom* for, and could produce, if need *by the Door,*  
were, Testimony that would witness it, for *think that*  
more than a thousand Years. *they can say*  
*something in*

*Chr.* But said *Christian*, will your Prac- *Vindication of*  
tice stand a Trial at Law? *their own*  
*Practice.*

*Form. and Hyp.* They told him, That  
*Custom*, it being of so long standing as  
above a thousand Years, would doubtless  
now be admitted as a Thing legal by an  
impartial Judge: And besides, *say they*, if  
we get into the Way, what's Matter which  
Way we get in? If we are in, we are in:  
Thou art but in the Way, who, as we  
perceive, came in at the Gate; and we  
are also in the Way, that came tumbling  
over the Wall: Wherein now is thy Con-  
dition better than ours?

*Chr.* I walk by the *Rule* of my Master,  
you walk by the rude Working of your  
Fancies. You are counted Thieves already  
by the Lord of the Way, therefore I doubt  
you will not be found true Men at the  
End of the Way. You come in by your-  
selves without his Direction; and shall go  
out by yourselves, without his Mercy.

To this they made him but little An-  
swer; only they bid him look to himself.  
Then I saw that they went on every  
Man in his Way, without much Confer-  
ence one with another; save that these  
two Men told *Christian*, That as to *Laws*  
and *Ordinances*, they doubted not but they  
should as conscientiously do them as he.  
Therefore, said they, we see not wherein  
thou

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

thou differest from us, but by the *Coat* that is on thy Back, which was, as we trow, given thee by some of thy Neighbours, to hide the Shame of thy Nakedness.

Gal. i. 16.

\* Christian  
has got his  
Lord's Coat  
on his Back,  
and is comforted there-  
with:  
He is comforted also with  
his Mark and  
his Roll.

*Cbr.* By Laws and Ordinances you will not be saved, since you came not in by the Door. And as for this *Coat* that is on my Back, it was given me by the Lord of the Place whither I go; and that, as you say, to cover my Nakedness with. And I take it as a Token of Kindness to me; for I had nothing but Rags before; and besides, \* thus I comfort myself as I go: Surely, think I, when I come to the Gate of the City, the Lord thereof will know me for Good, since I have his *Coat* on my Back! a *Coat* that he gave me freely in the Day that he stript me of my Rags. I have moreover a Mark in my Forehead, of which perhaps you have taken no Notice, which one of my Lord's most intimate Associates fixed there in the Day that my Burden fell off my Shoulders. I will tell you, moreover, that I had then given me a Roll sealed, to comfort me by reading, as I go on the Way; I was also bid to give it in at the Cœlestial Gate, in Token of my certain going in after it; all which Things I doubt you want, and want them, because you came not in at the Gate.

To these Things they gave him no Answer, only they looked upon each other and *laughed*. Then I saw that they went on all, save that *Christian* kept before, who had no more Talk but † with himself, and that sometimes sighingly, and sometimes

† Christian  
has Talk with  
himself.

times comfortably : Also he would be often reading in the Roll, that one of the Shining ones gave him, by which he was refreshed.

I beheld then, that they all went on till they came to the Foot of the Hill \* *Difficulty*, at the Bottom of which was a Spring. There was also in the same Places two other Ways besides that which came strait from the Gate ; one turned to the Left Hand, and the other to the Right, at the Bottom of the Hill, but the narrow Way lay right up the Hill, and the Name of the going up the Side of the Hill is called *Difficulty*. *Christian* now went to the Spring, and drank thereof to refresh himself, and then began to go up the Hill, saying :

\* *He comes to the Hill Difficulty.*

*Isa. xlix. 10*

*The Hill, tho' high, I covet to ascend,  
The Difficulty will not me offend.  
For I perceive the Way to Life lies here :  
Come pluck up, Hearts, let's neither faint  
nor fear ;  
Better, tho' difficult, the right Way to go,  
Than Wrong, tho' easy, where the End is  
Woe.*

The other two also came to the Foot of the Hill ; but when they saw that the Hill was

---

*Difficult is behind, Fear is before,  
Tho' he's got on the Hill, the Lions roar.  
A Christian Man is never long at Ease ;  
When one Fright's gone, another doth him seize.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

was steep and high; and that there were two other Ways to go; and supposing also that these two Ways might meet again with that up which *Christian* went, on the other Side of the Hill, Therefore they were resolved to go in those Ways. Now the Name of one of those Ways was *Danger*, and the Name of the other *De-*

*\*The Danger of turning out of the Way.* *struction.* So the \* one took the Way which is called *Danger*, which led him into a great Wood, and the other took directly up the Way to *Destruction*, which led him into a wide Field full of dark Mountains, where he stumbled and fell, and rose no more.

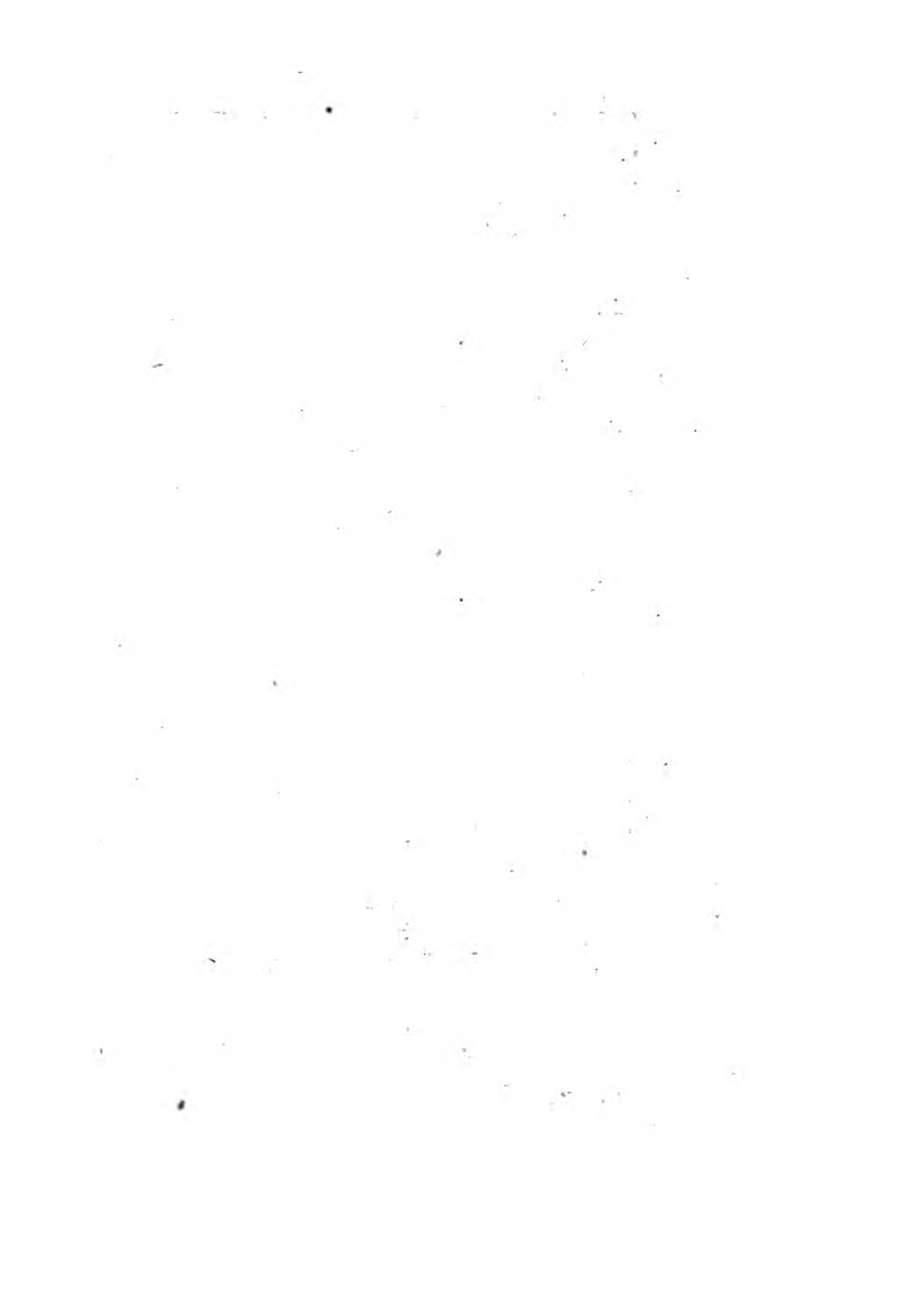
I looked then after *Christian*, to see him go up the Hill, where I perceived he fell from running to going, and from going to clambering upon his Hands and his Knees, because of the Steepness of the Place. Now about the Midway to the Top of the Hill, was a pleasant † *Arbour*, made by the Lord of the Hill, for the refreshing of weary Travellers; thither therefore *Christian* got, where also he sat down to rest him: Then he pulled his Roll out of his Bosom, and read therein to his Comfort; he also now began afresh to take a Review of the Coat or Garment that was given him, as he stood by the Cross. Thus pleasing himself awhile, he at last fell into a Slumber, and thence into a fast Sleep, which detained him in that Place until it was almost Night; and in his Sleep ‡ his Roll fell out of his Hand. Now as he was sleeping, there came one to him, and awakened him, saying, *Go to the Ant, thou Sluggard;*

† *A Word of Grace.*

‡ *He that sleeps is a Loser.*

Prov. vi. 6.





*Here Christian slept and drept his roll.*



Christian ascends the Hill Difficulty.

gard; consider her Ways, and be wise: And with that *Christian* suddenly started up, and sped him on his Way, and went apace till he came to the Top of the Hill.

Now when he was got up to the Top of the Hill, there came two Men running to meet him amain; the Name of the one was \* *Timorous*, and of the other *Mistrust*: \* *Christian meets with Timorous and Mistrust.* To whom *Christian* said, Sirs, what is the Matter you run the wrong Way? *Timorous* answered, That they were going to the City of *Zion*, and had got up that difficult Place: But, said he, the farther we go, the more Danger we meet with; wherefore we turned, and are going back again.

Yes, said *Mistrust*, for just before us lie a Couple of Lions in the Way; (whether sleeping or waking we know not;) and we could not think, if we came within Reach, but they would presently pull us in Pieces.

*Chr.* Then said *Christian*, You make me afraid: But whither shall I flee to be safe? If I go back to my own Country, that is prepared for Fire and Brimstone, and I shall certainly perish there: If I can get to the Coelestial City, I am sure to be in Safety there; † I must venture; † *Christian shakes off Fear.* to go back is nothing but Death; to go forward is Fear of Death, and Life everlasting beyond it: I will yet go forward. So *Mistrust* and *Timorous* ran down the Hill, and *Christian* went on his Way. But thinking again of what he had heard from the Men, he felt in his Bosom for his Roll, that he might read therein, and be

\* Christian missed his Roll wherein he used to take Comfort.

† He is perplexed for his Roll.

† Christian bewails his foolish sleeping. Rev. ii.

2.

2 Theff. v. 7, 8.

be comforted; but he felt, and found \* it not. Then was *Christian* in great Distress, and knew not what to do; for he wanted that which used to relieve him; and that which should have been his Pass into the *Cœlestial City*. Here therefore he began to be much † perplexed, and knew not what to do; at last he bethought himself that he had slept in the *Arbour* that is on the Side of the Hill; and falling down upon his Knees, he asked God Forgiveness for that his foolish Fact, and then went back to look for his Roll. But all the Way he went back, who can sufficiently set forth the Sorrow of *Christian's* Heart? Sometimes he sighed, sometimes he wept, and oftentimes he chid himself for being so foolish to fall asleep in that Place which was erected only for a little Refreshment for his Weariness. Thus therefore he went back, carefully looking on this Side and on that all the Way as he went, if happily he might find the Roll that had been his Comfort so many Times in his Journey. He went thus till he came again in Sight of the *Arbour* where he sat and slept; but that Sight renewed his † Sorrow the more, by bringing again, even afresh, his Evil of sleeping into his Mind. Thus therefore he now went on bewailing his sinful Sleep, saying, O *wretched Man that I am!* that I should sleep in the Day-time! That I should sleep in the Midst of Difficulty! that I should so indulge the Flesh, as to use that Rest for Ease to my Flesh, which the LORD of the Hill hath erected only for the Relief



lief of the Spirits of Pilgrims ! How many Steps have I took in vain ! (Thus it happened to *Israel*, for their Sin they were sent back again by the Way of the Red Sea) and I am made to tread those Steps with Sorrow, which I might have trod with Delight, had it not been for this sinful Sleep. How far might I have been on my Way by this Time ! I am made to tread those Steps thrice over, which I needed not to have trod but once : Yea, now also I am like to be benighted, for the Day is almost spent : O that I had not slept ! Now by this Time he was come to the *Arbour* again, where for a while he sat down and wept ; but at last (as Providence would have it) looking sorrowfully down under the Settle, there he

• espied his Roll ; the which he with \* Christian  
 Trembling and Hastē caught up and put *findeth his*  
 into his Bosom. But who can tell how *Roll where*  
*he lost it.* joyful this Man was, when he had gotten his Roll again ? For this Roll was the Assurance of his Life, and Acceptance at the desired Haven. Therefore he laid it up in his Bosom, gave God Thanks for directing his Eye to the Place where it lay, and with Joy and Tears betook himself again to his Journey. But, O how nimbly now did he go up the rest of the Hill ! Yet before he got up, the Sun went down upon *Christian* : and this made him again recall the Vanity of his Sleeping to his Remembrance ; and thus he again began to condole with himself : O thou sinful Sleep ! how for thy Sake am I like to be benighted in my Journey ! I must

E walk

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

walk without the Sun, Darkneſs muſt cover the Path of my Feet, and I muſt hear the Noiſe of doleful Creatures, becauſe of my ſinful Sleep: Now alſo he remembered the Story that *Miſtruſt* and *Timorous* told him of, how they were frightened with the Sight of the Lions. Then ſaid *Chriſtian* to himſelf again, Theſe Beaſts range in the Night for their Prey, and if they ſhould meet with me in the Dark, how ſhould I ſhift them? How ſhould I eſcape being by them torn in Pieces? Thus he went on his Way; but while he was thus bewailing his unhappy Miſcarriage, he liſt up his Eyes, and behold there was a very ſtately Palace before him, the Name of which was *Beautiful*, and it ſtood juſt by the Highway Side.

So I ſaw in my Dream, that he made Haſte and went forward, that, if poſſible, he might get Lodging there. Now before he had gone far, he entered into a very narrow Paſſage, which was about a Furlong off the Porter's Lodge, and looking very narrowly before him as he went, he eſpied two Lions in the Way. Now thought he, I ſee the Danger that *Miſtruſt* and *Timorous* were driven back by. (The Lions were chained, but he ſaw not the Chains.) Then he was afraid, and thought alſo himſelf to go back after them, for he thought nothing but Death was before him: But the Porter at the Lodge, whoſe Name is *Watchful*, perceiving that *Chriſtian* made a Halt, as if he would go back, cried unto him, ſaying, Is thy Strength ſo ſmall? Fear not the Lions,

Mark xiii.

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

51

for they are chained, and are placed there for Trial of Faith, where it is, and for Discovery of those that have none: Keep in the Midst of the Path, and no Hurt shall come unto thee.

Then I saw that he went on Trembling for Fear of the Lions; but taking good Heed to the Direction of the Porter, he heard them roar, but they did him no Harm. Then he clapt his Hands, and went on till he came and stood before the Gate where the Porter was. Then said *Christian* to the Porter, Sir, What House is this? And may I lodge here to Night? The Porter answered, This House was built by the Lord of the Hill, and he built it for the Relief and Security of Pilgrims. The Porter also asked whence he was, and whither he was going?

*Chr.* I am come from the City of *Destruction*, and am going to Mount *Zion*; but because the Sun is now set, I desire, if I may, to lodge here to Night?

*Porter.* What is your Name?

*Chr.* My Name is now *Christian*, but my Name at the first was *Graceless*: I came of the Race of *Japheth*, whom God will persuade to dwell in the Tents of *Shem*. Gen. ix. 27.

*Porter.* But how doth it happen that you came so late? The sun is set.

*Chr.* I had been here sooner, but that, wretched Man that I am, I slept in the *Arbour* that stands on the Hill-side! Nay, I had, notwithstanding that, been here much sooner, but that in my Sleep, I lost my

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Evidence, and came without it to the Brow of the Hill, and then feeling for it, and finding it not, I was forced, with Sorrow of Heart, to go back to the Place where I slept my Sleep, where I found it, and now I am come.

*Porter.* Well, I will call out one of the Virgins of this Place, who will (if she likes your Talk) bring you in to the rest of the Family, according to the Rules of the House. So *Watchful* the *Porter* rang a Bell, at the Sound of which came out of the Door of the House a grave and beautiful Damsel, named *Discretion*, and asked, why she was called ?

The *Porter* answered, This Man is in a Journey from the City of *Destruction* to Mount *Zion*, but being weary and benighted, he asked me if he might lodge here to night : So I told him I would call for thee, who, after Discourse had with him, mayest do as seemeth thee good, even according to the Law of the House.

Then she asked him, whence he was, and whither he was going ? And he told her. She asked him also, how he got into the Way ? And he told her. Then she asked him, what he had seen and met with in the Way ? And he told her. And at last she asked his Name ? So he said, It is *Christian* ; and I have so much the more Desire to lodge here to Night, because by what I perceive, this Place was built by the Lord of the Hill, for the Relief and Security of Pilgrims ; so she smiled, but the Water stood in her Eyes ; and after a little Pause, she said, I will call forth





The Palace called Beautiful, and Christian afraid of the Lions.



two or three more of my Family. So she ran to the Door, and called out *Prudence*, *Piety*, and *Charity*, who after a little more Discourse with him, had him into the Family; and many of them meeting him at the Threshold of the House, said, Come in, thou blessed of the Lord; this House was built by the Lord of the Hill, on Purpose to entertain such Pilgrims in. Then he bowed his Head, and followed them into the House: So when he was come in, and sat down, they gave him something to drink, and consented together that until Supper was ready, some of them should have some particular Discourse with *Christian*, for the best Improvement of Time, and they appointed *Piety*, and *Prudence*, and *Charity* to discourse with him; and thus they began:

*Piety*. \* Come, good *Christian*, since we have been so loving to you, to receive you into our House this Night, let us, if perhaps we may better ourselves thereby, talk with you of all Things that have happened to you in your Pilgrimage. \* *Piety discourses him.*

*Chr.* With a very good Will, and I am glad that you are so well disposed.

*Piety*. What moved you at first to betake yourself to a Pilgrim's Life?

E 3

*Chr.*

*Shall they who wrong begin, yet rightly end?  
Shall they at all have Safety for their Friend?  
No, no, in head-strong Manner they set out,  
And head-long will they fall at last, no doubt.*

\* How Christian was driven out of his own Country.

*Chr.* \* I was driven out of my native Country by a dreadful Sound that was in my Ears; to wit, That unavoidable Destruction did attend me, if I abode in that Place where I was.

*Piety.* But how did it happen that you came out of your Country this Way?

+ How he got into the Way to Zion.

*Chr.* It was as God would have it; for when I was under the Fears of Destruction, I did not know whither to go; but by Chance there came a Man, even to me, as I was Trembling and Weeping, whose Name is † *Evangelist*, and he directed me to the Wicket-Gate, which else I should never have found, and so set me into the Way that hath led me directly to this House.

*Piety.* But did you not come by the House of the *Interpreter*?

† A Rehearsal of what he saw in the Way.

*Chr.* Yes, and did see such Things there, the Remembrance of which will stick by me as long as I live; especially three Things, ‡ to wit, How Christ, in Despite of *Satan*, maintains his Work of Grace in the Heart; how the Man had sinned himself quite out of Hope of God's Mercy; and also the Dream of him that thought in his Sleep the Day of Judgment was come.

*Piety.* Why, did you hear him tell his Dream?

*Chr.* Yes, and a dreadful one it was, I thought; it made my Heart ach as he was telling of it; but yet I am glad I heard it.

*Piety.* Was this all you saw at the House of the *Interpreter*?

*Chr.*



*Chr.* No, he took me and had me where he showed me a stately Palace, and how the People were clad in Gold that were in it; and how there came a venturous Man, and cut his Way through the armed Men that stood at the Door to keep him out; and how he was bid to come in, and win Eternal Glory: Methought those Things did ravish my Heart! I would have staid at that good Man's House a Twelvemonth, but that I knew I had farther to go.

*Piety.* And what saw you else in the Way?

*Chr.* Saw! Why, I went but a little farther, and I saw one, as I thought in my Mind, hang bleeding upon a Tree; and the very Sight of him made my Burden fall off my Back (for I groaned under a very heavy Burden) but then it fell down from off me. 'Twas a strange Thing to me, for I never saw such a Thing before: Yea, and while I stood looking up, (for then I could not forbear looking,) Three Shining Ones came to me; One of them testified that my Sins were forgiven me; another stript me of my Rags, and gave me this embroidered Coat which you see; and the third set the Mark which you see in my Forehead, and gave me this sealed Roll; (and with that he plucked it out of his Bosom.)

*Piety.* But you saw more than this, did you not?

*Chr.* The Things that I have told you, were the best; yet some other Matters I saw, as namely, I saw three Men, *Simple*,  
E 4 *Sloth*,

# The Pilgrim's Progress.

*Sloth*, and *Presumption*, lie asleep a little out of the Way as I came, with Irons upon their Heels; but do you think I could awake them! I also saw *Formality* and *Hypocrisy*, come tumbling over the Wall, to go (as they pretended) to *Zion*, but they were quickly lost; even as I myself did tell them, but they would not believe: But, above all, I found it hard Work to get up this Hill, and as hard to come by the Lions' Mouths; and truly if it had not been for the good Man, the *Porter* that stands at the Gate, I do not know, but that, after all, I might have gone back again; but now I thank God I am here, and I thank you for receiving of me.

Then *Prudence* thought good to ask him a few Questions, and desire his Answers to them.

\* *Prudence*  
*discourses him*

† *Christian's*  
*Thoughts of*  
*his native*  
*Country.*  
Heb. xi. 15,  
16.

*Prud.* \* Do you not think sometimes of the Country from whence you come?

*Cbr.* Yea, † but with much Shame and Detestation: Truly, if I had been mindful of that Country from whence I came out, I might have had Opportunity to have returned; but now I desire a better Country; that is, a Heavenly One.

*Prud.* Do you not yet bear away with you some of the Things that then you were conversant withal?

‡ *Christian*  
*distasted with*  
*carnal Cogitations.*

*Cbr.* Yes, but greatly against my Will; especially my inward and ‡ carnal Cogitations, with which all my Countrymen as well as myself, were delighted; but now all those Things are my Grief; and might

might I but choose mine own Things, I would \* choose never to think of those Things more; but when I would be doing of that which is best, that which is worst is with me.

\* Christian's  
Choice.  
Rom. vii.

*Prud.* Do you not find sometimes, as if those Things were vanquished, which at other Times are your Perplexity?

*Cbr.* Yes, but that is but seldom; but they are to me † Golden Hours, in which such Things happen to me.

† Christian's  
Golden Hours.

*Prud.* Can you remember by what Means you find your Annoyances at Times, as if they were vanquished?

*Cbr.* Yes, when ‡ I think what I saw at the Cross, that will do it; and when I look upon my embroidered Coat, that will do it; and when I look into the Roll that I carry in my Bosom, that will do it; and when my Thoughts wax warm about whither I am going, that will do it.

‡ How Christian gets  
Power against  
his Corruptions.

*Prud.* And what is it that makes you so desirous to go to Mount Zion?

*Cbr.* Why, ¶ there I hope to see him alive that did hang dead on the Cross; and there I hope to be rid of all those Things, that to this Day are in me an Annoyance to me: There they say there is no Death, and there I shall dwell with such Company as I like best. For to tell you Truth, I love him, because I was by him eased of my Burden; and I am weary of my inward Sickness: I would fain be where I shall die no more, and with the Company that shall continually cry, *Holy, Holy, Holy.*

¶ Why Christian would  
be at Mount  
Zion.

Isa. xxv. 8.  
Rev. xxi. 4.

Then

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

\* Charity dis-  
courses him.

Then said \* *Charity* to *Christian*, Have you a Family? Are you a married Man?

*Chr.* I have a Wife and four small Children.

*Chr.* And why did you not bring them along with you?

† *Christian's*  
*Love to his*  
*Wife and*  
*Children.*

*Chr.* Then *Christian* † wept, and said, Oh! how willingly would I have done it! but they were all of them utterly averse to my going on Pilgrimage.

*Char.* But you should have talked to them, and have endeavoured to have shewn them the Danger of being behind.

*Chr.* So I did; and told them also what  
Gen. xix. 14. God hath shewn to me of the Destruction of our City; but I seemed to them as one that mocked, and they believed me not.

*Chr.* And did you pray to God that he would bless your Counsel to them?

*Chr.* Yes, and that with much Affection; for you must think that my Wife and poor Children were very dear unto me.

*Char.* But did you tell them of your own Sorrow, and Fear of Destruction? For I suppose that Destruction was visible enough to you?

† *Christian's*  
*Fear of perishing*  
*might be*  
*read in his*  
*very Coun-*  
*tenance.*

*Chr.* Yes, over, and over, and over: They might also † see my Fears in my Countenance, in my Tears, and also in my Trembling under the Apprehension of the Judgment that did hang over our Heads; but all was not sufficient to prevail with them to come with me.

*Chr.* But what could they say for themselves why they came not?

*Chr.*



*Chr.* Why, \* my Wife was afraid of \* *The Cause*  
losing this World; and my Children were *why his Wife*  
given to the foolish Delights of Youth: *and Children*  
So what by one Thing and what by ano- *did not go*  
ther, they left me to wander in this Man- *with him,*  
ner alone.

*Char.* But did you not with your vain  
Life damp all that you by Words used by  
way of Persuasion to bring them away  
with you?

*Chr.* Indeed I cannot commend my Life,  
for I am conscious to myself of many  
Failings therein: I know also, that a Man  
by his Conversation may soon overthrow  
what by Argument or Persuasion he doth  
labour to fasten upon others for their  
Good. Yet this I can say, I was very  
wary of giving them Occasion, by any  
unseemly Action, to make them averse to  
going on Pilgrimage. † Yea, for this very † *Christian's*  
Thing they would tell me I was too pre- *good Conver-*  
cise, and that I denied myself of Things *sation before*  
(for their Sakes) in which they saw no *his Wife and*  
Evil. Nay, I think I may say, that if *Children.*  
what they saw in me did hinder them,  
it was my great Tenderneſs in ſin-  
ning againſt God, or of doing any Wrong to  
my Neighbour.

*Char.* Indeed Cain hated his Brother, † *John iii. 12,*  
because his own Works were Evil, and  
his Brother's Righteous; and if thy † *Christian*  
and Children have been offended with *clear of their*  
thee for this, they thereby ſhew them- *Blood if they*  
ſelves to be implacable to Good; and *perish.*  
thou haſt delivered thy Soul from their *Ezek. iv. 19.*  
Blood,

Now

Now I saw in my Dream, That thus they sat talking together until Supper was ready. So when they had made ready, they sat down to Meat: Now the Table was furnished with \* fat Things, and with Wine that was well refined; and all their Talk at the † Table was about the LORD of the Hill; - 3 namely, about what HE had done, and wherefore HE did what He did, and why HE had built that House; and by what they said, I perceived that He had been a great Warrior, and had fought with, and slain him that had the Power of Death, but not without great Danger to himself, which made me love him the more.

•What Christian had for his Support. †Their Talk at Supper Time.

Heb. ii. 14. 15.

For, as they said, and, as I believe, (said *Christian*) he did it with the Loss of much Blood; - but that which put Glory of Grace into all he did, was, that he did it of pure Love to his Country. And besides, there were some of them of the Household that said, they had been, and spoke with him since he did die on the Cross; and they have attested, that they had it from his own Lips, that he is such a Lover of poor Pilgrims, that the like is not to be found from the East to the West.

They moreover gave an Instance of what they affirmed, and that was, He had stript himself of that Glory, that He might do this for the Poor; and that they heard him say and affirm, *That he would not dwell in the Mountain of Zion alone.* They said moreover, That he had made

made many Pilgrims \* Princes, though by \* Christ makes  
Nature they were Beggars born, and their Princes of  
Original had been the Dunghill. Beggars.

Thus they discoursed together till late at Night; and after they had committed themselves to their Lord for Protection, they betook themselves to Rest: The Pilgrim they laid in a large upper † Cham- † Christian's  
ber, whose Window opened towards the Bed-chamber.  
Sun-rising: The Name of the Chamber was Peace. where he slept till break of Day, and then he awoke and sang,

*Where am I now! Is this the Love and  
Care*

*Of Jesus, for the Men that Pilgrims are,  
Thus to provide! That I shall be forgiven,  
And dwell already the next Door to Heaven.*

So in the Morning, they all got up; and, after some more Discourse, they told him that he should not depart till they had shewed him the *Rarities* of that Place. And at first they had him into the Study, † where they shewed him Records of the † Christian  
greatest Antiquity; in which, as I remem- had into the  
ber my Dream, they shewed him first the Study, and  
*Pedigree* of the Lord of the Hill, that what he saw  
he was the Son of the Ancient of Days, there.  
and came by that eternal Generation:  
Here also was more fully recorded the  
Acts that he had done, and the Names  
of many Hundreds that he had taken in-  
to his Service; and how he had placed  
them in such Habitations, that could  
neither

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

neither by Length of Days, nor Decays of Nature, be dissolved.

Then they read to him some of the worthy Acts that some of his Servants had done : As how they had subdued Kingdoms, wrought Righteousness, obtained Promises, stopped the Mouths of Lions, Heb. xi. 33, 34. quenched the Violence of Fire, escaped the Edge of the Sword, out of Weakness were made strong, waxed valiant in Fight, and turned to Flight the Armies of the *Aliens*.

Then they read again in another Part of the Records of the House, where it was shewed how willing their Lord was to receive into his Favour, any, even any, though they in Time past had offered great Affronts to his Person and Proceedings. Here also were several other Histories of many other famous Things, of all which *Christian* had a View : As of Things both Ancient and Modern ; together with Prophecies and Predictions of Things that have their certain Accomplishment, both to the Dread and Amazement of Enemies, and the Comfort and Solace of Pilgrims.

\* Christian  
led into the  
Armory.

The next Day they took him, and had him into the \* Armory, where they shewed him all Manner of Furniture, which their Lord had provided for Pilgrims, as Sword, Shield, Helmet, Breast-plate, *All-Prayer*, and Shoes that would not wear out. And there was here enough of his to harness out as many Men, for the Service of their Lord, as there be Stars in the Heaven for Multitude.

They



They also shewed him some of the Engines with which some of his Servants had done wonderful Things. \* They shewed \* Christian him *Moses's* Rod, the Hammer, and Nail <sup>made to see</sup> with which *Jael* slew *Sisera*, the Pitchers, <sup>ancient</sup> Trumpets, and Lamps too, with which *Gideon* put to Flight the Armies of *Midian*. Then they shewed him the Ox's Goad wherewith *Shamgar* slew six Hundred Men. They shewed him also the Jaw-Bone with which *Sampson* did such mighty Feats: They showed him moreover the Sling and Stone with which *David* slew *Goliath* of *Gath*; and the Sword also with which their Lord will kill the Man of Sin, in the Day that he shall rise up to the Prey. They shewed him besides many excellent Things, with which *Christian* was much delighted. This done, they went to their Rest again.

Then I saw in my Dream, That on the Morrow he got up to go forwards, but they desired him to stay till the next Day also; and then said they, we will (if the Day be clear) shew you the † Delectable † Christian Mountains; which, they said, would yet <sup>shewed the</sup> farther add to his Comfort, because they <sup>Delectable</sup> were nearer the desired Haven than the Place where at present he was; so he consented and staid. When the Morning was up, they had him to the Top of the House, and bid him look South: *Isa. xxxiii.* So he did; and behold at a great Dis- <sup>16, 17.</sup> tance, he saw a most pleasant mountainous Country, beautified with Woods, Vineyards, Fruits of all Sorts, Flowers also, with Springs and Fountains, very delectable

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

delectable to behold. Then he asked the Name of the Country. They said, It was *Emanuel's Land*; and it is as common, said they, as this *Hill* is to and for all the Pilgrims. And when thou comest there, from thence thou mayest see to the Gate of the Cœlestial City, as the Shepherds that live there will make appear.

• Christian  
sets forward.

† Christian  
sent away  
armed.

Now he bethought himself of setting forward, \* and they were willing he should. But first, said they, let us go again into the Armory: So they did; and when he came there, they † harnessed him from Head to Foot, with what was of Proof, lest perhaps he should meet with Assaults in the Way. He being therefore thus accoutred, walked out with his Friends to the Gate, and there he asked the *Porter*, If he saw any Pilgrim pass by? Then the *Porter* answered, Yes.

*Chr.* Pray, Did you know him? said he.

*Port.* I asked his Name, and he told me it was *Faithful*.

*Chr.* O, said *Christian*, I know him; he is my Townsman, my near Neighbour, he comes from the Place where I was born: How far do you think he may be before?

*Port.* He is got by this Time below the Hill.

† How Christian and the Porter greet at parting.

*Chr.* Well, said † *Christian*, good *Porter*, the Lord be with thee, and add to all thy Blessings much Increase for the Kindness thou hast shewed to me.

Then

Then he began to go forward; but *Discretion*, *Piety*, *Charity*, and *Prudence*, would accompany him down to the Foot of the Hill. So they went on together, reiterating their former Discourses, till they came to go down the Hill. Then said *Christian*, As it was *difficult* coming up, so, so far as I can see, it is *dangerous* going down. Yes, said *Prudence*, so it is; for it is a hard Matter for a Man to go down into the Valley of \* *Humiliation*, as \* *The Valley of Humiliation*. thou art now, and to catch no Slip by the Way; therefore, said they, are we come out to accompany thee down the Hill. So he began to go down, but very warily; yet he caught a Slip or two.

Then I saw in my Dream, That these good Companions (when *Christian* was got down to the Bottom of the Hill) gave him a Loaf of Bread, a Bottle of Wine, and a Cluster of Raisins; and then he went his Way.

But now in this Valley of *Humiliation*, poor *Christian* was hard put to it; for he had gone but a little Way, before he espied a foul *Fiend* coming over the Field to meet him: His Name is *Apollyon*. Then did *Christian* begin to be afraid, and to cast in his Mind whether to go back, or to stand his Ground. But he considered again, that he had no † Armour for his Back, and therefore thought that to turn the Back to him might give him greater Advantages, with ease, to pierce him with his Darts; therefore he resolved to venture, and † stand his Ground: For, thought he, had I no more in my Eye  
F than

† *Christian has no Armour for his Back.*

† *Christian's Resolution at the Approach of Apollyon.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

than the Saving of my Life, it would be the best Way to stand.

So he went on, and *Apollyon* met him: Now the Monster was hideous to behold: He was clothed with Scales like a Fish; (and they are his Pride) he had Wings like a Dragon, Feet like a Bear, and out of his Belly came Fire and Smoke, and his Mouth was as the Mouth of a Lion. When he was come up to *Christian*, he beheld him with a disdainful Countenance, and thus began to question him.

† *Discourse*  
*betwixt* *Apollyon*. † Whence come you? and  
*Christian and* whither are you bound?

*Apollyon*. *Chr.* I am come from the City of *Destruction*, which is the Place of all Evil, and am going to the City of *Zion*.

*Apol.* By this I perceive thou art one of my Subjects; for all that Country is mine, and I am the Prince and God of it. How is it then that thou hast run away from thy King? Were it not that I hope thou mayest do me more Service, I would strike thee now, at one Blow, to the Ground.

*Chr.* I was born indeed in your Dominions, but your Service was hard, and your Wages such as a Man could not live on; † *Rom. vi. 23* † *for the Wages of Sin is Death*; therefore when I was come to years, I did as other considerate Persons do, look out, if perhaps I might mend myself.

*Apol.* There is no Prince that will thus lightly lose his Subjects, neither will I as yet lose thee, but since thou complainest  
6 of



## The Pilgrim's Progress.

67

of thy Service and Wages \* be content to go back ; what our Country will afford, I do here promise to give thee. † Apollyon's Flattery.

*Cbr.* But I have let myself to another, even to the King of Princes, and how can I with Fairness, go back with thee ?

*Apol.* Thou hast done in this according to the Proverb, † *Change a Bad for a Worse* : But it is ordinary for those that have professed themselves his Servants, after a while to give him the Slip, and return again to me : Dō thou so too, and all shall be well. † Apollyon under-values Christ's Service.

*Cbr.* I have given him my Faith, and sworn my Allegiance to him : How then can I go back from this, and not be hang-ed as a Traytor ?

*Apol.* Thou didst the same to me, and yet I am willing to pass by all, if now thou wilt yet turn and go back.

*Cbr.* What I promised thee was in my Non-age ; and besides, I count that the Prince under whose Banner now I stand, is able to absolve me ; yea, and to pardon also what I did as to my Compliance with thee : And besides, (O thou destroying Apollyon,) to speak Truth, I like his Service, his Wages, his Servants, his Government, his Company, and his Country, better than thine ; and therefore leave off to persuade me farther, I am his Servant, and I will follow him. † Apollyon pleads the grievous End of Christians to dissuade Christian from persisting in his Way.

*Apol.* † Consider again, when thou art in cool Blood, what thou art like to meet with in the Way that thou goest. Thou knowest, that for the most Part, his Servants

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

vants come to an ill End, because they are Transgressors against me and my Ways. How many of them have been put to shameful Deaths! and besides, thou countest his Service better than mine, whereas he never came yet from the Place where he is, to deliver any that served him out of their Hands: But as for me, how many Times, as all the World very well knows, have I delivered, either by Power, or Fraud, those that have faithfully served me from him and his, though taken by them? And so I will deliver thee.

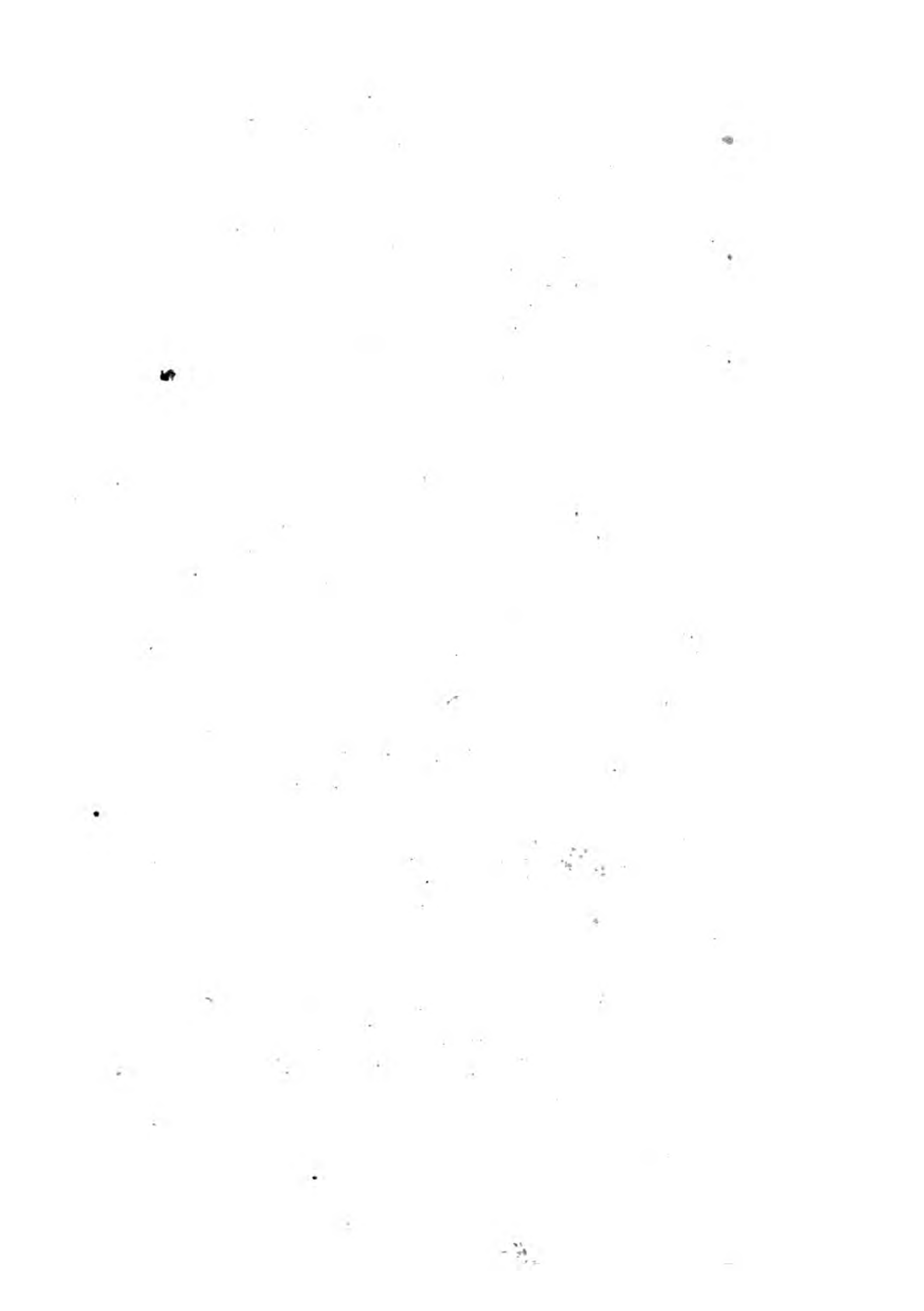
*Cbr.* His forbearing at present to deliver them, is on Purpose to try their Love, whether they will cleave to him to the End: And as for the ill End thou sayest they come to, that is most glorious in their Account: But, for present Deliverance, they do not much expect it; for they stay for their Glory, and then they shall have it, when their Prince comes in his, and the Glory of the Angels.

*Apol.* Thou hast already been unfaithful in thy Service to him; and how dost thou think to receive Wages of him?

*Cbr.* Wherein, O *Apollyon*! have I been unfaithful to him?

¶ *Apollyon*  
*pleads* Chris-  
tian's *Infirmi-*  
*ties against*  
*him.*

*Apol.* Thou didst faint at || first setting out, when thou wast almost choaked in the Gulf of *Despond*: thou didst attempt wrong Ways to be rid of thy Burthen, whereas thou shouldest have staid till the Prince had taken it off. Thou didst sinfully sleep, and lose thy choice Things. Thou wast also almost persuaded to go back at the Sight of the Lions: And when







Christian fights Apollyon.



thou talkest of thy Journey, and of what thou hast heard and seen, thou art inwardly desirous of Vain-glory in all that thou sayest or doest.

*Cbr.* All that is true, and much more, which thou hast left out; but the Prince whom I serve and honour is merciful and ready to forgive: But besides, these Infirmities possessed me in thy Country; for there I sucked them in, and I have groaned under them, been sorry for them, and have obtained Pardon of my Prince.

*Apol.* Then \* *Apollyon* broke out into a \* *Apollyon* grievous Rage, saying, I am an Enemy to <sup>in a Rage falls</sup> this Prince; I hate his Person, his Laws, <sup>upon Chris-</sup> and People: I am come out on Purpose to <sup>tian.</sup> withstand thee.

*Cbr.* *Apollyon*, beware what you do; for I am in the King's Highway, the Way of Holiness; therefore take heed to yourself.

*Apol.* Then *Apollyon* straddled quite over the whole Breadth of the Way, and said, I am void of Fear in this Matter; prepare thyself to die; for I swear by my infernal Den, That thou shalt go no farther: Here will I spill thy Soul!

And with that he threw a flaming Dart at his Breast; but *Christian* held a Shield in his Hand, with which he caught it, and so prevented the Danger of that.

Then did *Christian* draw; for he saw it was time to bestir him; and *Apollyon* as fast made at him, throwing Darts as thick as Hail; by the which, notwithstanding all † *Christian* that *Christian* could do to avoid it, † *Apollyon* <sup>wounded in</sup> wounded him in his Head, his Hand, and <sup>his Under-</sup> Foot. This made *Christian* give a little back: <sup>standing,</sup> Faith, and

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

*Apollyon*, therefore, followed his Work amain, and *Christian* again took Courage, and resisted as manfully as he could. This fore Combat lasted for above half a Day, even till *Christian* was almost quite spent. For you must know, that *Christian*, by Reason of his Wounds, must needs grow weaker and weaker.

Then *Apollyon* espying his Opportunity, began to gather up close to *Christian*, and wrestling with him, gave him a dreadful \* Fall; and with that *Christian's* Sword flew out of his Hand, then said *Apollyon*, *I am sure of thee now*: And with that he had almost pressed him to death; so that *Christian* began to despair of Life. But as God would have it, while *Apollyon* was fetching his last blow, thereby to make a full End of this good Man, *Christian* nimblely reached out his Hand for his † Sword, and caught it, saying, † *Rejoice not against me, O mine Enemy! when I fall I shall arise*; and with that give him a deadly thrust, which made him give back, as one that had received his Mortal Wound. *Christian* perceiving that, made at him again; saying, ‖ *Nay, in all these Things we are more than Conquerors, through him that loved us*. And with that *Apollyon* spread forth his Dragon's Wings, and sped him away, that *Christian* saw him no more.

\* *Apollyon cast Christian down to the Ground,*

† *Christian's Victory over Apollyon.*  
† Mic. vii. 8.

‖ Rom. viii. 8, 9.  
Jam. iv. 7.

In

---

*A more unequal Match can hardly be :  
Christian must fight an Angel ; but you see  
The valiant Man by handling Sword and Shield,  
Doth make him, though a Dragon, quit the Field.*

In this Combat no Man can imagine, unless he had seen and heard as I \* did, what Yelling, and hideous Roaring *Apol-lyon* made all the time of the Fight: He spake like a Dragon: And on the other Side, what Sighs and Groans burst from *Christian's* Heart. I never saw him all the while give so much as one pleasant Look, till he perceived he had wounded *Apollyon* with his two edged Sword; then, indeed he did smile, and look upward: But it was the dreadfullest Sight that ever I saw.

\* A brief Relation of the Combat by the Spectator.

So when the Battle was over, *Christian* said, † I will here give thanks to him that † *Christian* hath delivered me out of the Mouth of the Lion, to him that did help me against *Apollyon*. And so he did; saying,

† *Christian* gives God Thanks for his Deliverance.

*Great Beelzebub, the Captain of this Fiend,  
Design'd my Ruin; therefore to this End,  
He sent him harness'd out; and he with Rage,  
That hellish was, did fiercely me engage:  
But blessed Michael helped me, and I,  
By Dint of Sword, did quickly make him fly:  
Therefore to him let me give lasting Praise,  
And Thanks, and bless his holy Name always.*

Then there came to him a Hand with some of the Leaves of the Trees of Life, the which *Christian* took and applied to the Wounds that he had received in the Battle, and was healed immediately. He also sat down in that Place to eat Bread, and to drink of the Bottle that was given him a little before; so being re-  
F 4                      freshed,

# The Pilgrim's Progress.

• Christian  
goes on his  
Journey with  
his Sword  
drawn in his  
Hand.

freshed, he addressed himself to his Journey, with his Sword drawn in his \* Hand; for he said, I know not but some other Enemy may be at hand. But he met with no other Affront from *Apollyon* quite through the Valley.

† The Valley  
of the Shadow  
of Death.

Now at the End of this Valley was another, called † *The Valley of the Shadow of Death*, and *Christian* must needs go through it, because the Way to the *Cœlestial City* lay through the Midst of it: Now this Valley is a very solitary Place. The Prophet † *Jeremiah* thus describes it: A Wilderness, a Land of Desarts, and of Pits; a Land of Drought, and of the *Shadow of Death*; a Land that no Man (but a Christian) passeth through, and where no Man dwelt.

† Jer. ii. 9.

Now here *Christian* was worse put to it than in his Fight with *Apollyon*; as by the Sequel you shall see.

|| The Children  
of the Spies go  
back.  
§ Numb. xiii.

I saw then in my Dream, That when *Christian* was got to the Borders of the *Shadow of Death*, there met him two Men, Children of them that brought up an § evil Report of the good Land, making haste to go back; to whom *Christian* spake as follows:

*Cbr.* Whither are you going?

*Men.* They said, Back! back! And would have you to do so too, if either Life or Peace is prized by you.

*Cbr.* Why, What is the Matter? said *Christian*.

*Men.* Matter! said they, we were going that Way as you are going, and went

as



as far as we durst ! and indeed we were almost past coming back ; for had we gone a little farther, we had not been here to bring the News to thee.

*Cbr.* But what have you met with ? said *Christian*.

*Men.* Why we were almost in the Valley Psal. xliv. 29. of the Shadow of Death, but that by good Psal. cvii. 19. Hap we looked before us, and saw the Danger before we came to it.

*Cbr.* But what have you seen ? said *Christian*.

*Men.* Seen ! why the Valley itself, which is as dark as Pitch : We also saw there the Hobgoblins, Satyrs, and Dragons of the Pit : We heard also in that Valley a continual Howling and Yelling, as of People under unutterable Misery, who there sat bound in Affliction and Irons ; over that Valley hangs the discouraging Clouds of Confusion : Death also doth always Job iii. 5. spread his Wings over it. In a Word, it ch. x. 22. is every whit dreadful, being utterly without order.

*Cbr.* Then said *Christian*, I perceive not yet, by what you have said, but that this Jer. ii. 6. is my Way to the desired Haven.

*Men.* Be it thy Way, we will not choose it for ours.

So they parted, and *Christian* went on his Way, but still with his Sword drawn in his Hand, for fear lest he should be assaulted.

I saw then in my Dream, so far as this Valley reached, there was on the Right-Hand a very deep Ditch : That Ditch is Psal. lxxiii. 14. it,

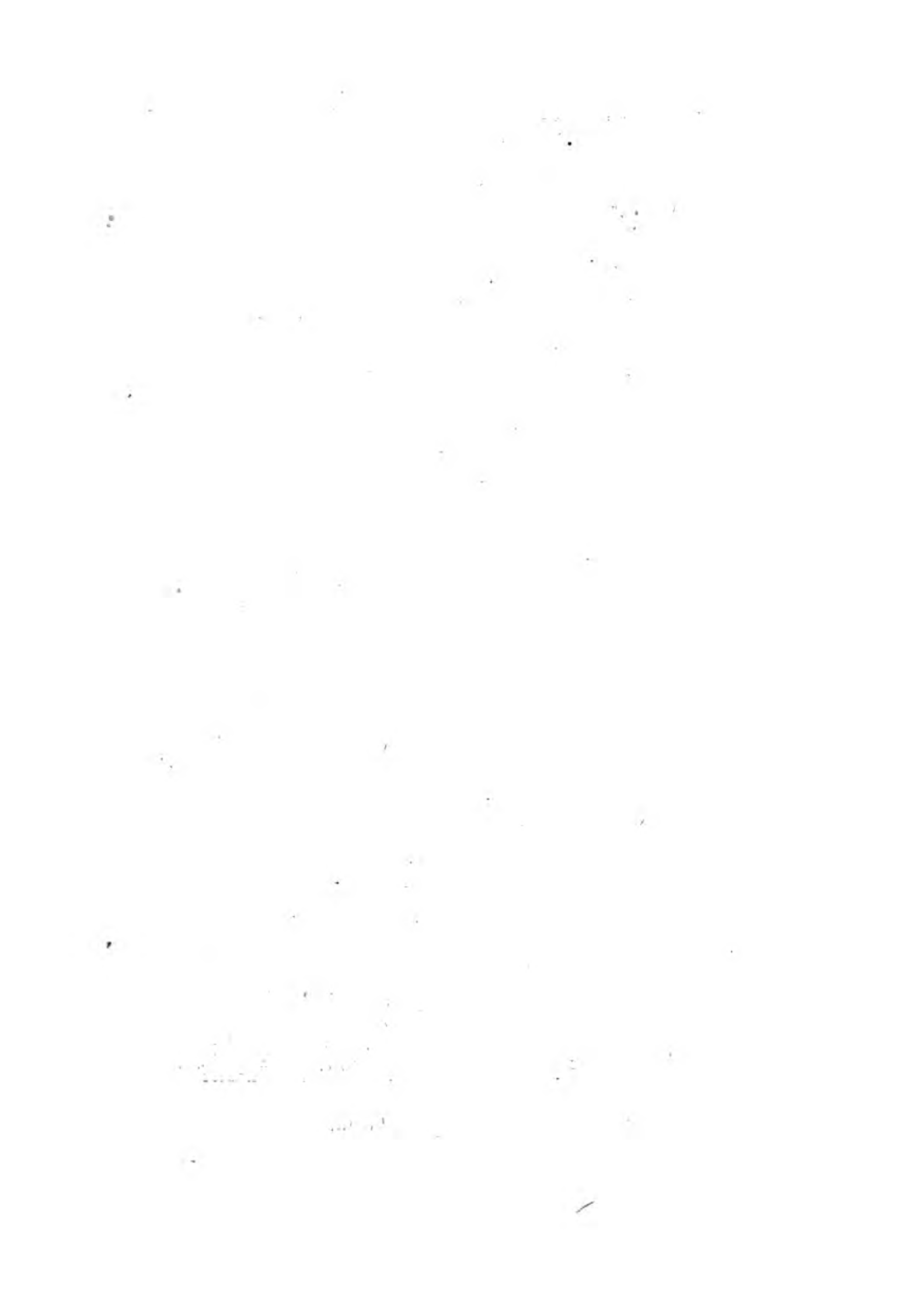
## The Pilgrim's Progress.

it, into which the Blind have led the Blind in all Ages, and have both there miserably perished. Again, behold, on the Left Hand, there was a very dangerous Quag, into which, if even a good Man falls, he finds no bottom for his Foot to stand on: into that Quag King *David* once did fall, and had, no Doubt, therein been smothered, had not he that is able plucked him out.

The Path-way was here also exceeding narrow, and therefore good *Christian* was the more put to it; for when he sought, in the dark, to shun the Ditch on the one Hand, he was ready to tip over into the Mire on the other: Also when he sought to escape the Mire, without great Carefulness, he would be ready to fall into the Ditch. Thus he went on, and I heard him here sigh bitterly: For besides the Danger mentioned above, the Path-way was here so dark, that oft-times, when he lift up his Foot, to set forward, he knew not where, or upon what, he should set it next.

About the Midst of this Valley, I perceived the Mouth of Hell to be, and it stood also hard by the Way-side: Now, thought *Christian*, what shall I do? And ever and anon the Flame and Smoke would come out in such Abundance, with  
Sparks

*Poor Man! where art thou now? Thy Day is Night:  
 Good Man be not cast down, thou yet art right.  
 Thy Way to Heaven lies by the Gates of Hell;  
 Cheer up, hold out; with thee it shall go well.*







The Valley of the Shadow of Death.



Sparks and hideous Noises, (Things that cared not for *Christian's* Sword, as did *Apollyon* before) that he was forced to put up his Sword, and betake himself to another Weapon, called *All Prayer*: So he cried, in my hearing, *O Lord, I beseech thee, deliver my Soul.* Thus he went on a great while, yet still the Flames would be reaching towards him: Also he heard doleful Voices, and Rushings to and fro, so that sometimes he thought he should be torn to Pieces, or trodden down like Mire in the Streets. This frightful Sight was seen, and these dreadful \* Noises \* *Christian* were heard by him for several Miles together: And coming to a Place, where he thought he heard a Company of Fiends, coming forward to meet him, he stopt, and began to muse what he had best to do: Sometimes he had half a Thought to go back; then again he thought he might be Half-way through the Valley: He remembered also, how he had already vanquished many a Danger; and that the Danger of going back might be much more than for to go forward; so he resolved to go on: Yet the *Fiends* seemed to come nearer and nearer: But when they were come even almost at him, he cried out with a most vehement Voice, *I will walk in the Strength of the Lord God*: So they gave back and came no farther.

One Thing I would not let slip: I took Notice that now poor *Christian* was so confounded, that he did not know his own Voice: And thus I perceived it: Just when he was come over against the  
Mouth

*Thef. vi. 18.*  
*Psal. cxxvi 3.*

*put to a Stand  
but for a  
while.*

• Christian  
made believe  
that he spoke  
Blasphemies,  
when it was  
Satan that  
suggested them  
into his Mind.

Mouth of the burning Pit, one of the Wicked ones got behind him, and stept up softly to him, and whispering, suggested many grievous Blasphemies to him, • which he verily thought had proceeded from his own Mind. This put *Christian* more to it than any Thing that he met with before, even to think that he should now blaspheme him that he loved so much before; yet, if he could have helped it, he would not have done it: But he had not the discretion either to stop his Ears, or to know from whence those Blasphemies came.

When *Christian* had travelled in this disconsolate Condition some considerable Time, he thought he heard the Voice of a *Psal. xxiii. 4.* Man, as going before him, saying, *Though I walk through the Valley of the Shadow of Death, I will fear no Ill, for thou art with me.*

Then was he glad; and that for these Reasons:

*First*, Because he gathered from thence, that some who feared God were in this Valley as well as himself.

*Job. ix. 10*

*Secondly*, For that he perceived God was with them, though in that dark and dismal State: And why not, thought he, with me? Though by Reason of the Impediment that attends this Place, I cannot perceive it.

*Thirdly*, For that he hoped (could he overtake them) to have Company by-and-by.

So

So he went on, and called to him that was before; but he knew not what to answer: For that he also thought himself to be alone. And by-and-by the Day broke: Then said *Christian*, *He bath* Amos v. 8.  
*turned the Shadow of Death into the Morn-*  
*ing.*

Now Morning being come, he looked back, not out of Desire to return, but to see, by the Light of the Day \* what Ha- \* Christian  
zards he had gone through in the Dark: *glad at Break*  
So he saw more perfectly the Ditch that *of Day.*  
was on the one Hand, and the Quag that  
was on the other; also how narrow the  
Way was which led betwixt them both:  
Also how he saw the Hobgoblins, and  
Satyrs, and Dragons of the Pit, but all  
afar off: For after Break of Day they  
came not nigh, yet they were discovered  
to him, according to that which is writ-  
ten, *he discovereth deep Things out of Dark-* Job xii. 22.  
*ness, and bringeth out to Light the Shadow of*  
*Death.*

Now was *Christian* much affected with  
his Deliverance from all the Dangers of  
his solitary Way; which Dangers, though  
he feared them more before, yet he saw  
them more clearly now, because the Light  
of the Day made them conspicuous to him;  
and about this Time the Sun was rising,  
and this was another Mercy to *Christian*:  
For you must note, that though the first  
Part of the Valley of the Shadow of Death  
was dangerous, † yet this second Part, † *The second*  
which he was yet to go, was, if possible, *Part of this*  
far more dangerous: For, from the Place *Valley very*  
where he now stood, even to the End of *dangerous.*  
the

# The Pilgrim's Progress.

Job xxix. 3.

the Valley, the Way was all along set so full of Snares, Traps, Gins, and Nets here, and full of Pits, Pit-falls, deep Holes, and Shelving down there, that had it now been dark, as it was when he came the first Part of the Way, had he had a thousand Souls, they had in Reason been cast away; but, as I said, just now the Sun was rising. Then said he, *His Candle shineth on my Head, and by his Light I go through Darknefs.*

In this Light therefore he came to the End of the Valley. Now I saw in my Dream, that at the End of this Valley lay Blood, Bones, Ashes, and mangled Bodies of Men, even of Pilgrims that had gone this Way formerly: And while I was musing what should be the Reason, I espied a little before me a Cave, where two Giants, *Pope* and *Pagan* dwelt in old Time; by whose Power and Tyranny the Men, whose Bones, Blood, Ashes, &c. lay there, were cruelly put to Death. But by this Place *Christian* went without much Danger, whereat I somewhat wondered: But I have learnt since, that *Pagan* has been dead many a Day; and as for the other, though he be yet alive, he is, by Reason of Age, and also of the many shrewd Brushes that he met with in his younger Days, grown so crazy and stiff in his Joints, that he can now do little more than sit in his Cave's Mouth, grinning at Pilgrims as they go by, and biting his Nails because he cannot come at them.

So



So I saw that *Christian* went on his Way; yet, at the Sight of the *Old Man*, that sat at the Mouth of the Cave, he could not tell what to think, especially because he spake to him, though he could not go after him; saying, *You will never mend, till more of you be burnt.* But he held his Peace, and set a good Face on it, and so went by, and caught no Hurt. Then sang *Christian*,

*O World of Wonders! (I can say no less)  
That I should be preserv'd in that Distress  
That I have met with here! O blessed be  
That Hand that from it hath deliver'd me!  
Dangers in Darkness, Devils, Hell, and Sin,  
Did compass me, while I this Vale was in:  
Yea, Snares, and Pits, and Traps, and Nets  
did lie  
My Path about, that worthless, silly I,  
Might have been catch'd, entangled, and  
cast down:  
But since I live, let JESUS wear the Crown.*

Now, as *Christian* went on his Way, he came to a little Ascent, which was cast up on Purpose, that Pilgrims might see before them: Up there, therefore, *Christian* went; and looking forward, he saw *Faithful* before him upon his Journey: Then said *Christian* aloud, *Ho, ho, So, ho: Stay, and I will be your Companion.* At that *Faithful* looked behind him; to whom *Christian* called again, *Stay, stay, till I come up to you.*  
But

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

But *Faithful* answered, *No, I am upon my Life, and the Avenger of Blood is behind me.*

• Christian  
overtakes  
Faithful.

At this *Christian* was somewhat moved, and putting to all his Strength, he quickly got up with \* *Faithful*, and did also over-run him; so the *last* was *first*. Then did *Christian* vain-gloriously smile, because he had gotten the Start of his Brother: But not taking good Heed to his Feet, he suddenly stumbled and fell, and could not rise again, until *Faithful* came up to help him.

† Christian's  
Fall makes  
Faithful and  
be go lovingly  
together.

Then I saw in my Dream, they went very lovingly † on together, and had sweet Discourse of all Things that had happened to them in their Pilgrimage; and thus *Christian* began.

*Chr.* My honoured and well-beloved Brother *Faithful*, I am glad that I have overtaken you; and that God has so tempered our Spirits, that we can walk as Companions in this so pleasant a Path.

*Faith.* I had thought, dear Friend, to have had your Company quite from our Town, but you did get the Start of me: Wherefore I was forced to come thus much of the Way alone.

*Chr.* How long did you stay in the City of *Destruction*, before you set out after me on your Pilgrimage?

‡ Their Talk  
about the  
Country from  
whence they  
came.

*Faith.* ‡ 'Till I could stay no longer; for there was great Talk presently after you were gone out, that our City would, in a short Time, with Fire from Heaven, be burned down to the Ground.

*Chr.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

81

*Cbr.* What ! did your Neighbours talk so ?

*Faith.* Yes, it was for a while in every Body's Mouth.

*Cbr.* What ! and did no more of them but you come out to escape the Danger ?

*Faith.* Though there was, as I said, a great Talk thereabout, yet I do not think they did firmly believe it. For in the Heat of the Discourse, I heard some of them deridingly speak of you and of your desperate Journey (for so they called this your Pilgrimage): But I did believe, and do still, that the End of our City will be with Fire and Brimstone from Above: And therefore I have made my Escape.

*Cbr.* Did you hear no Talk of Neighbour *Pliable* ?

*Faith.* Yes, *Christian*, I heard that he followed you 'till he came to the Slough of *Despond*; where, as some said, he fell in: But he would not be known to have so done: but I am sure he was soundly be-daubed with that Kind of Dirt.

*Cbr.* And what said the Neighbours to him ?

*Faith.* \* He hath, since his going back, \* *How Pliable* been had greatly in Derision, and that *was accounted* among all Sorts of People; some do mock *of, when he* and despise him, and scarce will any set *got Home.* him on work. He is now seven Times worse than if he had never gone out of the City.

*Cbr.* But why should they be so set against him, since they also despise the Way that he forsook ?

G

*Faith.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

*Faith.* O, they say, Hang him; he is a Turn-coat! he was not true to his Profession; I think God has stirred up even his Enemies to hiss at him, and make him a Proverb, because he hath forsaken the Way.

Jer. xxix. 18,  
19.

*Chr.* Had you no Talk with him before you came out?

*Faith.* I met him once in the Streets, but he leered away on the other Side, as one ashamed of what he had done: So I spake not to him.

*Chr.* Well, at my first setting out, I had Hopes of that Man; but now I fear he will perish in the overthrow of the City. For it has happened to him according to the true Proverb, \* The Dog is turned to his Vomit again; and the Sow that was washed, to her Wallowing in the Mire.

\*The Dog and  
the Sow.

*Faith.* They are my Fears of him too, but who can hinder that which will be?

*Chr.* Well, Neighbour *Faithful* (said *Christian*) let us leave him, and talk of Things that more immediately concern ourselves. Tell me now what you have met with in the Way as you came: For I know you have met with some Things, or else it may be writ for a Wonder.

*Faith.* I escaped the *Slough* that I perceived you fell into, and got up to the Gate without that Danger; only I met with one whose Name was † *Wanton*, that had like to have done me a Mischief.

† Faithful  
assaulted by  
Wanton.

*Chr.* It was well you escaped her Net: *Joseph* was hard put to it by her, and he escaped her as you did; but it had like

Gen. xxxix.  
11, 12, 13.



to have cost him his Life. But what did she do to you.

*Faith.* You cannot think (but that you know something) what a flattering Tongue she had ; she lay at me hard to turn aside with her, promising me all Manner of Content.

*Cbr.* Nay, she did not promise you the Content of a good Conscience.

*Faith.* You know what I mean, all carnal and fleshly Content.

*Cbr.* Thank God you have escaped her : The abhorred of the Lord shall fall into her Ditch. Prov. xxii. 14.

*Faith.* Nay, I know not whether I did wholly escape her, or no.

*Cbr.* Why, I trow, you did not consent to her Desire ?

*Faith.* No, not to defile myself, for I remembered an old Writing that I had seen, Prov. v. 5. which said, Her Steps take hold of Hell. Job. xxxi. 1. So I shut mine Eyes, because I would not be bewitched with her Looks : Then she railed on me, and I went my Way.

*Cbr.* Did you meet with no other Assault as you came ?

*Faith.* When I came to the Foot of the Hill called *Difficulty*, I met with a very aged *\* Man*, who asked me what I was ? and whether bound ? I told him, that I was a Pilgrim, going to the Cœlestial City. Then said the old Man, thou lookest like an honest Fellow ; wilt thou be content to dwell with me, for the Wages that I shall give thee ? Then I asked him his Name, and where he dwelt. He said his Name was *Adam the First*, and that he dwelt in the

*\* He was assaulted by Adam the First.*

Ephes. iv. 22. Town of *Deceit*. I asked him then, What was his Work? and what the Wages that he would give? He told me, That his *Work* was *many Delights*; and his *Wages*, that I should be his Heir at last. I further asked him, What House he kept, and what other Servants he had? So he told me, That his House was maintained with all the Dainties in the World; and that his Servants were those of his own begetting. Then I asked how many Children he had? He said, That he had but three Daughters, *The Lust of the Flesh, The Lust of the Eyes, and the Pride of Life*; and that I should marry one of them, if I would. Then I asked, How long Time he would have me live with him? And he told me, As long as he lived himself.

1 John ii. 16.

*Cbr.* Well, and what Conclusion came the old Man and you to at last?

*Faith.* Why, at first I found myself somewhat inclinable to go with the Man, for I thought he spake very fair; but looking in his Forehead, as I talked with him, I saw there written, Put off the old Man with his Deeds.

*Cbr.* And how then?

*Faith.* Then it came burning hot into my Mind, whatever he said, and however he flattered, when he got me home to his House, he would sell me for a Slave. So I bid him forbear to talk, for I would not come near the Door of his House. Then he reviled me, and told me, that he would send such a one after me, that should make my Way bitter to my Soul. So I turned to go away from him; but just as I turned

ed myself to go thence, I felt him take hold of my Flesh, and give me such a deadly Twitch back, that I thought he had pulled Part of me after himself: This made me cry, *O wretched Man!* So I went Rom. vii. 24. on my Way up the Hill.

Now when I had got above half way up I looked behind me, and saw one coming after me, swift as the Wind; so he overtook me just about the Place where the Settle stands.

*Chr.* Just there (said *Christian*) did I set down to rest me; but being overcome with Sleep, I there lost this Roll out of my Bosom.

*Faith.* But, good Brother, hear me out: So soon as the Man overtook me, he was but a Word and a Blow, for down he knocked me, and laid me for dead. But when I was a little come to myself again, I asked him, Wherefore he served me so? He said, Because of my secret inclining to *Adam the First*: And with that he struck me another deadly Blow on the Breast, he beat me down backward; so I lay at his Foot as dead as before. When I came to myself again, I cried him Mercy: But he said, I know not how to shew Mercy; and with that knocked me down again. He had doubtless made an End of me, but that one came by, and bid him forbear.

*Chr.* Who was that that bid him forbear?

*Faith.* I did not know him at first; but as he went by, I perceived the holes in his Hands and in his Side: Then I concluded that he was our Lord. So I went up the Hill.

# The Pilgrim's Progress.

*Chr.* That Man that overtook you, was  
*\* The Temper of Moses.* *Moses.* \* He spareth none, neither knoweth he how to shew Mercy to those that transgress his Law.

*Faith.* I knew it very well; it was not the first Time that he has met with me. It was he that came to me when I dwelt securely at Home, and that told me he would burn my House over my Head, if I staid there.

*Chr.* But did you not see the House that stood there on the Top of the Hill, on the Side of which *Moses* met you?

*Faith.* Yes, and the Lions too, I think they were asleep; for it was about Noon: And because I had so much of the Day before me, I passed by the Porter and came down the Hill.

*Chr.* He told me indeed, That he saw you go by; but I wish you had called at the House; for they would have shewed you so many Rarities, that you would scarce have forgot them to the Day of your Death. But pray tell me, Did you meet no-body in the Valley of *Humility*?

+ Faithful  
 assaulted by  
 Discontent.

*Faith.* Yes, I met with one † *Discontent*, who would willingly have persuaded me to go back again with him: His reason was, For that the Valley was altogether without Honour. He told me moreover, That there to go, was to disoblige all my Friends, as *Pride, Arrogancy, Self-Conceit, Worldly-Glory*, with others, who, he knew, as he said, would be very much offended, if I made such a Fool of myself as to wade through this Valley.

*Chr.*



*Chr.* Well, and how did you answer him?

*Faith.* I told him,\* That although all these that he named might claim a Kindred of me, and that rightly, (for indeed they were my Relations, *according to the Flesh*) yet since I became a Pilgrim, they have disowned me, as I also have rejected them; and therefore they were to me now, no more than if they had never been of my Lineage: I told him moreover, That as to this Valley he had quite misrepresented the Thing; for before Honour is Humility, and a haughty Spirit before a Fall. Therefore, said I, I had rather go through this Valley to the Honour that was so accounted by the Wisest, than choose that which he esteemed most worthy our Affections.

\*Faithful's  
Answer to  
Discontent.

*Chr.* Met you with nothing else in that Valley?

*Faith.* Yes I met with † *Shame*; but of † *He is of* all the Men that I met with in my Pilgrimage, he, I think, bears the wrong Name. *faulted by Shame.* The other would be said Nay, after a little Argumentation, and somewhat else: But this bold-faced *Shame* would never have done.

*Chr.* Why, what did he say to you?

*Faith.* What! why he objected against *Religion* itself; he said, it was a pitiful low, sneaking Business for a Man to mind *Religion*; he said that a tender Conscience was an unmanly Thing; and that for a Man to watch over his Words and Ways, so as to tie up himself from that hectoring Liberty that the brave *Spirits of the Times* accustom themselves unto, would

make him the Ridicule of the Time. He objected also, That few of the *Mighty, Rich, or Wise*, were ever of my Opinion; nor any of them neither, before they were persuaded to be Fools, and to be of a voluntary Fondness to venture the Loss of all, for no-body else knows what. He moreover objected the base and low Estate and Condition of those that were chiefly the Pilgrims of the Times in which they lived; also their Ignorance, and Want of Understanding in all natural Science. Yea, he did hold me to it at that Rate also, about a great many more Things than I here relate; as that it was a Shame to sit whining and mourning under a Sermon, and a Shame to come sighing and groaning Home: That it was a Shame to ask my Neighbour Forgiveness for petty Faults, or to make Restitution where I have taken from any. He said also, That Religion made a Man grow strange to the Great, because of a few Vices, (which he called by finer Names) and made him own and respect the Base, because of the same religious Fraternity: And is not this, said he, a Shame?

*Cbr.* And what did you say to him?

*Faith.* Say! I could not tell what to say at first. Yea, he put me so to it, that my Blood came up in my Face; even this *Shame* fetched it up, and had almost beat me quite off. But, at last, I began to consider, That that which is highly esteemed among Men, is had in Abomination with God. And I thought again, this *Shame* tells me what Men are; but  
it

1 Cor. ii. 26.  
ch. iii. 18.  
Phil. iii. 7, 9.  
John 7. 48.

Luke xvi. 15.

it tells me nothing what *God* or the *Word of God* is. And I thought moreover, That at the Day of Doom we shall not be doomed to Death or Life, according to the hectoring Spirits of the World, but according to the Wisdom and Law of the Highest. Therefore, thought I, what God says, is best, though all the Men in the World are against it: Seeing then that God prefers his Religion; seeing God prefers a tender Conscience; seeing they that make themselves Fools for the Kingdom of Heaven, are wisest; and that the poor Man that loveth Christ, is richer than the greatest Man in the World that hates him; *Shame*, depart, thou art an Enemy to my Salvation; shall I entertain thee against my Sovereign Lord? How then shall I look him in the Face at his Coming? Should I now be ashamed Mat. viii. 38. of his Ways and Servants, how can I expect the Blessing? But indeed this *Shame* was a bold Villain; I could scarce ake him out of my Company: Yea, he would be haunting of me, and continually whispering me in the Ear, with some one or other of the Infirmities that attend Religion; but at last I told him, it was but in vain to attempt further in this Business; for those Things that he disdained, in those did I see most Glory. And so at last I got past this importunate one. And when I had shaken him off, then I began to sing:

*The Tryals that these Men do meet withal,  
That are obedient to the Heavenly Call,*

*Are*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

*Are manifold and suited to the Flesh,  
And come, and come, and come again afresh;  
That now, or some time else, we by them may  
Be taken, overcome, and cast away.  
O let the Pilgrims, let the Pilgrims then  
Be vigilant, and quit themselves like men.*

*Chr.* I am glad, Brother, that thou didst withstand this Villain so bravely; for of all, as thou sayest, I think he has the wrong Name; for he is so bold as to follow us in the Streets, and to attempt to put us to Shame before all Men, that is, to make us ashamed of that which is good; but if he was not himself audacious, he would never attempt to do as he does; but let us still resist him; for notwithstanding all his Bravadoes, he pro-

Prov. iii. 35. moteth the Fool, and none else. The Wife shall inherit Glory, said *Solomon*; but Shame shall be the Promotion of Fools.

*Faith.* I think we must cry to him for Help against *Shame*, that would have us to be valiant for Truth upon the Earth.

*Chr.* You say true; but did you meet no-body else in that Valley?

*Faith.* No, not I; for I had Sun-shine all the rest of the Way through that, and also through the Valley of the Shadow of Death.

*Chr.* It was well for you; I am sure, it fared far otherwise with me; I had for a long Season, as soon almost as I entered into that Valley, a dreadful Combat with that foul Fiend *Apollyon*; yea, I thought verily he would have killed me, especially when he got me down, and crushed me  
under



under him, as if he would have crushed me to Pieces: For as he threw me, my Sword flew out of my Hand; nay, he told me he was sure of me; but I cried to God, and he heard me, and delivered me out of all my Troubles. Then I entered into the Valley of the Shadow of Death, and had no Light for almost half the Way through it. I thought I should have been killed there over and over; but at last Day brake, and the Sun rose, and I went through that which was behind with far more Ease and Quiet.

Moreover I saw in my Dream, that as they went on, *Faithful*, as he chanced to look on one Side, saw a Man whose Name is *Talkative*, walking at a Distance besides them (for in this Place there was Room enough for them all to walk.)\* He <sup>\* *Talkative* described.</sup> was a tall Man, and something more comely at a distance, than at Hand: To this Man *Faithful* addressed himself in this Manner.

*Faith.* Friend, Whither away? Are you going to the Heavenly Country?

*Talk.* I am going to the same Place.

*Faith.* That is well; then I hope we may have your good Company?

*Talk.* With a very good Will will I be your Companion.

*Faith.* † Come on then, and let us go † <sup>† *Faithful* and *Talkative* enter into Discourse.</sup> together, and let us spend our Time in discoursing of Things that are profitable.

*Talk.* To talk of Things that are good, to me is very acceptable, with you or with any other; and I am glad that I have

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

\*Talkative's  
Dislike of his  
Discourse.

have met with those that incline to so good a Work: For to speak the Truth, \* there are but few that care thus to spend their Time (as they are in their Travels) but choose much rather to be speaking of Things to no Profit; and this hath been a Trouble to me.

*Faith.* That is indeed a Thing to be lamented; for what Thing so worthy of the Use of the Tongue and Mouth of Men on Earth, as are the Things of the God of Heaven?

*Talk.* I like you wonderful well; for your Sayings are full of Conviction; and I will add, What Thing is so pleasant, and what so profitable, as to talk of the Things of God?

What Things so pleasant (that is, if a Man hath any Delight in Things that are wonderful) for Instance: If a Man doth delight to talk of the History, or the Mystery of Things; or if a Man doth love to talk of Miracles, Wonders, or Signs, where shall he find Things recorded so delightful, and so sweetly penned, as in the Holy Scripture?

*Faith.* That is true; but to be profited by such Things in our Talk, should be our chief Design.

†Talkative's  
fine Discourse,

*Talk.* † That is it that I said; for to talk of such Things is most profitable; for by so doing, a Man may get Knowledge of many Things; as of the Vanity of Earthly Things, and the Benefit of Things Above: (Thus in general) but more particularly; by this a Man may learn the Necessity of the New Birth; the Insufficiency of our Works;  
the

the Need of Christ's Righteousness, &c. Besides; by this a Man may learn what it is to Repent, to Believe, to Pray, to Suffer, or the like : By this also a Man may learn what are the great Promises and Consolations of the Gospel, to his own Comfort. Further, by this a Man may learn to refute false Opinions, to vindicate the Truth, and also to instruct the Ignorant.

*Faith.* All this is true, and glad am I to hear these Things from you.

*Talk.* Alas ! the Want of this is the Cause that so few understand the Need of Faith, and the Necessity of Works of Grace in their Soul, in order to Eternal Life ; but ignorantly live in the Works of the Law, by which a Man can by no Means obtain the Kingdom of Heaven.

*Faith.* But, by your Leave, Heavenly Knowledge of these is the Gift of God ; no Man attaineth to them by human Industry, or only by the Talk of them.

*Talk.* \* All this I know very well. For \* *O brave* a Man can receive nothing, except it be *Talkative.* given him from Heaven ; all is of Grace, not of Works : I could give you an hundred Scriptures for the Confirmation of this.

*Faith.* Well then, said *Faithful*, what is that one Thing that we shall at this Time found our Discourse upon ?

*Talk.* What you will : † I will talk of † *O brave* Things Heavenly, or Things Earthly ; *Talkative.* Things Moral, or Things Evangelical ; Things Sacred, or Things Prophane ; Things

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Things past, or Things to come; Things Foreign, or Things at Home; Things more Essential, or Things Circumstantial; provided that all be done to our Profit:

\* Faithful  
beguiled by  
Talkative.

*Faith.* Now did \* *Faithful* begin to wonder; and stepping to *Christian*, (for he walked all this while by himself) he said to him, but softly, What a brave Companion have we got? Surely this Man will make a very excellent Pilgrim.

*Cbr.* At this *Christian* modestly smiled, and said, † This Man with whom you are so taken, will beguile with this Tongue of his, twenty of them that know him not.

† *Christian* makes a Discovery of Talkative, telling Faithful who he was.

*Faith.* Do you know him then?

*Cbr.* Know him! Yea, better than he knows himself.

*Faith.* Pray what is he?

*Cbr.* His Name is *Talkative*; he dwelleth in our Town; I wonder that you should be a Stranger to him, only I consider that our Town is large.

*Faith.* Whose Son is he? And whereabout does he dwell?

*Cbr.* He is the Son of one *Say-well*, he dwelt in *Prating-Row*; and he is known of all that are acquainted with him, by the Name of *Talkative* in *Prating-Row*; and notwithstanding his fine Tongue, he is but a sorry Fellow.

*Cbr.* Well, he seems to be a very pretty Man.

*Cbr.* That is, to them that have not a thorough Acquaintance with him; for he is best abroad, near home he is ugly enough: Your saying that he is a pretty Man



Man brings to my Mind what I have observed in the Work of the Painter, whose Pictures shew best at a Distance; but very near, more unpleasing.

*Faith.* But I am ready to think you do but jest, because you smiled.

*Chr.* God forbid that I should jest, (though I smiled) in this Matter, or that I should accuse any falsely; I will give you a further Discovery of him: This Man is for any Company, and for any Talk; as he talketh now with you, so he will talk when he is on the Ale-bench: And the more Drink he hath in his Crown, the more of these Things he hath in his Mouth: Religion hath no Place in his Heart, or House, or Conversation; all he hath lieth in his Tongue, and his Religion is to make a Noise therewith.

*Faith.* Say you so! then I am in this Man greatly deceived.

*Chr.* Deceived! you may be sure of it: Matt. xxiii. Remember the Proverb, *They say, and do* 1 Cor. iv. 28. *not: But the Kingdom of God is not in Word, but in Power.* He talketh of Prayer, \* of \* Talkative Repentance, of Faith, and of the New <sup>talks, but</sup> Birth; but he knows but only to talk of <sup>does not.</sup> them. I have been in his Family, and have observed him both at home and abroad; and I know what I say of him is the Truth. † His House is empty of <sup>† His House</sup> Religion, as the White of an Egg is of <sup>is empty of</sup> Savour. There is there neither Prayer, <sup>Religion.</sup> nor Sign of Repentance for Sin: Yea, the Brewer, in his Kind, serves God far <sup>† He is a Stain</sup> better than he. ‡ He is the very Stain, <sup>to Religion.</sup> Reproach, and Shame of Religion, to all <sup>Rom. ii. 24.</sup> that <sup>25.</sup>

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

that know him; it can hardly have a good Word in all the End of the Town where he dwells through him. Thus, say the common People that know him, \* *A saint abroad, and a Devil at Home.* His poor Family finds it so, he is such a Churl, such a Railer at, and so unreasonable with his Servants, that they neither know how to do for, or speak to him, Men that have any Dealings with him. † It is better to deal with a *Turk* than with him, for fairer Dealing they shall have at their Hands. This *Talkative* (if it be possible) will go beyond them, defraud, beguile, and over-reach them. Besides, he brings up his Sons to follow his Steps; and if he finds in any of them a *foolish Timorousness*, (for so he calls the first Appearance of a tender Conscience) he calls them Fools and Blockheads, and by no Means will employ them in much, or speak to their Commendations before others. For my Part, I am of Opinion that he has, by his wicked Life, caused many to stumble and fall; and will be, if God prevents not, the Ruin of many more.

\* *The Proverb that goes of him.*

† *Men shun to deal with him.*

*Faith.* Well, my Brother, I am bound to believe you; not only because you say you know him, but also because, like a Christian, you make your Reports of Men. For I cannot think that you speak these Things of Ill-will, but because it is even so as you say.

*Cbr.* Had I known him no more than you, I might perhaps have thought of him as at the first you did: Yea, had he received this Report at their Hands only, that



## The Pilgrim's Progress.

you know Men at Harveſt regard nothing but Fruit. Not that any Thing can be accepted, that is not of Faith; but I ſpeak this to ſhow you how insignificant the Profeſſion of *Talkative* will be at that Day.

Lev. xi.

Deut. xiv.

• Faithful

convinced of

the Badneſs of

Talkative.

*Faith.* This brings to my Mind that of *Moses*, by which he deſcribed the Beaſt that is clean. \* He is ſuch an one that parteth the Hoof, and cheweth the Cud; not that parteth the Hoof only, or that cheweth the Cud only. The Hare cheweth the Cud, but yet is unclean, becauſe he parteth not the Hoof. And this truly reſembleth *Talkative*; he cheweth the Cud, he ſeeketh Knowledge, he cheweth upon the Word; but he divideth not the Hoof, he parteth not with the Way of Sinners; but as the Hare, he retaineth the Foot of a Dog or Bear, and therefore he is unclean.

*Chr.* You have ſpoken, for ought I know, the true Goſpel Senſe of thoſe Texts. And I will add another Thing:

1 Cor. xiii. 1,

2, 3. ch. xiv.

7.

† Talkative

like to Things

that ſound

without Life.

*Paul* calleth ſome Men, yea, and thoſe great *Talkers* too, *Sounding Braſs*, and *Tinkling Cymbals*; that is, as he expounds them in another Place, *Things without Life, giving Sound*. Things without Life, that is, without the true Faith and Grace of the Goſpel; and conſequently, Things that ſhall never be placed in the Kingdom of Heaven among thoſe that are the Children of Life: Though their *Sound*, by their *Talk*, be as it were the Tongue or Voice of an Angel.

*Faith.*



*Faith.* Well, I was not fond of his Company at first, but I am as sick of it now. What shall we do to be rid of him?

*Chr.* Take my Advice, and do as I bid you, and you shall find that he will soon be sick of your Company too, except God shall touch his Heart and turn it.

*Faith.* What would you have me to do?

*Chr.* Why go to him, and enter into some serious Discourse about the *Power of Religion*; and ask him plainly (when he has approved of it, for that he will) whether this Thing be set up in his Heart, House, or Conversation.

*Faith.* Then *Faithful* stept forward again, and said to *Talkative*, come, what *Cheer*? *How is it now*?

*Talk.* Thank you, well; I thought we should have had a great deal of Talk by this Time.

*Faith.* Well, if you will, we will fall to it now; and since you left it with me to state the Question, let it be this: How doth the saving Grace of God discover itself, when it is in the Heart of Man?

*Talk.* I perceive then that our Talk must be \* *about the Power of Things*: Well, \* *Talkative's* it is a very good Question, and I shall be *false Discover-ry of a Work of Grace..* willing to answer you. And take my Answer in brief thus: *First*, Where the Grace of God is in the Heart, it causeth there a great Outcry against Sin. *Secondly*,—

*Faith.* Nay, hold, let us consider of one at once: I think you should rather say,

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

It shows itself, by inclining the Soul to abhor its Sin.

*Talk.* Why, what Difference is there between crying out against, and abhorring of Sin?

\* *The crying out against Sin, no Sign of Grace.*

Gen. xxxix. 15.

*Faith.* Oh! a great deal: \* A Man may cry out against Sin, of Policy, but he cannot abhor it but by Virtue of a godly Antipathy against it. I have heard many cry out against Sin in the Pulpit, who yet can abide it well enough in the Heart, House, and Conversation. *Joseph's* Mistress cried out with a loud Voice, as if she had been very holy; but she would willingly, notwithstanding that, have committed Uncleanness with him. Some cry out against Sin, even as a Mother cries out against her Child in her Lap, when she calleth it Slut and naughty Girl, and then falls to hugging and kissing it.

*Talk.* You lie at the Catch, I perceive.

*Faith.* No, not I, I am only for setting Things right. But what is the second Thing whereby you would prove a Discovery of a Work of Grace in the Heart?

*Talk.* Great Knowledge of Gospel Mysteries.

† *Great Knowledge no Sign of Grace.*  
1 Cor. xiii.

*Faith.* This Sign should have been first; but first, or last, it is also false; for Knowledge, † great Knowledge, may be obtained in the Mysteries of the Gospel, and yet no Work of Grace in the Soul. Yea, if a Man have all Knowledge, he may yet be nothing, and so consequently be no Child of God. When Christ said

said, *Do you know all these Things?* And the Disciples had answered, *Yes:* He added, *Blessed are ye, if ye do them.* He doth not lay the Blessings in the Knowing of them, but in the Doing of them.

\* For there is a Knowledge that is not attended with Doing: *He that knoweth his Master's Will, and doth it not.* A Man may know like an Angel, and yet be no Christian; therefore your Sign of it is not true. Indeed, to *know*, is a Thing that pleaseth Talkers and Boasters; but to *do*, is that which pleaseth God. Not that the Heart can be good without Knowledge; for without that, the Heart is naught. There are therefore two Sorts of Knowledge; Knowledge that resteth in the bare Speculation of Things, and Knowledge that is accompanied with the Grace of Faith and Love; which puts a Man upon doing even the Will of God from the Heart: The first of these will serve the *Talker*; but without the other, the true Christian is not content. † Give me Understanding, and I shall keep thy Law: yea, I shall observe it with my whole Heart. † True Knowledge attended with Endeavours.

Psal. cxix. 34.

*Talk.* You lie at the Catch again; this is not for Edification.

*Faith.* Well, if you please, propound another Sign how this Work of Grace discovereth itself where it is.

*Talk.* Not I, for I see we shall not agree.

*Faith.* Well, if you will not, will you give me Leave to do it?

*Talk.* You may use your Liberty.

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

*One good Sign of Grace.* *Faith.* A Work of Grace in the Soul discovereth itself, either to him that hath

John xvi. 8. it, or to Standers-by.

Rom. vii. 24. To him that hath it, thus: It gives

John xvi. 9. him Conviction of Sin, especially the De-

Mark vi. 16. filement of his Nature, and the Sin of

Psal. xxxviii. 18. Unbelief. (for the Sake of which he is

Jer. xxxi. 19 sure to be damned, if he findeth not Mer-

Gal. ii. 15. cy at God's Hand, by Faith in Jesus

Acts iv. 12. Christ.) This Sight and Sense of Things

Matt. v. 6. worketh in him Sorrow and Shame for

Rev. xxi. 6. Sin: He findeth, moreover, revealed in

him the Saviour of the World, and the

absolute Necessity of closing with him for

Life, at the which he findeth Hungrings

and Thirstings after him; to which Hun-

grings, &c. the Promise is made. Now

according to the Strength or Weakness of

his Faith in his Saviour, so is his Joy and

Peace, so is his Love to Holiness, so are

his Desires to know him more, and also

to serve him in this World. But though,

I say, it discovereth itself thus unto him,

yet it is but seldom that he is able to

conclude that this is a Work of Grace,

because his Corruptions now, and his

abused Reason, make his Mind to mis-

judge in this Matter; therefore in him

that hath this Work, there is required a

very sound Judgment, before he can with

Steadiness conclude that this is a Work of

Grace.

*To others it is thus discovered:*

Rom. x. 10. 1. By an experimental Confession of his  
Phil. viii. 17. Faith in Christ. 2. By a Life answerable to  
Matt. v. 9. that



that Confession, to wit, a Life of Holiness; Heart-holiness, Family-Holiness, if he hath a Family, and by Conversation-holiness in the World; which in the general teacheth him inwardly to abhor his Sin, and himself for that, in secret; to suppress it in his Family, and to promote Holiness in the World; not by Talk only, as an Hypocrite or talkative Person may do, but by a practical Subjection in Faith and Love to the Power of the World: And now, Sir, as to this brief Description of the Work of Grace, and also the Discovery of it, if you have ought to object, object; if not, then give me Leave to propound to you a second Question.

*Talk.* Nay, my Part is not now to object, but to hear: Let me therefore have your second Question.

*Faith.* It is this: Do you experience this first part of the Description of it?

\* And doth your Life and Conversation \* *Another good Sign of Grace.*  
testify the same? Or standeth your Religion in *Word or Tongue*, and not in *Deed and Truth*? Pray, if you incline to answer me in this, say no more than you know the God above will say *Amen* to; and also nothing but what your Conscience can justify you in: *For not he that commendeth himself, is approved, but whom the Lord commendeth.* Besides to say, I am thus, and thus, when my Conversation, and all my Neighbours tell me I lie, is great Wickedness.

\* Talkative  
not pleased  
with Faith-  
ful's Question.

*Talk.* \* Then *Talkative* at first began to blush; but recovering himself, thus he replied: You come now to Experience, to Conscience, and God; and to appeal to him for Justification of what is spoken: This Kind of Discourse I did not expect; nor am I disposed to give an Answer to such Questions, because I count not myself bound thereto, unless you take upon you to be a *Catechiser*; and though you should so do, yet I may refuse to make you my Judge: But I pray will you tell me why you ask me such Questions?

† The Reason  
why Faithful  
put to him  
that Question.

*Faith.* † Because I saw you forward to talk, and because I knew not that you had ought else but Notion. Besides, to tell you all the Truth, I have heard of you, that you are a Man whose Religion lies in Talk, and that your Conversation gives this your Profession the Lie. They say you are a Spot among Christians; and that Religion fareth the worse for your ungodly Conversation; that some already have stumbled at your wicked Ways, and that more are in Danger of being destroyed thereby; your Religion and an Alehouse, and Covetousness, and Uncleaness, and Swearing, and Lying, and vain Company-keeping, &c. will stand together. The Proverb is true of you, which is said of a Whore, to wit, *that she is a Shame to all Women*, so you are a Shame to all Professors.

‖ Talkative  
takes away  
from Faith-  
ful.

*Talk.* ‖ Since you are ready to take up Report, and to judge so rashly as you do, I cannot but conclude you are some peevish

peevish or melancholy Man, not fit to be discoursed with, and so adieu.

*Chr.* Then came up *Christian*, and said to his Brother, I told you how it would happen; your Words and his Lusts could not agree. He had rather leave your Company than reform his Life; but he is gone, as I said; \* let him go, the Loss is no Man's but his own; he has saved us the Trouble of going from him; for he continuing (as I suppose he will do) as he is, he would have been but a Blot in our Company: Besides, the Apostle says, *From such withdraw thyself.*

\* *A good Riddance,*

*Faith.* But I am glad we had this little Discourse with him; it may happen that he will think of it again; however, I have dealt plainly with him, and am so clear of his Blood, if he perisheth.

*Chr.* You did well to talk so plainly to him as you did; there is but little of this faithful Dealing with Men now-a-days, and that makes Religion to stink so in the Nostrils of many, as it doth; for they are these talkative Fools, whose Religion is only in Word, and are debauched and vain in their Conversation, that (being so much admitted into the Fellowship of the Godly) do puzzle the World, blemish Christianity, and grieve the Sincere. I wish that all Men would deal with such, as you have done; then should they either be made more conformable to Religion, or the Company of Saints would be too hot for them. Then did *Faithful* say.

*How*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

*How Talkative at first lifts up his Plumes!  
How bravely doth he speak! How he  
presumes*

*To drive down all before him! But so soon  
As Faithful talks of Heart-work, like the  
Moon*

*That's past the Full, into the Wane he goes;  
And so will all, but he that Heart-work  
knows.*

Thus they went on talking of what they had seen by the Way, and so made that Way easy, which would otherwise, no doubt, have been tedious to them: For they went through a Wilderness.

Now when they were got almost quite out of this Wilderness, *Faithful* chanced to cast his Eye back, and espied one coming after them, and he knew him. Oh! said *Faithful* to his Brother, who comes yonder? Then *Christian* looked, and said, It is my good Friend *Evangelist*: Ay, and my good Friend too, said *Faithful*, for it was he that set me the Way to the Gate. Now was \* *Evangelist* come up unto them, and thus saluted them:

\* *Evangelist overtakes them again.*

*Evang.* Peace be with you, dearly beloved; and Peace be your Helpers.

† *They are glad at the Sight of him.*

*Chr.* † Welcome, welcome, my good *Evangelist*; the Sight of thy Countenance brings to my Remembrance thy ancient Kindness and unwearied Labours for my eternal Good.

*Faith.*



*Faith.* And a thousand times Welcome, said good *Faithful*; thy Company, O sweet *Evangelist*, how desirable is it to us poor Pilgrims!

*Evang.* Then said *Evangelist*, How hath it fared with you my Friends, since the Time of our last parting? What have you met with, and how have you behaved yourselves.

Then *Christian* and *Faithful* told him of all Things that had happened to them in the Way; and how, and with what Difficulty they had arrived to that Place.

*Evang.* \* Right glad am I, said *Evan-* \* *His Exhortation to them.*  
*gelist*, not that you have met with Trials, but that you have been Victors, and for that you have, notwithstanding many Weaknesses, continued in the Way to this very Day.

I say, right glad am I of this Thing, John iv. 36.  
 and that for mine own Sake and yours: Gal. vi. 9,  
 I have sowed, and you have reaped; and 1 Cor. ix.  
 the Day is coming, when both he that 24, 25, 26, 27.  
 sowed, and they that reap, shall rejoice together; that is, if you hold out, for in due Time ye shall reap, if you faint not. The Crown is before you, and it Rev. iii. 11.  
 is an incorruptible one; so run, that you may obtain it. Some there be that set out for this Crown, and after they have gone far for it, another comes in and takes it from them: Hold fast therefore that you have, let no Man take your Crown: You are not yet out of the Gunshot of the Devil: You have not resisted unto Blood, striving against Sin: Let  
 the

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

the Kingdom be always before you, and believe stedfastly concerning Things that are invisible: Let nothing that is on this Side the other World get within you: And above all, look well to your own Hearts and to the Lusts thereof, for they are deceitful above all Things, and desperately wicked; set your Faces like a Flint: you have all Power in Heaven and Earth on your Side..

*They do thank him for his Exhortation.*

*Chr.* Then *Christian* thanked him for his Exhortation; but told him withal, that they would have him speak farther to them for their Help the rest of the Way; and the rather, for that they well knew that he was a Prophet, and could tell them of Things that might happen unto them, and how they might resist and overcome them. To which Request *Faithful* also consented. So *Evangelist* began as followeth:

*\* He predicteth what Troubles they shall meet with in Vanity Fair, and encourageth them to Steadfastness.*

*Evang.* \* My Sons, you have heard in the Words of the Truth of the Gospel, that you must through many Tribulations enter into the Kingdom of Heaven. And again, That in every City, Bonds and Afflictions abide you; and therefore you cannot expect that you should go long on your Pilgrimage without them, in some sort or other: You have found something of the Truth of these Testimonies upon you already, and more will immediately follow; for now, as you see, you are almost out of this Wilderness, and therefore you will soon come into a Town that you will by and by see before you; and in that Town you will be

hard

hard beset with Enemies, who will strain hard but they will kill you; and be you sure that one or both of you must seal the Testimony which you hold, with Blood; but be you faithful unto Death, and the King will give you a Crown of Life. \* He that shall die there although his Death will be unnatural, and his Pains perhaps great, he will yet have the better of his Fellow; not only because he will be arrived at the Coelestial City soonest, but because he will escape many Miseries that the other will meet with in the rest of his Journey, But when you are come to the Town, and shall find fulfilled what I have here related, then remember your Friend, and quit yourselves like Men, and commit the Keeping of your souls to your God in Well-doing, as unto a Faithful Creator.

\* *He whose Lot it will be there to suffer will have the Better of his Fellow.*

Then I saw in my Dream, that when they were got out of the Wilderness, they presently saw a Town before them, and the Name of that Town is *Vanity*; and at the Town there is a Fair kept called *Vanity-Fair*: It is kept all the Year long; it beareth the Name of *Vanity-Fair*, because the Town where it is kept is *lighter than Vanity*; and also, because all that is there sold, or that cometh thither, is *Vanity*. As is the Saying of the Wise, *All that cometh is Vanity*.

*Psal. xl. 17.  
Ecclef. i.  
ch. ii. 11. 17.*

This Fair is no new-erected Business, but a Thing of ancient Standing: I will shew you the Original of it.

† Almost

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

• *The Anti-  
quity of this  
Fair.*

† *The Mer-  
chandize of  
this Fair.*

\* Almost five Thousand Years ago, there were Pilgrims walking to the Cœlestial City, as these two honest Persons are; and *Beelzebub*, *Apollyon*, and *Legion*, with their Companions, perceiving by the Path that the Pilgrims made, that their Way to the City lay through this Town of *Vanity*, they contrived here to set up a Fair; a Fair, wherein should be sold all Sorts of *Vanity*, and that it should last all the Year long; therefore, at this Fair, are all such Merchandizes sold, † as Houses, Lands, Trades, Places, Honours, Preferments, Titles, Countries, Kingdoms, Lusts, Pleasures; and Delights of all Sorts, as Whores, Bawds, Wives, Husbands, Children, Masters, Servants, Lives, Blood, Bodies, Souls, Silver, Gold, Pearls, precious Stones, and what not?

And moreover, at this Fair there is at all Times to be seen Jugglings, Cheats, Games, Plays, Fools, Apes, Knaves, and Rogues, and that of every Kind.

Here are to be seen too, and that for nothing, Thefts, Murders, Adulteries, False-swearers, and that of a Blood-red Colour.

And as in other Fairs of less Moment, there are several Rows and Streets under their proper Names, where such  
and

*Behold VANITY-FAIR; the Pilgrims there  
Are chain'd and strow'd beside:  
Even so it was our LORD pass'd here,  
And on Mount Calvary died.*



and such Wares are vended: So here likewise, you have the proper Places, Rows, Streets, (*viz.* Countries and Kingdoms) where the Wares of this Fair are soonest to be found. \* Here is the *Britain* \* *The Street of this Fair.* Row, the *French* Row, the *Italian* Row, the *Spanish* Row, the *German* Row, where several Sorts of Vanities are to be sold. But as in other Fairs, some one Commodity is as the Chief of all the Fair, so the Ware of *Rome* and her Merchandize is greatly promoted in this Fair: Only our *English* Nation, with some others, have taken a Dislike thereat.

Now, as I said, the Way to the Cœlestial City lies just through the Town where this lusty Fair is kept; and he that will go to the City, and yet not go through this Town, must needs go out of the World. † The Prince of Princes himself, † *Christ went through this Fair.* when here, went through this Town to his own Country, and that upon a *Fair-day* too: Yea, and as I think, it was *Beelzebub*, the Chief Lord of this Fair, that *Mat. vii. 8.* *Luke iv. 5,* *6. 7.* invited him to buy of his Vanities; yea, would have made him Lord of the Fair, would he but have done him Reverence as he went through the Town: Yea, because he was such a Person of Honour, *Beelzebub* had him from Street to Street, and shewed him all the Kingdoms of the World in a little Time, that he might, if possible, allure that Blessed One to cheapen and buy some of his Vanities; † but he had no Mind to the Merchandize, and therefore left the Town, without laying out so much as one Farthing upon

† *Christ bought nothing in this Fair.*

upon these Vanities. This Fair, therefore, is an ancient Thing of long standing, and a very great Fair.

\* *The Pilgrims enter the Fair.*

*The Fair in a Hubbub about them.*

† *The first Cause of the Hubbub.*

1 Cor. ii. 7. 8.

‡ *The second Cause of the Hubbub.*

§ *The third Cause of the Hubbub.*

\* Now these Pilgrims, as I said, must needs go through the Fair. Well, so they did; but behold, even as they entered into the Fair, all the People in the Fair were moved, and the Town itself, as it were, in a Hubbub about them; and that for several Reasons: For,

First, † The Pilgrims were cloathed with such kind of Raiment as was diverse from the Raiment of any that traded in that Fair. The People, therefore, of the Fair, made a great gazing upon them: Some said they were Fools; some they were Bedlams; and some, they were Outlandish Men.

Secondly, ‡ And as they wondered at their Apparel, so they did likewise at their Speech; for few could understand what they said; they naturally spoke the Language of Canaan; but they that kept the Fair were the Men of this World: So that from one end of the Fair to the other, they seemed Barbarians to each other.

Thirdly, § But that which did not a little amuse the Merchandizers, was that these Pilgrims set very light by all their Wares; they cared not so much as to look upon them; and if they called upon them to buy, they would put their Fingers in their Ears, and cry, *Turn away mine Eyes from beholding Vanity*; and look upwards, signifying, that their Trade and Traffick were in Heaven.

One

\*One chanced mockingly, beholding the Carriages of the Men, to say unto them, *What will ye buy?* But they looking gravely upon him, said, *We buy the Truth.* At that, there was an Occasion taken to despise the Men the more; † some mocking, some taunting, some speaking reproachfully, and some calling upon others to smite them. At last ‡ Things came to an Hubbub, and great Stir in the Fair, insomuch that all Order was confounded. Now was Word presently brought to the great One of the Fair, who quickly came down and deputed some of his most trusty Friends to take those Men into an Examination, about whom the Fair was almost overturned. So the Men were † brought to Examination; and they that sat upon them, asked them, Whence they came, whither they went, and what they did there in such an unusual Garb? The Men told them, That § they were Pilgrims and Strangers in the World, and that they were going to their own Country, which was heavenly *Jerusalem*; and that they had given no Occasion to the Men of the Town, nor yet to the Merchandizers, thus to abuse them, and to stop them in their Journey: Except it was for that, when one asked them what they would buy, they said, they would *buy the Truth.* But they that were appointed to examine them, did not believe them to be any other than Bedlams and Mad, or else such as came to put all Things into a Confusion in the Fair. Therefore they took them and beat them, and besmeared them

*The fourth Cause of the Hubbub.*

At Prov. xxiii. 23.

† They are mocked.

† The Fair is an Hubbub.

† They are examined.

§ They tell who they are and whence they came.

Heb. xi. 13, 14, 15, 16.

They are taken for Madmen.

\* They are  
put in the  
Cage.

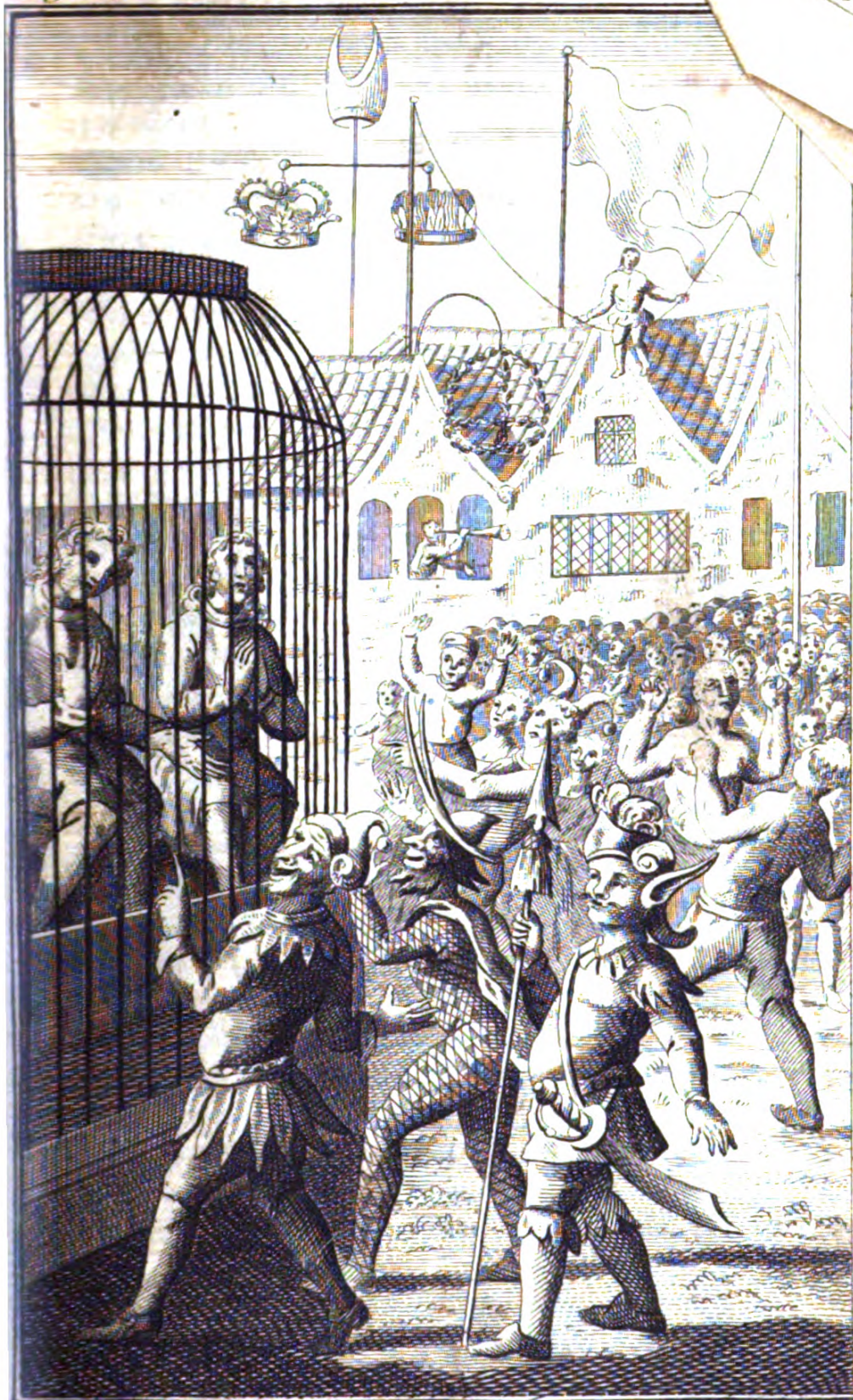
+ Their Beha-  
viour in the  
Cage.

† The Men  
of the Fair do  
fall out among  
themselves  
about these  
two Men.

§ They are  
made the Au-  
thors of this  
Disturbance.

with Dirt, \* and then put them into the Cage, that they might be made a Spectacle to all the Men of the Fair. There therefore they lay for some Time, and were made the Objects of any Man's Sport, or Malice, or Revenge; the great One of the Fair laughing still at all that befel them: † But, the Men being patient, and not rendering Railing for Railing, but contrarywise blessing, and giving good Words for bad, and Kindness for Injuries done; ‡ some Men in the Fair that were more observing, and less prejudiced than the rest, began to check and blame the baser Sort for their continual Abuses done by them to the Men. They therefore in angry Manner let fly at them again, counting them as bad as the Men in the Cage, and telling them that they seemed Confederates, and should be made Partakers of their Misfortunes. The others replied, that for ought they could see, the Men were quiet and sober, and intended no Body any Harm: And that there were many that traded in their Fair, that were more worthy to be put into the Cage, yea, and Pillory too, than were the Men that they had abused. Thus, after divers Words had passed on both Sides, (the Men behaving themselves all the while very wisely and soberly before them) they fell to some Blows among themselves, and did Harm one to another. § Then were these two poor Men brought before their Examiners again, and there charged as being guilty of the late Hub-  
bub





Vanity Fair, and the Pilgrims sufferings there.

114



bub that had been in the Fair. So \* they <sup>\* They are</sup> beat them pitifully, and hanged Irons up- <sup>led up and</sup> on them, and led them in Chains up and <sup>down the Fair</sup> down the Fair, for an Example and Ter- <sup>in Chains, for</sup> ror to others; lest any should speak in <sup>a Terror to</sup> their Behalf or join themselves unto them. <sup>others.</sup>

But *Christian* and *Faithful* behaved themselves yet more wisely, and received the Ignominy and Shame that was cast upon them, with so much Meekness and Pa- <sup>† Some Men</sup> tience, that it † won to their Side (though <sup>of the Fair</sup> but few in Comparison with the rest) seve- <sup>won over to</sup> ral of the Men in the Fair. This put the other Party yet into greater Rage, inso- much, that they concluded the Death of these two ‡ Men. Wherefore they threat- <sup>‡ Their Ad-</sup> ened, that neither Cage nor Irons should <sup>versaries re-</sup> serve their Turn, but that they should die <sup>solve to kill</sup> for the Abuse they had done, and for de- <sup>them.</sup> luding the Men of the Fair.

Then § were they remanded to the <sup>§ They are</sup> Cage again, until further Order should <sup>again put into</sup> be taken with them. So they put them <sup>the Cage, and</sup> in, and made their Feet fast in the <sup>after brought</sup> Stocks. <sup>to Trial.</sup>

Here therefore they called again to mind what they had heard from their faithful Friend *Evangelist*, and were the more confirmed in their Ways and Sufferings, by what he told them would happen to them. They also now comforted each other, that whose Lot it was to suffer, even he should have the best on it; therefore each Man secretly wished that he might have that Preferment: But committing themselves to the All-wise Disposal of him that ruleth all

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Things, with much Content they abode in the Condition in which they were until they should be otherwise disposed of.

Then a convenient Time being appointed, they brought them forth to their Tryal, in order to their Condemnation. When the Time was come, they were brought before their Enemies, and arraigned. The Judge's Name was Lord *Hate-Good*: Their Indictment was one and the same in Substance, though somewhat varying in Form; the Contents whereof were these :

*\* Their Indictment.*

*\* That they were Enemies to, and Disturbers of, their Trade: That they had made Commotions and Divisions in the Town, and had won a Party to their own most dangerous Opinions, in Contempt of the Law of their Prince.*

*† Faithful's Answer for himself.*

Then † *Faithful* began to answer, That he had only set himself against that which had set itself against Him that is Higher than the Highest. And, said he, as for Disturbance, I make none, being myself a Man of Peace; the Parties that were won to us, were won by beholding our Truth and Innocence, and they are only turned from the worse to the better. And as to the King you talk of, since he is *Beelzebub*, the Enemy of our Lord, I defy him and all his Angels.

Then Proclamation was made, That they that had ought to say for their Lord the King against the Prisoner at the Bar, should forthwith appear, and give in their Evidence. So there came in three Witnesses,



nesses, to wit, *Envy*, *Superstition*, and *Pickthank*: They were then asked, if they knew the Prisoner at the Bar; and what they had to say for their Lord the King against him.

Then stood forth \* *Envy*, and said to \* *Envy begins.*  
this Effect: My Lord, I have known this Man a long Time, and will attest upon my Oath before this honourable Bench, That he is —

*Judge.* Hold—Give him his Oath.

So they sware him: Then he said, My Lord, this Man, notwithstanding his plausible Name, is one of the vilest Men in our Country; he neither regardeth Prince nor People, Law nor Custom; but doth all that he can to possess all Men with certain of his disloyal Notions, which he in the general calls *Principles of Faith and Holiness*. And in particular, I heard him once myself affirm, that Christianity and the Customs of our Town of *Vanity*, were diametrically opposite, and could not be reconciled. By which Saying, my Lord, he doth, at once, not only condemn all our laudable Doings, but Us in the doing of them.

*Judge.* Then did the Judge say to him, Hast thou any more to say?

*Envy.* My Lord, I could say much more, only I would not be tedious to the Court. Yet, if need be, when the other Gentlemen have given in their Evidence, rather than any Thing shall be wanting that will dispatch him, I will enlarge my Testimony against him. So he was bid stand by.

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Then they called *Superstition*, and bid him look upon the Prisoner ; they also asked, What he could say for their Lord the King against him? Then they sware him; so he began :

\* *Superstition follows.*

*Super.* \* My Lord, I have no great Acquaintance with this Man, nor do I desire to have further Knowledge of him; however, this I know, That he is a very pestilent Fellow, from some Discourse that the other Day I had with him in this Town; for then talking with him, I heard him say, That our Religion was naught, and such by which a Man could by no Means please God. Which Saying of his, my Lord, your Lordship very well knows what necessarily thence will follow, to wit, that we still do worship in vain, are yet in our Sins, and finally shall be damned: And this is that which I have to say.

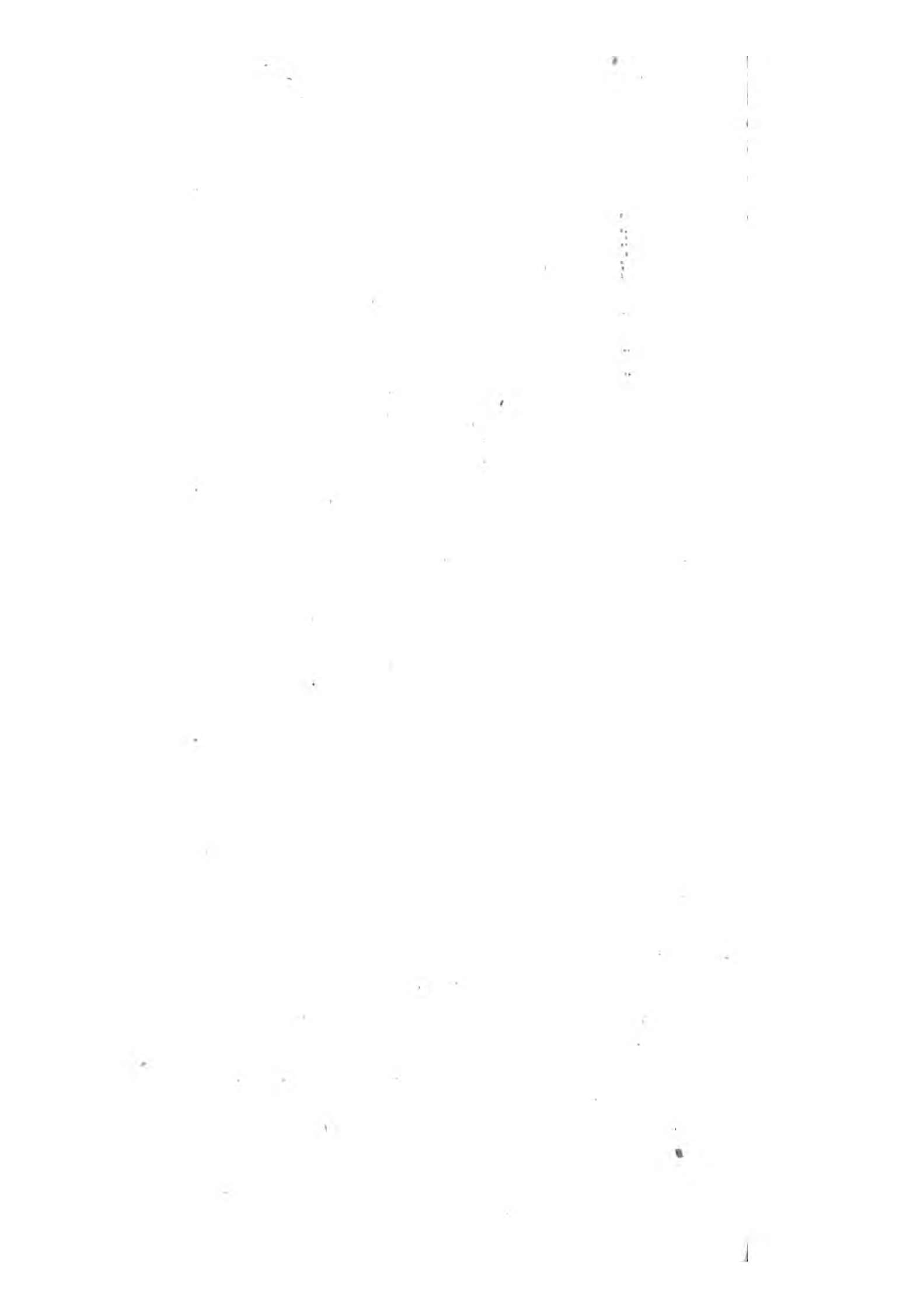
Then was *Pickthank* sworn, and bid say what he knew in the Behalf of their Lord the King, against the Prisoner at the Bar.

† *Pickthank's Testimony.*

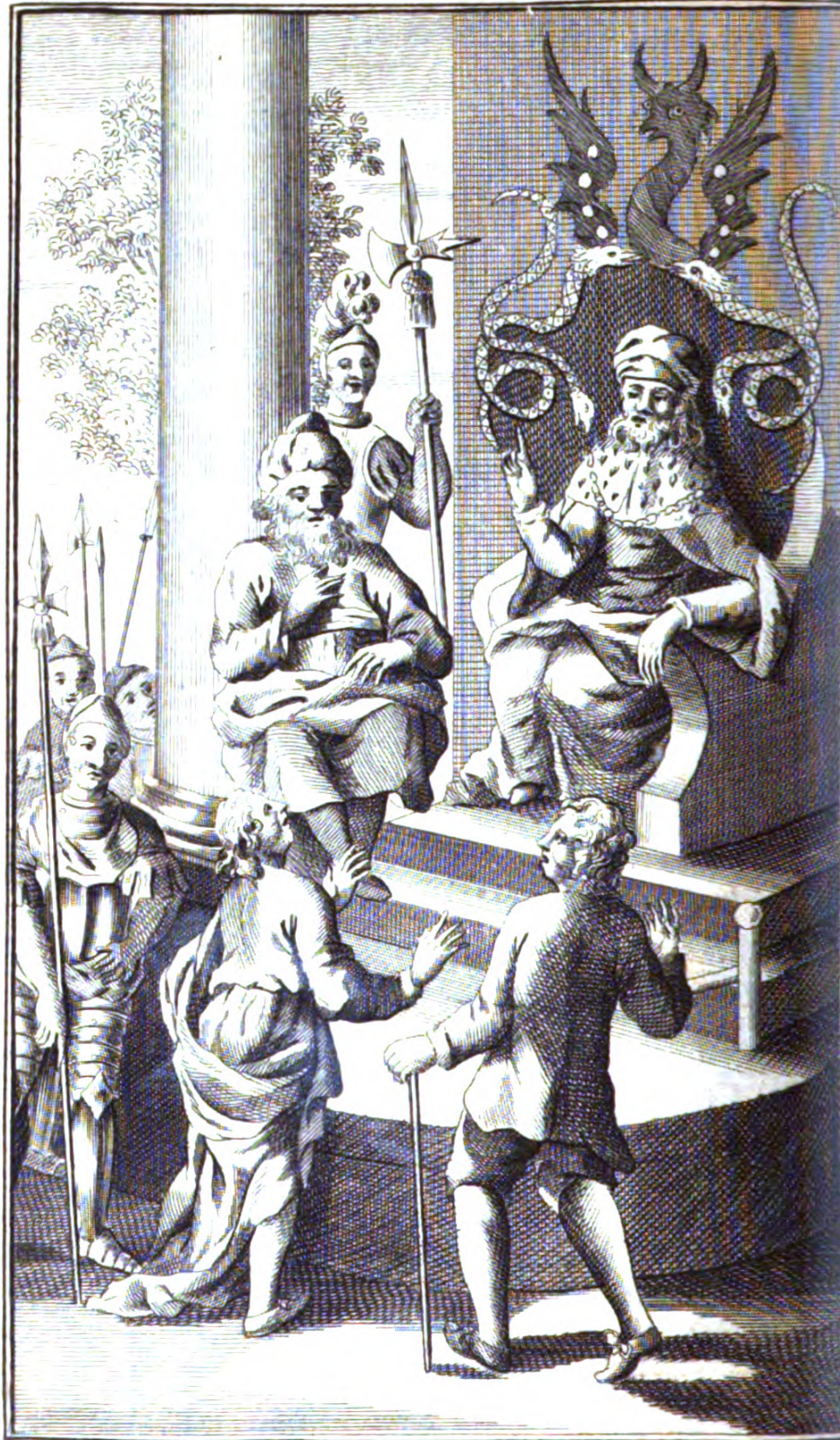
*Pick.* † My Lord, and you Gentlemen all, this Fellow I have known of a long Time, and have heard him speak Things that ought not to be spoke; for he hath railed on our noble Prince *Beelzebub*, and hath spoken contemptibly of his honour-

† *Sins are all Lords and great ones.*

able Friends, whose Names are, the ‡ Lord *Old Man*, the Lord *Carnal Delight*, the Lord *Luxurious*, the Lord *Desire of Vain-Glory*, my old Lord *Leachery*, Sir *Having Greedy*, with all the rest of our Nobility; and he hath said moreover, That if all Men were of his Mind, if possible, there







The Trial of Christian and Faithful.



is not one of these Noblemen should have any longer a Being in this Town. Besides, he hath not been afraid to rail on you, my Lord, who are now appointed to be his Judge, calling you an ungodly Villain, with many other such like vilfying Terms, with which he hath bespattered most of the Gentry of our Town.

When this *Picketbank* had told his Tale, the Judge directed his Speech to the Prisoner at the Bar, saying, Thou Renegade, Heretick, and Traitor, hast thou heard what these honest Gentlemen have witnessed against thee?

*Faith.* May I speak a few Words in my own Defence?

*Judge.* Sirrah, Sirrah, thou deservest to live no longer, but to be slain immediately upon the Place; yet that all Men may see our Gentleness towards thee, let us see what thou hast to say.

*Faith.* 1. \* I say then, in Answer to what \* *Faithful's*  
Mr. *Envy* hath spoken, I never said ought *Defence of*  
but this, That what Rule or Laws, or *himself.*  
Custom or People, were flat against the  
Word of God, are diametrically opposite  
to Christianity. If I have said amiss in  
this, convince me of my Error, and I am  
ready here before you to make my Recan-  
tation.

I 4

2. As

---

*Now, Faithful, play the Man, speak for thy God;  
Fear not the Wicked's Malice, nor their Rod;  
Speak boldly, Man, the Truth is on thy Side;  
Die for it, and to Life in Triumph ride.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

2. As to the Second, to wit, Mr. *Superstition*, and his Charge against me, I said only this, That in the Worship of God there is required a Divine Faith; but there can be no Divine Faith without a Divine Revelation of the Will of God. Therefore, whatever is thrust into the Worship of God, that is not agreeable to Divine Revelation, can be done but by an human Faith, which Faith will not be profitable to eternal Life.

3. As to what Mr. *Pickbank* hath said, I said (avoiding Terms, as that I am said to rail, and the like) that the Prince of this Town, with all the Rabblement, his Attendants, by this Gentleman named, are more fit for being in Hell, than in this Town and Country; *and so the Lord have Mercy upon me.*

\* *The Judge's  
Speech to the  
Jury.*

Then the Judge called to the Jury (who all this while stood to hear and observe) \* Gentlemen of the Jury, you see this Man about whom so great an Uproar hath been made in this Town: You have also heard what these worthy Gentlemen have witnessed against him: Also you have heard his Reply and Confession: It lieth now in your Breasts to hang him, or save his Life; but yet I think meet to instruct you into our Law.

Excd. i.

There was an Act made in the Days of *Pbaraob* the Great, Servant to our Prince, that lest those of a contrary Religion should multiply and grow too strong for him, their Males should be thrown into the River. There was also an Act made in the Days of *Nebuchadnezzar* the Great, another

Dan. iii.

another of his Servants, that whoever would not fall down and worship his Golden Image, should be thrown into a fiery Furnace. There was also an Act made in the Days of *Darius*, That whoso for some Time called upon any God but him, should be cast into the Lion's Den. Now the Substance of these Laws this Rebel has broken, not only in Thought (which is not to be borne) but also in Word and Deed; which must therefore needs be intolerable.

For that of *Pharaoh*, his Law was made upon a Supposition, to prevent Mischief, no Crime being yet apparent; but here is a Crime apparent. For the second and third, you see he disputeth against our Religion; and for the Treason he hath confessed, he deserveth to die the Death.

Then went the Jury out,\* whose Names \* *The Jury*  
were Mr. *Blindman*, Mr. *No-good*, Mr. *Malice*, Mr. *Love-Lust*, Mr. *Live-Loose*, Mr. *Heady*, Mr. *High-Mind*, Mr. *Enmity*, Mr. *Liar*, Mr. *Cruelty*, Mr. *Hate-light*, and Mr. *Implacable*; who every one gave in his private Verdict against him among themselves, and afterwards unanimously concluded to bring him in guilty before the Judge. And first among themselves, † Mr. *Blindman* the Foreman said, I see † *Every one's*  
clearly that this Man is an Heretick. *private Ver-*  
Then said Mr. *No-good*, Away with such *dict.*  
a Fellow from the Earth. Ay, said Mr. *Malice*, for I hate the very Looks of him. Then said Mr. *Love-lust*, I could never endure him. Nor I, said Mr. *Live-loose*, for he would always be condemning my  
Way.

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Way. Hang him, hang him, said Mr. *Heady*. A sorry Scrub, said Mr. *High-mind*. My Heart riseth against him, said Mr. *Enmity*. He is a Rogue, said Mr. *Lyar*. Hanging is too good for him said Mr. *Cruelty*. Let us despatch him out of the Way, said Mr. *Hate-light*. Then said Mr. *Implacable*, Might I have all the World given me, I could not be reconciled to him, therefore let us forthwith bring him in Guilty of Death\*, and so they did; therefore he was presently condemned to be had from the Place where he was, to the Place from whence he came, and there to be put to the most cruel Death that could be invented.

\* They conclude to bring him in guilty of Death.

They therefore brought him out, to do with him according to their Law; † and first they scourged him, then they buffeted him, then they lanced his Flesh with Knives; after that they stoned him with Stones, then pricked him with their Swords; and last of all, they burnt him to Ashes at the Stake. Thus came *Faithful* to his End.

† The cruel Death of Faithful.

‡ Chariot and Horses take away Faithful.

‡ Now I saw, that there stood behind the Multitude a Chariot and a Couple of Horses waiting for *Faithful*, who (so soon as his Adversaries had despatched him) was taken up into it, and straightway was carried up through the Clouds with Sound of

---

*Brave Faithful, bravely done in Word and Deed!  
Judge, Witnesses, and Jury have, instead  
Of overcoming thee, but shown their Rage;  
When they are dead, thou'lt live from Age to Age.*





The cruel Death of Faithful.



of Trumpet, the nearest Way to the Cœlestial Gate. \* But as for *Christian* he had some Respite, and was remanded back to Prison; so he there remained for a Space: But he that over-rules all Things having the Power of their Rage in his own Hand, so wrought it about, that *Christian* for that Time escaped them, and went his Way.

\* *Christian still a Prisoner.*

And as he went he sung, saying;

† *Well Faithful, thou hast faithfully profest  
Unto thy Lord, with whom thou shalt be blest;  
When Faithless ones, with all their vain Delights,*

† *The Song that Christian made of Faithful after his Death.*

*Are crying out under their Hellish Plights:  
Sing, Faithful, sing, and let thy Name survive:*

*For tho' they kill'd thee, thou art yet alive.*

Now I saw in my Dream that *Christian* went not forth alone; for there was one whose Name was † *Hopeful*, (being so made by the beholding of *Christian* and *Faithful* in their Words and Behaviour, in their Sufferings at the Fair) who joined himself unto him, and entering into a brotherly Covenant, told him that he would be his Companion. Thus one died to bear Testimony to the Truth, and another rises out of his Ashes to be a Companion with *Christian* in his Pilgrimage. § This *Hopeful* also told *Christian*, that there were many more of the Men in the Fair that would take their Time, and follow after.

† *Christian has another Companion.*

§ *There are more of the Men in the Fair will follow.*

So

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

So I saw, that quickly after they were got out of the Fair they overtook one that was going before them, whose Name was \**By-ends*, so they said to him, What Countryman, Sir? and how far go you this Way? He told them, that he came from the Town of *Fair-speech*, and he was going to the Cœlestial City, but told them not his Name.

\* They over-  
take *By-ends*.

Prov. xxvi.  
25.

From *Fair-speech*, said *Christian*! is there any Good that lives there?

*By-ends*. Yes, said *By-ends*, I hope.

*Chr.* Pray, Sir, what may I call you?

† *By-ends*  
loth to tell his  
Name.

*By-ends*. I am a Stranger to you, and you to me: If you be going this Way, I shall be glad of your Company: If not, I must be content.

*Chr.* This Town of *Fair-speech*, said *Christian*, I have heard of, and, as I remember, they say it is a wealthy Place.

*By-ends*. Yes, I will assure you that it is, and I have very many rich Kindred there.

*Chr.* Pray who are your Kindred there, if a Man may be so bold?

*By-ends*. Almost the whole Town: And in particular my Lord *Turn-about*, my Lord *Time-server*, my Lord *Fair-speech*, (from whose Ancestors that Town first took its Name:) Also Mr. *Smooth-man*, Mr. *Facing-both-ways*, Mr. *Any-thing*, and the Parson of our Parish, Mr. *Two-tongues*, was my Mother's own Brother by Father's Side: And, to tell you the Truth, I am become a Gentleman of good Quality, yet my Great Grandfather was but a Waterman, looking one Way, and rowing another, and



I got most of my Estate by the same Occupation.

*Chr.* Are you a married Man?

*By-ends.* Yes, \* and my Wife is a very \* *The Wife and Kindred of By-ends.*  
 virtuous Woman, the Daughter of a virtuous Woman; she was my Lady *Feigning's* Daughter, therefore she came of a very honourable Family, and is arrived to such a Pitch of Breeding, that she knows how to carry it to all, even to Prince and Peasant. † It is true, we somewhat differ † *Where By-ends differs from others in Religion.*  
 in Religion from those of the stricter Sort, yet but in two small Points: First, We never strive against Wind and Tide. Secondly, We are always most zealous when Religion goes in Silver Slippers; we love much to walk with him in the Street if the Sun shines, and the People applaud him.

Then *Christian* stept a little aside to his Fellow *Hopeful*, saying, it runs in my Mind that this is one *By-ends* of *Fair-speech*; and if it be he, we have as very a Knave in our Company as dwelleth in all these Parts. Then said *Hopeful*, Ask him, methinks he should not be ashamed of his Name. So *Christian* came up with him again, and said, Sir, You talk as if you knew something more than all the World doth; and, if I take not my Mark amiss, I deem I have half a Guess of you: Is not your Name Mr. *By-ends* of *Fair-speech*?

*By-ends.* This is not my Name, but indeed it is a Nick-name that is given me by some that cannot abide me, and I must be content to bear it as a Reproach, as  
 other

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

other good Men have borne theirs before me.

*Cbr.* But did you never give an Occasion to Men to call you by this Name?

\* *How By-ends got his Name.*

*By-ends.* Never, never! the worst that ever I did to give them an occasion to give me this Name was, \* that I had always the Luck to jump in my Judgment with the present Way of the Times whatever it was, and my Chance was to get thereby; but if Things are thus cast upon me, let me count them a Blessing; but let not the Malicious load me therefore with Reproach.

*Cbr.* I thought indeed that you were the Man that I heard of; and to tell you what I think, I fear this Name belongs to you more properly than you are willing we should think it doth.

† *He desires to keep Company with Christian.*

*By-ends.* Well, if you will thus imagine, I cannot help it: † You will find me a fair Company-keeper, if you will still admit me your Associate.

*Cbr.* If you will go with us, you must go against Wind and Tide; the which, I perceive, is against your Opinion: You must also own Religion in his Rags as well as when in his Silver Slippers; and stand by him too when bound in Irons, as well as when he walketh the Streets with Applause.

*By-ends.* You must not impose, nor lord it over my Faith; leave me to my Liberty, and let me go with you.

*Cbr.* Not a Step farther, unless you will do in what I propound as we.

Then

Then said *By-ends*, I shall never desert my old Principles, since they are harmless and profitable. \* If I may not go with you, I must do as I did before you overtook me, even go by myself, until some overtake me that will be glad of my Company.

\* *By-ends and Christian part.*

Then I saw in my Dream that *Christian* and *Hopeful* forsook him, and kept their Distance before him; but one of them looking back, saw three Men following Mr. *By-ends*, and behold as they came up with him, he made them a very low Congee; and they also gave him a Compliment. † The Men's Names were Mr. *Hold-the-World*, Mr. *Money-love*, and Mr. *Save-all*; Men that Mr. *By-ends* had formerly been acquainted with; for in their Minority they were Schoolfellows, and taught by one Mr. *Gripeman*, a Schoolmaster in *Love-Gain*, which is a Market-Town in the County of *Coveting*, in the North. This Schoolmaster taught them the Art of getting, either by Violence, Cozenage, Flattery, Lying; or by putting on a Guise of Religion; and these four Gentlemen had attained much of the Art of their Master, so that they could each of them have kept such a School themselves.

† *He has new Companions.*

Well, when they had, as I said, thus saluted each other, Mr. *Money-love* said to Mr. *By-ends*, Who are they upon the Road before us? For *Christian* and *Hopeful* were yet within View.

*By-ends.*

*By-ends's Character of the Pilgrims.* *By-ends.* They are a Couple of far Country-men, that after their Mode are going on Pilgrimage.

*Money-love.* Alas ! why did they not stay that we might have had their good Company ? for they, and we, and you, Sir, I hope, are going on Pilgrimage.

*By-ends.* We are so, indeed ; but the Men before us are so rigid, and love so much their own Notions, and do also so lightly esteem the Opinion of others, that let a Man be never so godly, yet if he jumps not with them in all Things, they thrust him quite out of their Company.

*Mr. Save-all.* That is bad, but we read of some that are righteous over-much, and such Men's Rigidness prevails with them to judge and condemn all but themselves, but I pray what, and how many, were the Things wherein you differed ?

*By-ends.* Why they, after their headstrong Manner, conclude that it is their Duty to rush on their Journey all Weathers, and I am for waiting for Wind and Tide. They are for hazarding all for God at a Clap, and I am for taking all Advantages to secure my Life and Estate. They are for holding their Notions, though all other Men be against them : but I am for Religion, in what, and so far as the Times and my Safety will bear it. They are for Religion when in Rags and Contempt, but I am for him when he walks in his Silver Slippers in the Sunshine, and with Applause.

Mr.



Mr. *Hold-the-World*. Ay, and hold you there still; good Mr. *By-ends*; for, for my Part, I can count him but a Fool, that having the Liberty to keep what he has, shall be so unwise as to lose it. Let us be wise as Serpents; it is best to make Hay when the Sun shines; you see how the Bee lieth still all Winter, and bestirs her only when she can have Profit with Pleasure. God sends sometimes Rain, and sometimes Sun-shine: If they be such Fools to go through the first, yet let us be content to take fair Weather along with us. For my Part, I like that Religion best, that will stand with the Security of God's good Blessings unto us: For who can imagine, that is ruled by his Reason, since God hath bestowed upon us the good Things of this Life, but that he would have us keep them for his Sake. *Abraham* and *Solomon* grew rich in Religion. And *Job* says, That a good Man shall lay up Gold as Dust. But he must not be such as the Men before us, if they be as you have described them.

Mr. *Save-all*. I think that we are all agreed in this Matter, and therefore there needs no more Words about it.

Mr. *Money-love*. No, there needs no more Words about this Matter indeed; for he that believes neither Scripture nor Reason (and you see we have both on our Side) neither knows his own Liberty, nor seeks his own Safety.

Mr. *By-ends*. My Brethren, we are, as you see, going all on Pilgrimage, and for our better Diversion from Things that

K

are

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

are bad, give me Leave to propound unto you this Question.

Suppose a Man, a Minister or a Tradesman, &c. should have an Advantage lie before him, to get the good Blessings of this Life, yet so as that he can by no Means come by them, except in Appearance, at least, he becomes extraordinary zealous in some Points of Religion, that he meddled not with before: May he not use this Means to attain his End, and yet be a right honest Man?

Mr. *Money-love*, I see the Bottom of your Question; and, with these Gentlemen's good Leave, I will endeavour to shape you an Answer: And first, to speak to your Question as it concerns a *Minister* himself. Suppose a Minister, a worthy Man, possessed but of a very small Benefice, and has in his Eye a greater, more fat and plump by far; he has also now an Opportunity of getting it, yet so as by being more studious, by preaching more frequently and zealously, and, because the Temper of the People requires it, by altering of some of his Principles; for my Part, I see no Reason but a Man may do this; (provided he has a Call;) ay, and a great deal more besides, and yet be an honest Man. For why?

1. His Desire of a greater Benefice is lawful (this cannot be contradicted) since it is set before him by Providence; so then he may get it if he can, making no Question, for Conscience-sake.

2. Besides,

2. Besides, his Desire after that Benefice makes him more studious, a more zealous Preacher, &c. and so makes him a better Man, yea, makes him better improve his Parts, which is according to the Mind of God.

3. Now as for his complying with the Temper of his People, by deserting, to serve, some of his Principles, this argueth, 1. That he is of a self-denying Temper. 2. Of a sweet and winning Deportment. 3. And so more fit for the Ministerial Function.

4. I conclude then, that a Minister that changes a *Small* for a *Great*, should not, for so doing, be judged as Covetous; but rather, since he is improved in his Parts and Industry hereby, be counted as one that pursues his Call, and the Opportunity put into his Hand to do good.

And now to the second Part of the Question, which concerns the *Tradesman* you mentioned: Suppose such a one to have but a poor Employ in the World, but, by becoming religious, he may mend his Market, perhaps get a rich Wife, or more and far better Customers to his Shop. For my Part, I see no Reason but this may be lawfully done. For why?

1. To become *Religious* is a Virtue, by what Means soever a Man become so.

2. Nor is it unlawful to get a rich Wife, or more Custom to my Shop.

3. Besides, the Man that gets these by becoming Religious, gets that which is

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

good of them that are good, by becoming good himself; so then here is a good Wife, and good Customers, and good Gain, and all these by becoming Religious, which is good: Therefore, to become Religious to get all these, is a good and profitable Design.

This Answer thus made by this Mr. *Money-love* to Mr. *By-ends*' Question, was highly applauded by them all; wherefore they concluded upon the Whole, that it was most wholesome and advantageous. And because, as they thought, no Man was able to contradict it, and because *Christian* and *Hopeful* were yet within Call, they jointly agreed to assault them with the Question as soon as they overtook them; and the rather because they had opposed Mr. *By-ends* before. So they called after them, and they stopt and stood still till they came up to them; but they concluded, as they went, that not Mr. *By-ends*, but old Mr. *Hold-the-World* should propound the Question to them, because, as they supposed, their Answer to him would be without the Remainder of that Heat that was kindled between Mr. *By-ends* and them, at their parting a little before.

So they came up to each other, and after a short Salutation, Mr. *Hold-the-World* propounded the Question to *Christian* and his Fellow, and bid them to answer it if they could.

*Chr.*



*Chr.* Then said *Christian*, Even a Babe in Religion may answer ten thousand such Questions. For, if it be unlawful to follow Christ for Loaves, as it is, *John vi.* how much more abominable is it to make of him and Religion a Stalking-horse to get and enjoy the World? Nor do we find any other than Heathens, Hypocrites, Devils, and Witches, that are of this Opinion.

1. *Heathens*; for when *Hamor* and *Sechem* had a Mind to the Daughter and Cattle of *Jacob*, and saw that there was no Way for them to come at them, but by becoming circumcised; they said to their Companions, If every Male of us be circumcised, as they are circumcised, shall not their Cattle, and their Substance, and every Beast of theirs be ours? Their Daughters and their Cattle were that which they sought to obtain, and their Religion the Stalking-horse they made Use of to come to them. Read the whole Story, *Gen. xxxiv. 20, 21, 22, 23.*

2. The hypocritical *Pharisees* were also of this Religion: Long Prayers were their Pretence; but to get Widows' Houses were their Intent, and greater Damnation was from God their Judgment. *Luke xx. 46, 47.*

3. *Judas* the Devil was also of this Religion; he was religious for the Bag, that he might be possessed of what was therein; but he was lost, cast away, and the very Son of Perdition.

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

4. *Simon* the Witch was of this Religion too; for he would have had the Holy Ghost, that he might have got Money therewith, and his Sentence from *Peter's* Mouth was according, *Acts* viii. 19, 20, 21, 22.

5. Neither will it go out of my Mind, but that that Man that takes up Religion for the World, will throw away Religion for the World; for so surely as *Judas* designed the World in becoming Religious, so surely did he also sell Religion and his Master for the same. To answer the Question therefore affirmatively, as I perceive you have done; and to accept of, as authentick, such Answer, is both Heathenish, Hypocritical, and Devilish; and your Reward will be according to your Works. Then they stood staring one upon another, but had not wherewith to answer *Christian*. *Hopeful* also approved of the Soundness of *Christian's* Answer; so there was a great Silence among them. Mr. *By-ends* and his Company also staggered and kept behind, that *Christian* and *Hopeful* might out-go them. Then said *Christian* to his Fellow; If these Men cannot stand before the Sentence of Men, what will they do with the Sentence of God? And if they are mute when dealt with by Vessels of Clay, what will they do when they shall be rebuked by the Flames of a devouring Fire?

\* *The Ease*  
that *Pilgrims*  
have, is but  
little in this  
Life.

Then \* *Christian* and *Hopeful* out-went them again, and went till they came at a delicate Plain, called *Ease*, where they went

went with much Content; but that Plain was but narrow, so they were quickly got over it. Now at the farther Side of that Plain was a little \* Hill called *Lucre*, and in that Hill a Silver Mine, which some of them that had formerly gone that Way, because of the Rarity of it, had turned aside to see; but going too near the Brink of the Pit, the Ground, being deceitful under them, broke, and they were slain: Some also had been maimed there, and could not, to their dying Day, be their own Men again.

\* Lucre Hill  
a dangerous Hill.

Then I saw in my Dream, that a little off the Road, over-against the Silver-Mine, stood † Demas (Gentleman-like) to call Passengers to come and see; who said to *Christian* and his Fellow, ‡ Ho! turn aside hither, I will show you a Thing.

† Demas at  
the Hill Lucre

‡ He calls to  
Christian and  
Hopeful to  
come to him.

*Cbr.* What Thing is so deserving, as to turn us out of the Way?

*Demas.* Here is a Silver Mine, and some digging in it for Treasure; if you will come with a little Pains, you may richly provide for yourselves.

*Hope.* § Then said *Hopeful*, Let us go see.

§ *Hopeful*  
tempted to go,  
but *Christian*  
holds him  
back.

*Cbr.* Not I, said *Christian*, I have heard of this Place before now, and how many have there been slain; and besides, that Treasure is a Snare to those that seek it; for it hindereth them in their Pilgrimage.

Then *Christian* called to *Demas*, saying, is not the Place dangerous? Hath it not hindered many in their Pilgrimage?

Hof. iv. 18.

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

*Demas.* Not very dangerous, except to those that are careless; but withal, he blushed as he spake.

*Chr.* Then said *Christian* to *Hopeful*, Let us not stir a Step, but still keep on our Way.

*Hope.* I will warrant you, when *By-ends* comes up, if he hath the same Invitation as we, he will turn in thither to see.

*Chr.* No Doubt thereof, for his Principles lead him that Way, and a hundred to one but he dies there.

*Demas.* Then *Demas* called again, saying, But will you not come over and see?

• Christian  
roundeth up  
*Demas.*  
2 Tim. iv.  
10.

*Chr.* Then \* *Christian* roundly answering, saying, *Demas*, Thou art an Enemy to the right Ways of the Lord of this Way, and hast been already condemned for thine own turning aside, by one of his Majesty's Justices: And why seekest thou to bring us into the like Condemnation? Besides, if we at all turn aside, our Lord the King will certainly hear thereof, and will there put us to Shame, where we would stand with Boldness before him.

*Demas* cried again, That he also was one of their Fraternity; and that if they would tarry a little, he also himself would walk with them.

*Chr.* Then said *Christian*, What is thy Name? Is it not the same by which we have called thee?

*Demas.* Yes, my Name is *Demas*, I am the Son of *Abraham*.

*Chr.*



*Chr.* I know you; *Gebazi* was your <sup>2 Kings v.</sup> Great Grandfather, and *Judas* your Fa-<sup>20.</sup> ther; and you have trod in their Steps; it <sup>Matt. xxvi.</sup> is but a Devilish Prank that thou usest: <sup>14, 15. ch.</sup> Thy Father was hanged for a Traitor, and <sup>xxvii. 1, 2,</sup> thou deservest no better Reward. <sup>3, 5, 6.</sup> Assure thyself, that when we come to the King, we will tell him of this thy Behaviour. Thus they went their Way.

By this Time *By-ends* and his Companions were come again within Sight, and they at the \* first Beck went over to *De- \* By-ends* *mas.* Now, whether they fell into the <sup>goes over to</sup> Pit by looking over the Brink thereof, or <sup>Demas.</sup> whether they went down to dig, or whether they were smothered in the Bottom by the Damps that commonly arise, of these Things I am not certain; but this I observed, that they never were seen again in the Way. Then sang *Christian* :

*By-ends and Silver Demas both agree ;  
One calls, the other runs, that he may be  
A Sharer in his Lucre ; so these do  
Take up in this World, and no farther go.*

Now I saw, that just on the other Side of this Plain, the Pilgrims came to a Place where stood an old *Monument*, hard- by the Highway Side, at the † Sight of <sup>+ They see a</sup> which they were both concerned, because <sup>strange Mo-</sup> of the Strangeness of the Form thereof, <sup>nument.</sup> for it seemed to them as if it had been a *Woman* transformed into the Shape of a Pillar; here therefore they stood looking, and looking upon it, but could not  
for

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

for a Time tell what they should make thereof; At last *Hopeful* espied written upon the Head thereof, a Writing in an unusual Hand; but he being no Scholar, called to *Christian* (for he was learned) to see if he could pick out the Meaning: so he came, and after a little laying of the Letters together, he found the same to be this, *Remember Lot's Wife*. So he read it to his Fellow; after which they both  
 Gen. xix. 26. concluded that that was the Pillar of Salt into which *Lot's Wife* was turned, for looking back with a *covetous Heart*, when she was going from *Sodom* for Safety. Which sudden and amazing Sight gave them Occasion of this Discourse.

*Chr.* Ah, my Brother! this is a seasonable Sight; it came opportunely to us after the Invitation which *Demas* gave us to come over to view the Hill *Lucre*; and had we gone over, as he desired us, and as thou wast inclined to do (my Brother) we had, for ought I know, been made like this Woman, a Spectacle for those that shall come after, to behold.

*Hope.* I am sorry that I was so foolish, and am made to wonder that I am not now as *Lot's Wife*; for wherein was the Difference between her Sin and mine? She only looked back, and I had a Desire to go see: Let Grace be adored, and let me be ashamed, that ever such a Thing should be in mine Heart.

*Chr.* Let us take Notice of what we see here, for our Help for Time to come: This Woman escaped one Judgment, for she fell not by the Destruction of *Sodom*; yet she  
 she

she was destroyed by another; as we see, she is turned into a Pillar of Salt.

*Hope.* True, and she may be to us both *Caution* and *Example*; *Caution*, that we should shun her Sin; or a Sign of what Judgment will overtake such as shall not be prevented by this Caution; So *Korab*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, with the Two Hundred and Fifty Men that perished in their Sin, did also become a Sign or Example Num. xxvi. to beware. But above all, I muse at one 9, 10.

Thing, to wit, how *Demas* and his Fellows can stand so confidently yonder to look for that Treasure, which this Woman, but for looking behind her after, (for we read not that she stept one Foot out of the Way,) was turned into a Pillar of Salt; especially since the Judgment which overtook her did make her an Example, within Sight of where they are; For they cannot choose but see her did they but lift up their Eyes.

*Chr.* It is a Thing to be wondered at, and it argueth that their Hearts are grown desperate in the Case; and I cannot tell who to compare them to so fitly, as to them that pick Pockets in the Presence of the Judge, or that will cut Purfes under the Gallows. It is said of the Men of *Sodom*, that they were Sinners exceedingly, Gen. xiii. because they were Sinners before the Lord, 13. that is, in his Eye-sight, and notwithstanding the Kindnesses that he had shewed them; for the Land of *Sodom* was now like the *Garden of Eden* heretofore. This Ver. 10. therefore provoked him the more to Jealousy, and made their Plague as hot as

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

the Fire of the Lord out of Heaven could make it. And it is most rationally to be concluded, that such, even such as these are, that shall sin in the Sight, yea, and that too in Despight of such Examples, that are set continually before them to caution them to the contrary, must be Partakers of the severest Judgments.

*Hope.* Doubtless thou hast said the Truth; but what a Mercy is it, that neither thou, but especially I, am not made myself this Example? This ministereth Occasion to us to thank God, to fear before him, and always to remember *Lot's Wife*.

I saw then, that they went on their Way to a pleasant \* River; which David the King called *the River of God*; but John, the *River of the Water of Life*. Now their Way lay just upon the Bank of this River: Here therefore *Christian* and his Companion walked with great Delight; they drank also of the Water of the River, which was pleasant and enlivening to the weary Spirits: Besides, on the Banks of this

\* *A River.* Psal. lxxv. 9. Rev. xxii. 9. Ezek. xlvii.

† *Trees by the River.* The Fruit and Leaves of the Trees.

‡ *A Meadow in which they lie down to Sleep.* Psal. xxii. Isa. xiv. 30.

† River, on either Side, were green Trees, for all manner of Fruit; and the Leaves they eat to prevent Surfeits, and other Diseases that are incident to those that heat their Blood by Travels. On either Side of the River was also a Meadow, curiously beautified with Lilies; and it was green all the Year long. In this ‡ Meadow they lay down and slept: for here they might lie down safely. When they awoke, they gathered again of the Fruit of the Trees, and drank again of the Water of the River, and then lay down again to sleep.

Thus



Thus they did several Days and Nights.  
Then they sang :

*Behold ye, how these Crystal Streams do  
glide,  
To comfort Pilgrims, by the Highway Side.  
The Meadows green besides their fragrant  
Smell,  
Yield Dainties for them : And he that can  
tell  
What pleasant Fruit, yea, Leaves, these  
Trees do yield,  
Will soon sell all, that he may buy this  
Field.*

So when they were disposed to go on,  
(for they were not as yet at their Journey's End,) they eat and drank, and departed.

Now I beheld in my Dream, that they had not journeyed far, but the River and the Way for a Time parted, at which they were not a little sorry, yet they durst not go out of the Way. Now the Way from the River was rough, and their Feet tender by reason of their Travels :  
*So the Souls of the Pilgrims were much discouraged because of the Way.* Numb. xxi.  
Wherefore 4- still as they went on, they wished for a better Way. Now a little before them, there was on the Left Hand of the Road a Meadow; and a Stile to go over into it ; \* By-Path-  
and that Meadow, is called \* By-Path Mea-  
dow. Then said Christian to his Fellow, One Temptation makes  
If this Meadow lieth along by our Way- way for another  
side, ther.

# The Pilgrim's Progress.

side, let us go over into it. Then he went to the Stile to see, and behold a Path lay along by the Way on the other Side of the Fence. It is according to my Wish, said *Christian*, here is the easiest going; come, good *Hopeful*, and let us go over.

*Hope.* But how if this Path should lead us out of the Way?

\* *Strong Christians may lead weak ones out of the Way.*

*Chr.* \* That is not likely, said the other. Look, doth it not go along by the Way-side? So *Hopeful*, being persuaded by his Fellow, went after him over the Stile. When they were gone over, and were got into the Path, they found it very easy for their Feet; and withal, they looking before them, espied a Man walking as they did, (and his Name was *Vain-Confidence*) so they called after him, and asked him, whither that Way led? He said, to the Coelestial Gate: † Look, said *Christian*, did not I tell you so? By this you may see we are right; so they followed, and he went before them. But, behold, the Night came on, and it grew very dark: so that they that were behind lost the Sight of him that went before.

† See what it is too suddenly to fall in with Strangers.

Isa. ix. 16.

‡ A Pit to catch the Vain-glorious in.

He therefore that went before (*Vain-Confidence* by Name) not seeing the Way before him, fell into a deep ‡ Pit, which was on Purpose there made by the Prince of those Grounds, to catch *Vain-glorious* Fools withal, and was dashed in Pieces with his Fall.

Now *Christian* and his Fellow heard him fall. So they called to know the Matter, but there was none to answer, only they heard

heard a Groaning. Then said *Hopeful*, Where are we now? Then was his Fellow silent, as mistrusting that he had led him out of the Way; and now it began to rain, and thunder and lighten in a most dreadful Manner; and the Waters rose amain.

\* Then *Hopeful* groaned in himself, saying, *Oh, that I had kept on my Way.*

\* Reasoning  
between Christian and  
*Hopeful.*

*Chr.* Who would have thought that this Path should have led us out of the Way?

*Hope.* I was afraid on it at the very first, and therefore gave you that gentle Caution. I would have spoke plainer, but that you are older than I.

*Chr.* † Good Brother, be not offended, I am sorry I have brought thee out of the Way, and that I have put thee into such imminent Danger; pray, my Brother, forgive me; I did not do it of an evil Intent.

† Christian's  
Repentance  
for leading his  
Brother out  
of the Way.

*Hope.* Be comforted, my Brother, for I forgive thee; and believe too, that this shall be for our Good.

*Chr.* I am glad I have met with a merciful Brother: But we must not stand thus; let us try and go back again.

*Hope.* But, good Brother, let me go before.

*Chr.* No, if you please let me go first, that if there be any Danger, I may be first therein, because by my Means we are both gone out of the Way.

*Hope.* No, said *Hopeful*, you shall not go first; for your Mind being troubled, may lead you out of the Way again. Then for their Encouragement, they heard the Voice

Jer. xxxi. 1. Voice of one saying, *Let thine Heart be towards the High-way; even the Way that thou wentest, turn again.* But by this Time the Waters were greatly risen, by reason of which, the Way of going back was very dangerous. (Then I thought that it is easier going out of the Way when we are in, than going in when we are out.) Yet they adventured to go back, but it was so dark, and the \* Flood was so high, that in their going back, they had like to have been drowned nine or ten Times.

\* They are in Danger of Drowning as they go back.

† They sleep in the Grounds of Giant-Despair.

† He finds them in his Ground, and carries them to Doubting-Castle.

Neither could they, with all the Skill they had, get again to the Stile that Night. Wherefore at last, lighting under a little Shelter, they sat down there 'till the Day-break: † But being weary, they fell asleep. Now there was, not far from the Place where they lay, a Castle, called *Doubting-Castle*, the Owner whereof was *Giant Despair*, and it was in his Grounds they now were sleeping; wherefore he getting up in the Morning early, and walking up and down in his Fields, caught *Christian* and *Hopeful* asleep in his † Grounds: Then with a grim and surly Voice, he bid them awake, and asked them whence they were, and what they did in his Grounds. They told him they were Pilgrims, and that they had lost their Way. Then said the *Giant*, You have this Night trespassed on me by trampling and lying on my Ground, and therefore you must go along with me. So they were forced to go because he was stronger than they. They also had but little to say, for they knew themselves in a Fault. The *Giant* therefore drove them



them before him, and put them into his Castle in a very dark Dungeon nasty and stinking to the Spirits of these two Men: Here then they lay from *Wednesday* Morning 'till *Saturday* Night, without one Bit of Bread, or Drop of Drink, or Light, or any to ask how they did: They were therefore here in evil Case, and were far from Friends and Acquaintance. Now in this Place *Christian* had double Sorrow, because it was through his unadvised Haste, that they were brought into this Distress.

Now *Giant Despair* had a Wife, and her Name was *Diffidence*: So when he was gone to Bed, he told his Wife what he had done; to wit, That he had taken a Couple of Prisoners, and cast them into his *Dungeon*, for trespassing on his Grounds. Then he asked her also, what he had best to do further to them. So she asked him what they were, whence they came, and whether they were bound? and he told her. Then she counselled him, that when he arose in the Morning he should beat them without Mercy: So when he arose, he getteth him a grievous Crab Tree Cudgel; and goes down into the *Dungeon* to them, and there first falls to rating of them as if they were Dogs, although they gave him never a Word of Distaste: \* Then he falls upon them, and beats them fearfully, in such

*The Grievous-  
ness of their  
Imprisonment.  
Psal. lxxxviii:*

*\* On Thursday  
Giant Despair  
beats his Pri-  
soners.*

L

Sort,

---

*The Pilgrims now, to gratify the Flesh,  
Will seek it's Ease; but, oh! how they afresh  
Do hereby plunge themselves new Grievs into!  
Who seek to please the Flesh, themselves undo.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Sort, that they were not able to help themselves, or turn them upon the Floor. This done, he withdraws, and leaves them there to condole their Misery, and to mourn under their Distress: So all that Day they spent their Time in nothing but Sighs and bitter Lamentations. The next Night she talked with her Husband about them further, and understanding that they were yet alive, did advise him to counsel them to make away with themselves: So when Morning was come, he goes to them in a surly Manner, as before, and perceiving them to be very sore with the Stripes that he had given them the Day before, he told them, That since they were never like to come out of that Place, their only Way

\* On Friday  
Giant Despair  
counsels them  
to kill them-  
selves.

† The Giant  
sometimes has  
Fits.

‡ Christian  
begins to de-  
spair.

would be forthwith to make an \* End of themselves, either with Knife, Halter or Poison: For why, said he, should you chuse Life, seeing it is attended with so much Bitterness? But they desired him to let them go? with which he looked ugly upon them, and rushing to them had doubtless made an End of them himself, but that he fell into one of his † Fits (for he sometimes in Sun-shiny Weathers fell into Fits) and lost for a Time the Use of his Hand: Wherefore he withdrew, and left them as before, to consider what to do. Then did the Prisoners consult between themselves, whether it was best to take his Counsel or no: and thus they began to discourse:

*Chr.* Brother, said *Christian*, ‡ what shall we do? The Life that we now live is miserable! For my Part, I know not whether

ther it is best to live thus, or die out of Hand. *My soul chuseth Strangling rather* Job. vii. 5. *than Life*, and the Grave is more easy for me than this Dungeon ! Shall we be ruled by the Giant ?

*Hope.* \* Indeed our present Condition is \* Hopeful  
dreadful, and Death would be far more *comforts him.*  
welcome to me, then *thus* for ever to abide :  
But let us consider, the Lord of the  
Country to which we are going, hath said,  
Thou shalt do no Murder ; no, not to  
another Man's Person ; much more then  
are we forbidden to take his Counsel, to  
kill ourselves. Besides, he that kills ano-  
ther, can but commit Murder upon his  
Body : But for one to kill himself, is to  
kill Body and Soul at once. And more-  
over, my Brother, thou talkest of Ease in  
the Grave, but hast thou forgotten the  
Hell ; whither for certain the Murderers  
go ? For no Murderer hath eternal Life,  
&c. And let us consider again, That all  
the Law is not in the Hand of the *Giant De-*  
*spair* : Others, so far as I can understand,  
have been taken by him, as well as we ;  
and yet have escaped out of his Hands.  
Who knows, but that God, who made the  
World, may cause that *Giant Despair* may  
die, or that, at some Time or other, he  
may forget to lock us in ; or that he  
may in short Time have another of his  
Fits before us, and may lose the Use of  
his Limbs ? And if ever that should come  
to pass again, for my Part I am resolved to  
pluck up the Heart of a Man, and to try  
my utmost to get from under his Hand.  
I was a Fool that I did not try to do it  
L 2 before ;

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

before ; but, however, my Brother, let u be patient, and endure a while, the Time may come that may give us a happy Release : But let us not be our own Murderers. With these Words *Hopeful* at present did moderate the Mind of his Brother ; so they continued together (in the Dark) that Day in their sad and doleful Condition.

Well, towards Evening the *Giant* goes down into the Dungeon again, to see if his Prisoners had taken his Counsel ; but when he came there he found them alive ; and truly alive was all ; for now, what for want of Bread and Water, and by Reason of the Wounds they received when he beat them, they could do little but breathe. But I say, he found them alive ; at which he fell into a grievous Rage, and told them, That seeing they had disobeyed his Counsel, it should be worse with them than if they had never been born.

At this they trembled greatly, and I think that *Christian* fell into a Swoon, but coming a little to himself again, they renewed their Discourse about the *Giant's* Counsel, and whether yet they had best take it or no. \* Now *Christian* again seemed to be for doing it, but *Hopeful* made his second Reply as followeth.

\* *Christian still dejected.*

† *Hopeful comforts him again, by calling former Things to Remembrance.*

*Hope.* †. My Brother, said he, rememberest thou not, how valiant thou hast been heretofore ? *Apollyon* could not crush thee, nor could all that thou didst hear, or see, or feel in the Valley of the Shadow of Death ; what Hardships, Terror, and Amazement hast thou already gone through ?



and art thou now nothing but Fear? Thou seest that I am in the Dungeon with thee, a far weaker Man by Nature than thou art; also this *Giant* has wounded me as well as thee, and hath also cut off the Bread and Water from my Mouth, and with thee I mourn without the Light. But let us exercise a little more Patience: Remember how thou playedst the Man at *Vanity Fair*, and was neither afraid of the Chain nor Cage, nor yet of bloody Death; wherefore let us (at least to avoid the Shame that becomes not a Christian to be found in) bear up with Patience as well as we can.

Now Night being come again, and the *Giant* and his Wife being in Bed, she asked him concerning the Prisoners, and if they had taken his Counsel: To which he replied; they are sturdy Rogues, they chuse rather to bear all Hardships, than to make away themselves. Then, said she; Take them into the Castle-Yard Tomorrow, and shew them the *Bones* and *Skulls* of those that thou hast already dispatched, and make them believe ere a Week comes to an End, thou wilt also tear them in Pieces, as thou hast done their Fellows before them.

So when the Morning was come, the *Giant* goes to them again, and takes them into the Castle-Yard, and shews them as his Wife had bidden him: These, said he, were Pilgrims as you are, once, and they trespassed in my Grounds, as you have done; and when I thought fit, I

tore them in Pieces, and so within ten Days I will do you; go, get you down to your Den again; and with that he beat them all the Way thither. They lay there-

\*On Saturday fore all Day on \* *Saturday* in lamentable  
the Giant Case, as before. Now when Night was  
threatened come, and when Mrs. *Diffidence* and her  
that shortly Husband the *Giant* were got to Bed, they  
he would pull began to renew their Discourse of their  
them in Pieces. Prisoners; and withal, the Old *Giant*

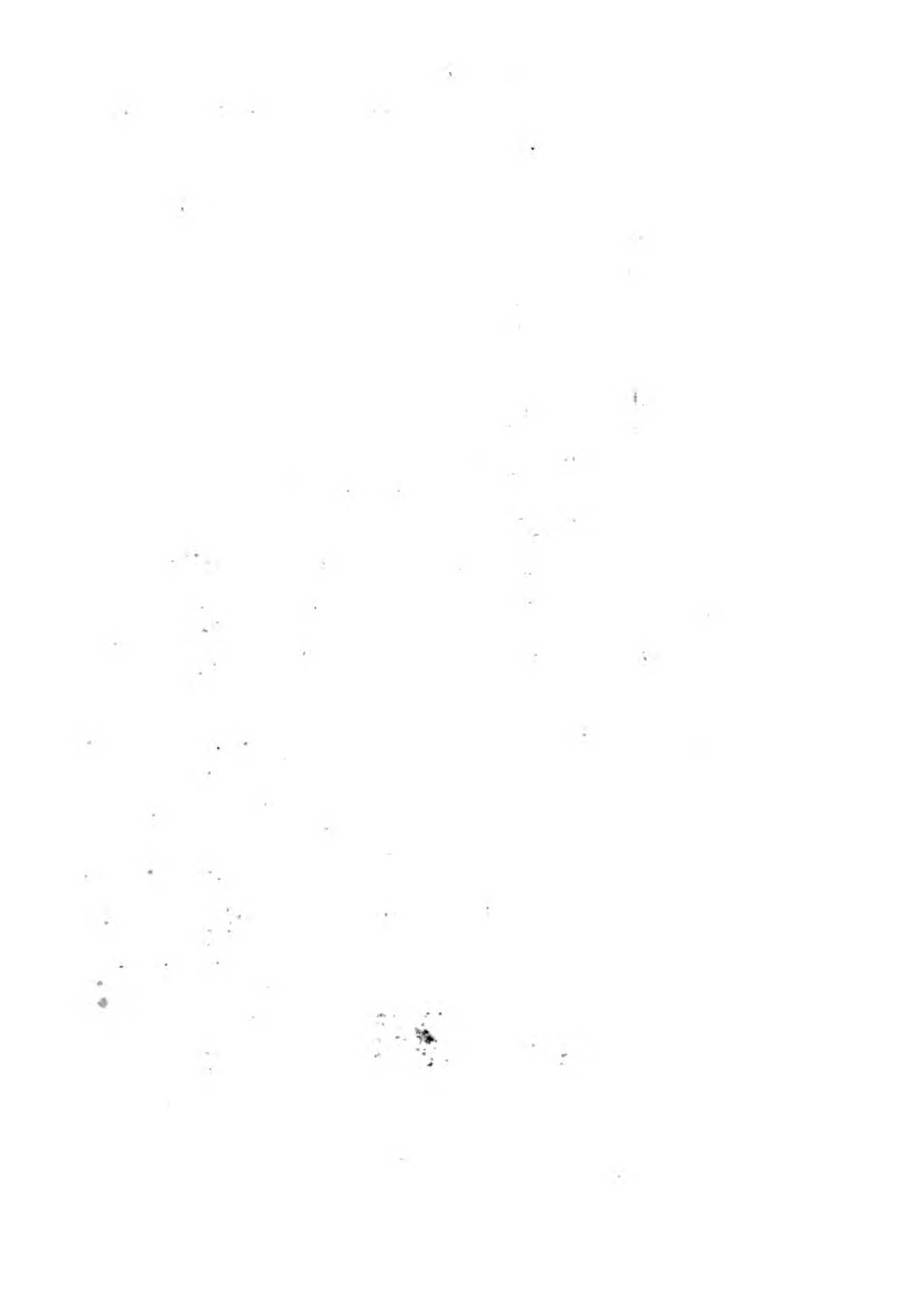
wondered that he could neither by his Blows nor Counsel bring them to an End. And with that his Wife replied; I fear, said she, that they live in Hopes that some will come to relieve them, or that they have Picklocks about them, by the Means of which they hope to escape. And sayst thou so, my Dear? said the *Giant*; I will therefore search them in the Morning.

Well, on *Saturday* about Midnight they began to pray, and continued in Prayer till almost Break of Day.

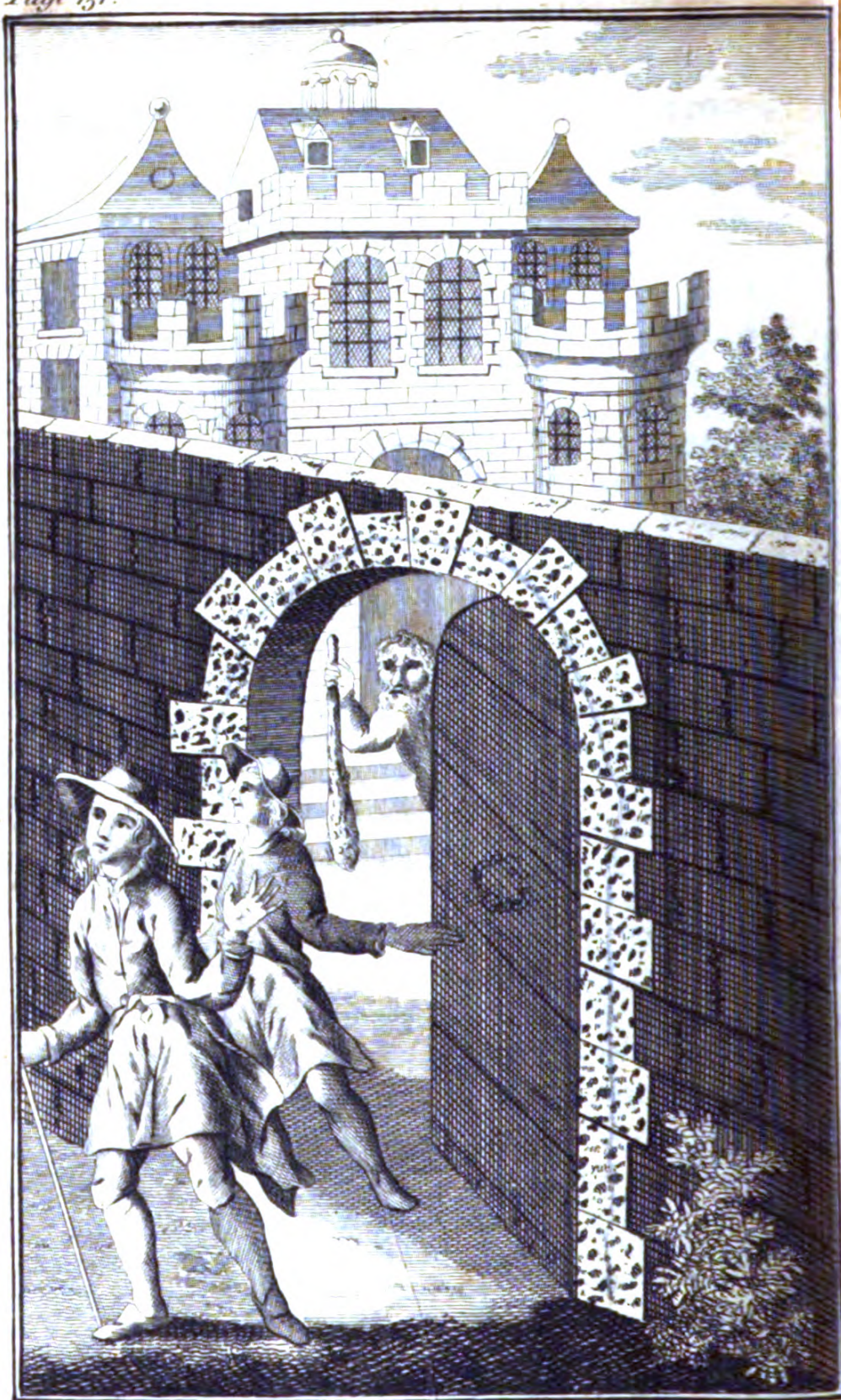
Now a little before it was Day, good *Christian*, as one half amazed, brake out in this passionate Speech; What a Fool (*quoth he*) am I, thus to lye in a stinking Dungeon, when I may as well walk at Liberty? I have a † Key in my Bosom, called *Promise*, that will (I am persuaded) open any Lock in *Doubting-Castle*. Then said *Hopeful*, That is good News, good Brother, pluck it out of thy Bosom and try.

Then *Christian* pulled it out of his Bosom, and began to try at the Dungeon Door, whose Bolt, (as he turned the Key) gave

† A Key in  
Christian's  
Bosom called  
Promise, opens  
any Lock in  
Doubting  
Castle.







Christian and Hopeful escape from Doubting Castle.



gave back, and the Door flew open with Ease, and *Christian* and *Hopeful* both came out. Then he went to the out-ward Door that leads into the *Castle-Yard*, and with his Key opened that Door also. After he went to the Iron Gate, for that must be open too, but that Lock went very hard, yet the Key did open it. Then they thrust open the Door to make their Escape with Speed, but that Gate as it opened made such a Cracking, that it waked *Giant Despair*, who hastily rising to pursue his Prisoners, felt his Limbs to fail, for his Fits took him again, so that he could by no Means go after them. Then they went on, and came to the King's Highway, and so were safe, because they were out of his Jurisdiction.

Now, when they were gone over the Stile, they began to contrive with themselves, what they should do at the Stile, to prevent those that should come after from falling into the Hand of *Giant Despair*. So they consented to erect there a \* Pillar, and to engrave upon the Stile \* *A Pillar erected by Christian and his Fellowe* thereof this Sentence; 'Over this Stile is the Way to *Doubting-Castle*, which is kept by *Giant Despair*, who despiseth the King of the Cœlestial Country, and seeks to destroy his Holy Pilgrims.' Many therefore that followed after, read what was written, and escaped the Danger. This done they sang as follows;

Out of the Way we went, and then we found  
What 'twas to tread upon forbidden Ground;

L 4

And

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

*And let them that come after have a Care,  
Lest they for trespassing, his Prisoners are,  
Whose Castle's Doubting, and whose Name's  
Despair.*

They went then till they came to the  
*\*The Delectable Mountains.* Delectable \* Mountains; which Mountains  
 belonging to the Lord of that Hill, of which  
 we have spoken before; so they went up  
 to the Mountains, to behold the Gardens  
 and Orchards, the Vineyards and Foun-  
 tains of Water; † where also they drank  
 and washed themselves, and did freely  
 eat of the Vineyards. Now there was on  
 the Tops of those Mountains, Shepherds  
 feeding their Flocks, and they stood by  
 the Highway Side. The Pilgrims there-  
 fore went to them, and leaning upon their  
 Sticks (as is common with weary Pilgrims  
 when they stand to talk with any by the  
 Way) they asked, *\*Whose Delectable Moun-  
 tains are these? And whose be the Sheep that  
 feed upon them?*

*Shep.* These Mountains are *Emanuel's*  
*Land*, and they are within Sight of his  
 City; and the Sheep also are his, and he  
 laid down his Life for them.

*Chr.* Is this the Way to the *Cœlestial*  
 City?

*Shep.*

---

*Mountains Delectable they now ascend,  
 Where Shepherds be, which to them do commend  
 Alluring Things, and Things that Cautions are,  
 Pilgrims are steady, kept by Faith and Fear.*





The delectable Mountains.





*Shep.* You are just in the Way.

*Cbr.* How far is it thither?

*Shep.* Too far for any, but those that shall get thither indeed.

*Cbr.* Is the Way safe or dangerous?

*Shep.* Safe for those for whom it is to be safe, *but Transgressors shall fall therein.* Hos. xiv. 9.

*Cbr.* Is there in this Place any Relief for Pilgrims, that are weary and faint in the Way?

*Shep.* The Lord of these Mountains hath given us a Charge *not to be forgetful to entertain Strangers*, therefore the Good of the Place is before you. Heb. xiii. 1,

I saw also in my Dream, That when the *Shepherds* perceived they were Wayfaring Men; they also put Questions to them (to which they made Answer as in other Places,) as, Whence came you? And how got you into the Way? And by what Means have you so persevered therein? For, but few of them that begin to come hither, do show their Face at these Mountains. But when the Shepherds heard their Answers, being pleased therewith, they looked very lovingly upon them, and said,

\* *Welcome to the Delectable Mountains.*

The Shepherds, I say, whose Names were † *Knowledge, Experience, Watchful and Sincere*, took them by the Hand, and had them to their Tents, and made them partake of that which was ready at present. They said, moreover, We would that you should stay here awhile, to be acquainted with us, and yet more to solace yourselves with the Good of the Delectable

\* *The Shepherds welcome them.*

† *The Names of the Shepherds.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

lectable Mountains. Then they told them, That they were content to stay; so they went to their Rest that Night, because it was very late.

\* They are  
shown  
Wonders.

+ The Moun-  
tain of Error.

1 Tim. ii.  
17, 18.

Then I saw in my Dream, That in the Morning the Shepherds called up *Christian* and *Hopeful* to walk with them upon the Mountains: So they went forth with them, and walked awhile, having a pleasant Prospect on every Side. Then said the Shepherds one to another, shall we show these Pilgrims some \*Wonders? So when they had concluded to do it, they had them first to the Top of an Hill, called † *Error*, which was very steep on the farthest Side, and bid them look down to the Bottom. So *Christian* and *Hopeful* looked down, and saw at the Bottom several Men dashed all to Pieces by a Fall that they had from the Top. Then said *Christian*, What meanest this? The Shepherds answered, Have you not heard of them that were made to err, by hearkening to *Hymeneus* and *Philetus*, as concerning the Faith of the Resurrection of the Body? They answered, Yes. Then said the Shepherds, Those that you see dashed in Pieces at the Bottom of this Mountain are they; and they have continued to this Day unburied (as you see) for an Example for others to take Heed how they clamber too high, or how they come too near to the Brink of this Mountain.

Then I saw that they had them to the Top of another Mountain, and the Name of  
of

of this is \* *Caution*, and bid them look \* *Mount* *Caution*•  
 afar off: Which when they did, they perceived, as they thought, several Men, walking up and down among the Tombs that were there: And they perceived that the Men were blind, because they stumbled sometimes upon the Tombs, and because they could not get out from among them. Then said *Christian*, *What means this?*

The Shepherds then answered, Did you not see a little below these Mountains a Stile that led into a Meadow, on the left Hand of this Way? They answered, Yes. Then said the Shepherds, From that Stile there goes a Path that leads directly to *Doubting-Castle*, which is kept by *Giant Despair*, and these Men (pointing to them among the Tombs) came once on Pilgrimage, as you do now, even till they came to that same Stile. And because the right Way was rough in that Place, they chose to go out of it into that Meadow, and there were taken by *Giant Despair*, and cast into *Doubting Castle*; where, after they had been a while kept in the Dungeon, he at last did put out their Eyes, and led them among those Tombs, where he has left them to wander to this very Day, that the Saying of the wise Man might be fulfilled, *He that wandereth out of the Way* Prov. xxi,  
*of Understanding, shall remain in the congregation of the Dead.* 26. Then *Christian* and *Hopeful* looked upon one another, with Tears gushing out, but yet said nothing to the Shepherds,

# The Pilgrim's Progress.

\* A Bye Way  
to Hell.

Then I saw in my Dream, That the Shepherds had them to another Place in a Bottom, where was a Door in the Side of an Hill, and they opened the Door, and bid them look in : They looked in therefore, and saw that within it was very dark and smoaky ; they also thought that they heard there a rumbling Noise, as of Fire, and a Cry of some tormented, and that they smelt the Scent of Brimstone. Then said *Christian*, *What Means this ?* The Shepherds told them, This is a \* Bye-Way to Hell, a Way that Hypocrites go in at ; namely, such as sell their Birth-right with *Esau* ; such as sell their Master with *Judas* ; such as blaspheme the Gospel with *Alexander* ; and that lie and dissemble with *Ananias* and *Sapphira* his Wife.

Then said *Hopeful* to the Shepherds, *I perceive that these had on them, even every one, a Show of Pilgrimage, as we have now, had they not ?*

*Shep.* Yes, and held it a long Time too.

*Hope.* How far might they go on Pilgrimage in their Days, since they notwithstanding were thus miserably cast away ?

*Shep.* Some farther, and some not so far as these Mountains.

Then said the Pilgrims one to another, *We have need to cry to the strong for Strength.*

*Shep.* Ay, and you will have need to use it, when you have it, too.

By this Time the Pilgrims had a Desire to go forwards, and the Shepherds a Desire they should ; so they walked together towards the End of the Mountains. Then said the Shepherds one to another, Let



us here show the Pilgrims the Gates to the  
Cœlestial City, if they have Skill to look  
through our \* Perspective-Glass. The \* *The Shep-  
berds' Perspec-  
tive Glass.*  
Pilgrims then lovingly accepted the Mo-  
tion: So they had them to the Top of  
an high Hill, called † *The Hill* Clear, and gave † *Clear.*  
them the Glass to look.

Then they tried to look, but the Re-  
membrance of the last Things that the  
Shepherds had showed them, made their  
Hands shake; by Means of which Impedi-  
ment, they could not look steadily through  
the Glass; ‡ yet they thought they saw ‡ *The Fruits  
of servile  
Fear.*  
something like the Gate, and also some of  
the Glory of the Place. Then they went  
away and sang:

*Thus by the Shepherds' Secrets are reveal'd,  
Which from all other Men are kept conceal'd:  
Come to the Shepherds then, if you would see  
Things deep, Things hid, and that mysterious  
be.*

When they were about to depart, one  
of the Shepherds gave them a *Note of the*  
*Way*. Another of them bid them § *Beware § A two-fold*  
*of the Flatterer*. The Third bid them *Take* *Caution.*  
*Heed that they stepped not upon the enchanted*  
*Ground*. And the Fourth bid them *God*  
*speed*. So I awoke from my Dream.

And I slept and dreamed again, and  
saw the same Two Pilgrims going down  
the Mountains along the Highway to-  
wards the City. Now a little below these || *The Country*  
Mountains on the Left Hand lieth the || *of Conceit,*  
Country of || *Conceit*; from which Country *out of which*  
there came Ignorance.

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

there comes into the Way in which the Pilgrims walked, a little crooked Lane. Here, therefore, they met with a very brisk Lad, that came out of that Country; and his Name was *Ignorance*. So *Christian* asked him, *From what Parts he came, and whither he was going.*

\* *Christian and Ignorance have some Talk together.*

*Ignor.* \* Sir, I was born in the Country that lieth off there, a little on the Left Hand, and am going to the Cœlestial City.

*Chr.* But how do you think to get in at the Gate? for you may find some Difficulty there.

*Ignor.* As other good People do, said he.

*Chr.* But what have you to show at that Gate, that the Gate should be opened to you?

† *The Ground of Ignorance's Hope.*

*Ignor.* I know my Lord's Will, and have been a good Liver; I pay every Man his own; I pray, fast, pay Tithes, and give Alms, and have left my Country, for whither I am going.

*Chr.* But thou camest not in at the Wicket-Gate that is at the Head of this Way; thou camest in hither through that same crooked Lane, and therefore I fear, however thou mayest think of thyself, when the Reckoning-day shall come, thou shalt have laid to thy Charge, that thou art a Thief and a Robber, instead of getting Admittance into the City.

‡ *He telleth every one he is but a Fool.*

*Ignor.* ‡ *Gentlemen,* Ye be utter Strangers to me, I know you not; be content to follow the Religion of your Country, and I will follow the Religion of mine. I hope

hope all will be well. And as for the Gate that you talk of, all the World knows that this is a great Way off of our Country. I cannot think that any Men in all our Parts do so much as know the Way to it, nor need they matter whether they did or no, since we have, as you see, a fine pleasant green Lane, that comes down from our Country, the next Way into it.

When *Christian* saw that the Man was wise in his own Conceit, he said to *Hopeful* whisperingly, *There is more Hopes of a Fool than of him.* And said moreover, *When he that is a Fool walketh by the Way, his Wisdom faileth him, and he saith to every one, that he is a Fool.* What, shall we talk farther with him, or out-go him at present, and so leave him to think of what he hath heard already, and then stop again for him afterwards, and see if by Degrees we can do any Good of him? Then said *Hopeful* :

Prov. xxvi.

12.

Eccles. x. 3.

How to carry it to a Fool.

*Let Ignorance a little while now muse  
On what is said, and let him not refuse  
Good Counsel to embrace, lest he remain  
Still ignorant of what's the chiefest Gain.  
God saith, Those that no Understanding  
have,  
(Although he made them) them he will not  
save.*

*Hope.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

*Hope.* He farther added, it is not good I think, to say to him all at once; let us pass him by, if you will, and talk to him anon, *even as he is able to bear it.*

Mat. xii. 46.

Prov. v. 22.

So they went both on, and *Ignorance* he came after. Now, when they had passed him a little Way, they entered into a very dark Lane, where they met a Man whom seven Devils had bound with seven strong Cords, and were carrying of him back to the Door that they saw on the Side of the Hill: Now good *Christian* began to tremble, and so did *Hopeful* his Companion: Yet as the Devils led away the Man, *Christian* looked to see if he knew him; and he thought it might be one *\*Turn-away*, that dwelt in the Town of *Apostacy*. But he did not perfectly see his Face; for he did hang his Head like a Thief that is found. But being gone past, *Hopeful* looked after him, and espied on his Back a Paper, with this Inscription, *Wanton Professor, and damnable Apostate*. Then said *Christian* to his Fellow, Now I call to Remembrance that which was told me, of a Thing that happened to a good Man hereabout. The Name of the Man was † *Little Faith*, but a good Man, and he dwelt in the Town of *Sincere*. The Thing was this: At the entering in at this Passage, there comes down from † *Broadway-Gate* a Lane called *Dead Man's-lane*; so called, because of the Murders that are commonly done there: And this *Little-Faith* going on Pilgrimage, as we do now, chanced to sit down there, and slept

*\*The Destruction of one Turn-away.*

† *Christian telleth his Companion a Story of Little-Faith.*  
† *Broadway Gate.*  
*Dead Man's Lane.*



slept: Now there happened at that Time  
 to come down the Lane from Broadway-  
 Gate, three sturdy Rogues, and their  
 Names were *Faint-Heart*, *Mistrust*, and  
*Guilt*, (three Brothers) and they espying  
*Little-Faith*, where he was, came gallop-  
 ing up with Speed. Now the good Man  
 was just awakened from his Sleep, and was  
 getting up to go on his Journey. So they  
 came up all to him, and with threatening  
 Language bid him stand. At this \* *Little-  
 Faith* looked as white as a Clout, and had  
 neither Power to fight nor fly. Then said  
*Faint-heart*, Deliver thy Purse; but he  
 making no Haste to do it, (for he was loth  
 to lose his Money) *Mistrust* ran up to him,  
 and thrusting his Hand into his Pocket,  
 pulled out thence a Bag of Silver. Then  
 he cried out, Thieves, Thieves. † With  
 that *Guilt*, with a great Club that was  
 in his Hand, struck *Little-Faith* on the  
 Head, and with that Blow felled him flat  
 to the Ground; where he lay bleeding  
 as one that would bleed to Death. All  
 this while the Thieves stood by. But at  
 last, they hearing that some were upon  
 the Road, and fearing lest it should be  
 one *Great-Grace*, that dwells in the City of  
*Good Confidence*, they betook themselves to  
 their Heels, and left this good Man to  
 shift for himself. Now after a while *Little-  
 Faith* came to himself, and getting up,  
 made a Shift to scrabble on his Way.  
 This was the Story.

\* *Little-Faith*  
 robbed by  
*Faint-Heart*,  
*Mistrust*, and  
*Guilt*.

† *They get*  
*away his*  
*Silver, and*  
*knock him*  
*down.*

*Hope*. But did they take from him all  
 that ever he had?

•Little-Faith  
lost not his  
best Things.

*Chr.* \* No: The Place where his Jewels were, they never ransacked! so those he kept still. But, as I was told, the good Man was much afflicted for his Loss; for the Thieves got most of his Spending-Money. That which they got not (as I said) were Jewels; also he had a little odd Money left, but scarce enough to bring him to his Journey's End; nay, (if I was not misinformed) he was † forced to beg as he went, to keep himself alive; (for his Jewels he might not sell.) But beg and do what he could, *he went* (as we say) *with many a hungry Belly*, the most Part of the Rest of the Way.

†Little Faith  
forced to beg  
to his Journey's End.

*Hope.* But is it not a Wonder they got not from him his Certificate, by which he was to receive his Admittance at the Cœlestial Gate?

‡ He kept not  
his best Things  
by his own  
Cunning.

2 Tim. i. 14.  
2 Pet. i. 9.

*Chr.* ‡ It is a Wonder; but they got not that; though they missed it not through any good Cunning of his; for he being dismayed with their coming upon him, had neither Power nor Skill to hide any Thing; so it was more by good Providence than by his Endeavour, that they missed of that good Thing.

*Hope.* But it must needs be a Comfort to him, that they got not his Jewels from him.

*Chr.* It might have been great Comfort to him, had he used it as he should: But they that told me the Story, said, That he made but little Use of it all the rest of the Way; and that because of the Dismay that he had in the taking away his Money: Indeed he forgot it a great Part of the rest

rest of his Journey; and besides, when at any Time it came into his Mind, and he began to be comforted therewith, then would fresh Thoughts of his Loss come again upon him, and those Thoughts would swallow up all.

*Hope.* Alas, poor Man! \* This could not but be a greater Grief to him! \* *He is pitied by both.*

*Cbr.* Grief! Ay, a Grief indeed! would it not have been so to any of us, had we been used as he, to be robbed and wounded too, and that in a strange Place, as he was? It is a Wonder he did not die with Grief, poor Heart! I was told that he scattered almost all the rest of the Way with nothing but doleful and bitter Complaints: Telling also to all that overtook him, or that he overtook in the Way as he went, where he was robbed, and how; who they were that did it, and what he lost; how he was wounded, and that he hardly escaped with his Life.

\* *Hope.* But it is a Wonder that his Necessity did not put him upon selling or pawning some of his Jewels, that he might have wherewithal to relieve himself in his Journey.

*Cbr.* † Thou talkest like one upon whose Head is the Shell to this very Day: For what should he pawn them? or to whom should he sell them? In all that Country where he was robbed, his Jewels were not accounted of; nor did he want that Relief which could from thence be administered to him. Besides, had his Jewels been missing at the Gate of the *Celestial City*, he had (and that he knew well enough) been

*snubs his  
Fellow for  
unadvised  
speaking.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

excluded from an Inheritance there, and that would have been worse to him than the Appearance and Villainy of ten thousand Thieves.

Heb. xii. 26.

\* *Discourse  
about Esau  
and Little-  
Faith.*

*Hope.* Why art thou so tart, my Brother? \* *Esau* sold his Birth-right, and that for a Mess of Pottage, and that Birth-right was his greatest Jewel; and if he, why might not *Little-Faith* do so too?

*Cbr.* *Esau* did sell his Birth-right indeed, and so do many besides, and by so doing, exclude themselves from the chief Blessing, as also that Caitiff did; but you must put a Difference betwixt *Esau* and *Little-Faith*, and also betwixt their Estates. *Esau's* Birth-right was typical, but *Little-Faith's* Jewels

† *Esau* was  
ruled by his  
Lusts.

Gen. xxv. 32.

were not so. † *Esau's* Belly was his God, but *Little-Faith's* Belly was not so. *Esau's* Want lay in his fleshly Appetite. *Little-Faith's* did not so: Besides *Esau* could see no farther than to the fulfilling of his Lusts: *For I am at the Point to die*, said he, *and what Good will this Birth-right do me?*

But *Little-Faith* though it was his Lot to have but a little Faith, was by his little Faith kept from such Extravagancies, and made to see and prize his Jewels more, than to sell them as *Esau* did his Birth-

‡ *Esau* never  
had Faith.

right. ‡ You read not any where that *Esau* had Faith, no not so much as a little; therefore no Marvel, if where the Flesh only bears Sway, (as it will in that Man where no Faith is to resist) if he sells his Birth-right, and his Soul and all, and that to the Devil of Hell; for it is with such as it is with the Ass, *who in her Occasions*

Jos. ii. 24.

*cannot be turned away.* When their Minds  
are



are set upon their Lusts, they will have them, whatever they cost; \*but *Little-faith* was of another Temper; his Mind was on Things divine; his Livelihood was upon Things that were spiritual and from Above; therefore, to what End should he that is of such a Temper sell his Jewels, (had there been any that would have bought them) to fill his Mind with empty Things? Will a Man give a Penny to fill his Belly with Hay? or can you persuade the † Turtle-dove to live upon Car-  
\* Little-faith could not live upon Esau's Pottage.  
 rion like the Crow? Though faithless ones can, for carnal Lusts, pawn, or mortgage, or sell what they have, and themselves outright to boot; yet they that have Faith, saving Faith, though but a little of it, cannot do so. Here therefore, my Brother, is thy Mistake.

*Hope.* I acknowledge it; but yet your severe Reflexion had almost made me angry.

*Chr.* What, I did but compare thee to some of the Birds that are of the brisker Sort, who will run to and fro in untrodden Pathswith the Shell upon their Heads: But pass by that, and consider the Matter under Debate, and all shall be well betwixt thee and me.

*Hope.* But, *Christian*, these three Fellows, I am persuaded in my Heart, are but a Company of Cowards: Would they have run else, think you, as they did, at the Noise of one that was coming on the Road? Why did not *Little Faith* pluck † up † a greater Heart? He might, methinks, have stood one Brush with them, and  
† Comparison between the Turtle-Dove and the Crow.

# The Pilgrim's Progress.

have yielded when there had been no Remedy.

\* No great  
Heart for God  
where there is  
but little  
Faith.

† We have  
more Courage  
when out than  
when we are  
in.

*Chr.* \* That they are Cowards, many have said, but few have found it so in the Time of Trial. As for a great Heart, *Little-Faith* had none; † and I perceive by thee, my Brother, hadst thou been the Man concerned, thou art but for a Brush, and then to yield. And verily, since this is the Height of thy Stomach, now they are at a Distance from us, should they appear to thee, as they did to him, they might put thee to second Thoughts.

*Psal. viii. 5.*  
† Christian  
tells his own  
Experience in  
this Case.

But consider again, they are but Journey-men Thieves: they serve under the King of the Bottomless Pit; who, if need be, will come in to their Aid himself, and his Voice is *as the Roaring of a Lion*. † I myself have been engaged as this *Little-Faith* was, and I found it a terrible Thing. These three Villains set upon me, and I beginning like a *Christian* to resist, they gave but a Call, and in came their Master; I would (as the Saying is) have given my Life for a Penny; but that, as God would have it, I was cloathed with Armour of Proof. Ay, and yet, though I was so harnessed, I found it hard Work to quit myself like a Man; no Man can tell what in that Combat attends us, but he that hath been in the Battle himself.

*Hope.* Well, but they ran you see, when they did but suppose that one *Great-Grace* was in the Way.

*Chr.* True, they have often fled, both they and their Master, when *Great-Grace* hath but appeared; and no Marvel; for he is

is the *King's Champion* : But, I trow, you will put some Difference between *Little-Faith* and the *King's Champion*\*. All the King's Subjects are not his Champions, nor can they, when tried, do such Feats of War as he. Is it meet to think that a little Child should handle *Goliath* as *David* did ? Or, that there should be the Strength of an Ox in a *Wren* ? Some are strong, some are weak ! some have great Faith, some have little, this Man was one of the weak, and therefore he went to the Wall.

*Hope*. I would it had been *Great-Grace* for their Sakes.

*Cbr*. If it had been he, he might have had his Hands full : For I must tell you, that though *Great-Grace* is excellent good at his Weapons, and has, and can, so long as he keeps them at the Sword's Point, do well enough with them ; yet if they get within him, even *Faint-Heart*, *Mistrust*, or the other, it will go hard, but they will throw up his Heels. And when a Man is down, you know, what can he do ?

Whofo looks well upon *Great-Grace's* Face, shall see those Scars and Cuts there that shall easily give Demonstration of what I say. Yea, once I heard that he should say, (and that when he was in the Combat) *We despaired even of Life*. How did these sturdy Rogues, and their Fellows make *David* groan, mourn, and roar ? Yea, *Hamen* and *Hezekiah* too, though Champions in their Days, were forced to bestir them when by these assaulted ; and yet notwithstanding, they

M 4

had

# The Pilgrim's Progress.

had their Coats soundly brushed by them. Peter, upon a Time, would go try what he could do ; but though some do say of him, that he is the Prince of the Apostles, they handled him so, that they made him at last afraid of a sorry Girl.

Besides, their King is at their Whistle ; and is never out of hearing ; and if at any Time they be put to the worst, he, if possible, comes in to help them : And of

Job xli. 26.  
\* Leviathan's  
Sturdiness.

him it is said, \* *The Sword of him that layeth at him cannot hold ; the Spear, the Dart, nor the Habergeon ; he esteemeth Iron as Straw, and Brasses as rotten Wood. The Arrows cannot make him fly, Sling-stones are turned, with him, into Stubble ; Darts are counted as Stubble ; he laugheth at the shaking of a Spear.* What can a Man do in this Case ?

Job xxxiii.  
19.

† The excellent  
Mettle  
that is in Job's  
Horse.

It is true, if a Man could at every Turn have Job's Horse, and had Skill and Courage to ride him, he might do notable Things. † *For his Neck is cloathed with Thunder ; he will not be afraid of the Grasshopper ; the Glory of his Nostrils is terrible ; he paweth in the Valley, rejoiceth in his Strength, and goeth out to meet the armed Men. He mocketh at Fear, and is not affrighted, neither turneth back from the Sword. The Quiver rattleth against him, the glittering Spear and the Shield. He swalloweth the Ground with Fierceness and Rage, neither believeth he that it is the Sound of the Trumpet. He saith among the Trumpets, Ha, ha ; and befinelleth the Battle afar off, the Thundering of the Captains and the Shoutings,*

Buz



But for such Footmen as thee and I are, let us never desire to meet with an Enemy, nor vaunt as if we could do better, when we hear of others that they have been foiled; nor be tickled at the Thoughts of our Manhood, for such commonly come by the worst when tried. Witness *Peter*, of whom I made Mention before; he would swagger, ay, he would; he would, as his vain Mind prompted him to say, do better, and stand more for his Master than all Men; but, who so foiled and run down by these Villains as he?

When therefore we hear that such Robberies are done on the King's Highway, two Things become us to do: First, to go out harnessed, and to be sure to take a Shield with us; for it was for Want of that, that he that laid so lustily at *Leviathan* could not make him yield; and indeed, if that be wanting, he fears us not at all. Therefore, he that had Skill hath said, *Above all, take the Shield of Faith, Ephes. vi. 16. wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery Darts of the Wicked.*

It is good also that we desire of the King a \* *Convoy*, yea, that he will go with us himself. This made *David* rejoice when in the Valley of the Shadow of Death; and *Moses* was rather for dying where he stood, than to go one Step without his God. O my Brother, if he will but go along with us, what need we be afraid of ten Thousands that shall set themselves against us? But without him, the proud Helpers fall under the Slain.

I, for

\* *It is good to have a Convoy.*

Exod. xxxiii.

15.

Psal. iii. 5, 6,

7, 8.

And xxvii. 1,

2, 1.

Isa. x. 4.

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

I, for my Part, have been in the Fray before now; and though (through the Goodness of him that is best) I am, as you see, alive, yet cannot boast of my Manhood. Glad shall I be, if I meet with no more such Brunts; though I fear we are not gone beyond all Danger. However, since the Lion and the Bear have not as yet devoured me, I hope God will also deliver us from the next uncircumcised *Philistine*.

Than sang *Christian* :

*Poor Little-Faith! Hast been among the  
Thieves!*

*Wast robb'd! Remember this, whoſo be-  
lieves,*

*And get more Faith, then ſhall you Victors  
be*

*Over ten thousand, elſe ſcarce over three.*

So they went on, and *Ignorance* followed. They went then till they came at a Place where they ſaw a Way put itſelf in-  
*• A Way and a* to their *• Way*, and ſeemed withal to lie as  
*Way.* ſtraight as the Way which they ſhould go; and there they knew not which of the two to take, for both ſeemed ſtraight before them; therefore here they ſtood ſtill to conſider. And as they were thinking about the Way, behold a Man black of  
*† The Flatterer* *finds them.* *Fleſh, †* but covered with a very light Robe, came to them, and asked them why they ſtood there? They answered, They were going to the Cœleſtial City, but knew not which of theſe Ways to take. Follow me, ſaid the Man, it is thither that

that I am going. So they followed him in the Way that but now came into the Road, which by Degrees turned, and turned them *so* from the City \* that they desired to go to, that in a little Time their Faces were turned away from it, yet they followed him. But, by and by, before they were aware, he led them both within the Compass of a Net, † in which they were both so entangled that they knew not what to do, and with that the *White Robe fell off the black Man's Back*: Then they saw where they were. Wherefore there they lay crying some Time, for they could not get themselves out.

\* Christian and his Fellow deluded.

† They are taken in a Net,

*Chr.* Then said *Christian* to his Fellow, Now do I see myself in an Error. ‡ Did not the Shepherds bid us beware of the Flatterers? As is the saying of the Wise Man so we have found it this Day: *A Man that flattereth his Neighbour, spreadeth a Net for his Feet.*

‡ They bewail their Condition.

*Hope.* They also gave us a Note of Directions about the Way, for our more certain finding thereof; but therein we have also forgotten to read, and have not kept ourselves from the Paths of the Destroyer. Here *David* was wiser than we; for, said he, *Concerning the Works of Men, by the Words of thy Lips, I have kept me from the Paths of the Destroyer.* Thus they lay bemoaning themselves in the Net. § At last they espied a Shining One coming towards them with a Whip of small Cord in his Hand. When he was come to the Place where they were, he asked them

Psal. xvii. 4.

§ A Shining One comes to them with a Whip in his Hand.

them whence they came, and what they did there? They told him, that they were poor Pilgrims going to *Zion*, but were led out of their Way by a black Man cloathed in White, who bid us, said they, follow him, for he was going thither too. Then said he with the Whip, It is the *Flatterer*, a false Apostle, that hath transformed himself into an Angel of Light. So he rent the Net, and let the Men out. Then said he to them, Follow me, that I may set you in your Way again; so he led them back to the Way which they had left to follow the *Flatterer*.

Prov. xxix. 5. \* They are examined, and convicted of Forgetfulness. \* Then he asked them, saying, Where did you lie the last Night? They said, with the Shepherds upon the *Delectable Mountains*. He asked them then, If they had not a Note of Directions for the Way? They answered, Yes. But did you, said he, when you were at a Stand, pluck out and read your Note? They answered, No. He asked them, Why? They said, They forgot. He asked moreover, If the Shepherds did not bid them beware of the *Flatterer*? They answered, Yes. But we did not imagine, said they, † that this fine-spoken Man had been he.

Rom. vi. 18. † Deceivers fine spoken.

Deut. xxv. 2.

2 Chron. vi. 26, 27.

Lev. iii. 19.

Then I saw in my Dream, that he commanded them to lie down; ‡ which when they did, he chastised them sore, to teach them the good Way wherein they should walk: And as he chastised them, he said, *As many as I love I rebuke and chasten; be zealous, therefore, and repent.* This done, he bid them go their Way, and

‡ They are rebuked and sent on their Way.



and take good Heed to the other Directions of the Shepherds. So they thanked him for all his Kindness, and went softly along the right Way, singing ;

*Come hither, you that walk along the Way,  
See how the Pilgrims fare, that go astray :  
They caught are in an intangled Net,  
'Cause they good Counsel lightly did forget :  
'Tis true, they rescu'd were, but yet you see  
They're scourg'd to boot : Let this your Caution be.*

Now after a while, they perceived afar off, one coming softly, and alone, all along the Highway to meet them. Then said *Christian* to his Fellow, Yonder is a Man with his Back toward *Zion*, and he is coming to meet us.

*Hope*. I see him, let us take Heed to ourselves now, lest he should prove a *Flatterer* also. So he drew nearer and nearer, and at last came up to them. His Name was \* *Atheist*, and he asked them whither they were going ?

\* *The Atheist meets them.*

*Chr*. We are going to Mount *Zion*.

Then † *Atheist* fell into a very great Laughter.

† *He laughs at them.*

*Chr*. What is the Meaning of your Laughter ?

*Atheist*. I laugh to see what ignorant Persons you are, to take upon you so tedious a Journey, and yet are like to have nothing but your Travel for your Pains.

*Chr*.

\* They reason  
together.

*Chr.* \* Why, Man? Do yo think we shall not be received?

*Atheist.* Received! There is no such Place as you dream of in all this World.

*Chr.* But there is in the World to come.

*Atheist.* When I was at Home in mine own Country, I heard as you now affirm, and from that Hearing went out to see, and have been seeking this City these Twenty Years, but find no more of it than I did the first Day I set out.

Jer. xxii. 13.  
Ecclef. x. 15.

*Chr.* We have both heard, and believe that there is such a Place to be found.

† The Atheist  
takes up his  
Content in  
this World.

*Atheist.* Had not I, when at Home, believed, I had not come thus far to seek; but finding none, (and yet I should, had there been such a Place to be found, for I have gone to seek it farther than you) I am going back again, † and will seek to refresh myself with the Things that I then past away, for Hopes of that which I now see is not.

‡ Christian  
proveth his  
Brother.

*Chr.* ‡ Then said *Christian* to *Hopeful*, his Companion, *Is it true which this Man has said?*

§ *Hopeful's*  
gracious An-  
swer.  
2 Cor. v. 7.

*Hope.* § Take heed, he is one of the *Flatterers*; remember what it has cost us once already for our hearkening to such kind of Fellows. What! No Mount *Zion*? Did we not see from the *Delectable Mountains*, the Gate of the City? Also, are we not now to walk by Faith? || Let us go on, said *Hopeful*, lest the Man with the Whip overtakes us again.

|| Remem-  
brance of for-  
mer Chastise-  
ments, is a  
Help against  
present Temp-  
tations.

You should have taught me that lesson, which I will round you in the Ears withal: *Cease, my Son, to hear the Instruction that causeth*

*causeth to err from the Words of Knowledge :* Prov. xix. 27.

I say, my Brother, cease to hear him, and let us believe to the Saving of the Soul. Heb. x. 39.

*Chr.* My Brother, I did not put the Question to thee, for that I doubted of the Truth of your Belief myself, but to prove thee, and to fetch from thee a \* Fruit of the *\*The Fruit of an honest Heart.* Honesty of thy Heart. As for this Man, I know that he is blinded by the God of this World. Let thou and I go on, knowing that we have Belief of the Truth, and no Lye is of the Truth. 1 John ii. 12,

*Hope.* Now do I rejoice in Hope of the Glory of God : So they turned away from the Man, and, he laughing at them, went his Way.

I saw then in my Dream, † that they † *They are come to the Enchanted Ground.* went until they came into a certain Country, whose Air naturally tended to make one drowsy, if he came a Stranger into it. And here ‡ *Hopeful* began to be very ‡ *Hopeful* dull and heavy to sleep ; wherefore he *begins to be drowsy.* said unto *Christian*, I do now begin to grow so drowsy, that I can scarcely hold open my Eyes : Let us lie down here, and take one Nap.

*Chr.* § By no means, (said the other) left § *Christian keeps him awake.* sleeping we never awake more.

*Hope.* Why, my Brother ? Sleep is sweet to the labouring Man ; we may be refreshed, if we take a Nap.

*Chr.* Do you not remember, that one of the Shepherds bid us beware of the Enchanted Ground ? He meant by that, that we should beware of Sleeping ; wherefore let us not sleep as others do, but let us 1 Thes. v. 6. watch and be sober.

*Hope.*

\* *He is thankful.*

*Hope.* \* I acknowledge myself in a Fault; and had I been here alone, I had by sleeping run the Danger of Death. I see it is true that the wise Man saith, *Two are better than one.* Hitherto hath thy Company been my *Mercy*; and thou shalt have a good Reward for thy Labour.

† *To prevent Drowsiness they fall to good Discourse.*  
*Good Discourse preventeth Drowsiness.*

*Chr.* Now then said *Christian*, † to prevent Drowsiness in this Place, let us fall into good Discourse.

*Hope.* With all my Heart, said the other.

*Chr.* Where shall we begin?

*Hope.* Where God began with us ut do you begin if you please.

*Chr.* I will sing you first a Song.

‡ *The Dreamer's Note.*

‡ *When Saints do sleepy grow, let them come hither,*

*And bear how these two Pilgrims talk together:*

*Yea, let them learn of them in any wise  
 Thus to keep ope' their drowsy slumb' ring  
 Saints' Fellowship, if it be manag'd well,  
 Keeps them awake, and that in spite of Hell.*

*Chr.* Then *Christian* began, and said, I will ask you a Question. § How came you to think at first of so doing as you do now?  
 § *They begin at the Beginning of their Conversion.*

*Hope.* Do you mean, how came I at first to look after the Good of my Soul?

*Chr.* Yes, that is my Meaning.

*Hope.*



*Hope.* I continued a great while in the Delight of those Things which were seen and sold at our *Fair*; Things which I believe now would have, had I continued in them still, drowned me in Perdition and Destruction.

*Cbr.* What Things were they?

*Hope.* All the Treasures and Riches of the World. \*Also I delighted much in \* *Hopeful's*  
Rioting, Reveling, Drinking, Swearing, *Life before*  
Lying, Uncleaness, Sabbath breaking, *Conversion.*  
and what not, that tended to destroy the Soul. But I found at last, by hearing and considering of Things that are divine, which indeed I heard of you, as also of beloved *Faithful*, that was put to Death for his Faith and good living in *Vanity* Rom. vi. 21,  
*Fair, That the End of these Things is Death.* 22, 23.  
And that for these Things' Sake, the Eph. v. 6.  
Wrath of God cometh upon the Children of Disobedience.

*Cbr.* And did you presently fall under the Power of this Conviction?

*Hope.* No, I was not willing presently to know the Evils of Sin, nor the Damnation that follows upon the Commission of it; † but endeavoured when my Mind at † *Hopeful at*  
first began to be shaken with the Word, *first shut his*  
to shut mine Eyes against the Light, *Eyes against*  
thereof. *the Light.*

*Cbr.* But what was the Cause of your carrying of it thus to the first Workings of God's Spirit upon you?

*Hope.* The Causes were, † 1. I was ignorant that this was the Work of God upon me. I never thought that by Awakenings for Sin, God at first begins the

*Reasons of his*  
*resisting the*  
*Light.*

N Con-

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Conversion of a Sinner. 2. Sin was yet very sweet to my Flesh, and I was loth to leave it. 3. I could not tell how to part with mine own Companions, their Presence and Actions were so desirable unto me. 4. The Hours in which Convictions were upon me, were such troublesome and such Heart-affrighting Hours, that I could not bear, no not so much as the Remembrance of them upon my Heart.

*Chr.* Then, as it seems, sometimes you got rid of your Trouble.

*Hope.* Yes, verily, but it would come into my Mind again, and then I should be bad, nay worse than I was before.

*Chr.* Why, what was it that brought your Sins to Mind again?

*Hope.* Many Things; as

\* When he  
had lost his  
Sense of Sin,  
what brought  
it again.

1. \* If I did but meet a good Man in the Streets; or,

2. If I have heard any read in the Bible; or,

3. If mine Head did begin to ach; or,

4. If I were told that some of my Neighbours were sick; or,

5. If I heard the Bell toll for some that were dead; or,

6. If I thought of Dying myself; or,

7. If I heard that sudden Death happened to others.

8. But especially when I thought of myself, that I must quickly come to Judgment.

*Cbr.* And could you at any Time, with Ease, get off the Guilt of Sin, when by any of these Ways it came upon you?

*Hope.* No, not I; for then they got faster Hold of my Conscience; and then, if I did but think of going back to Sin, (though my Mind was turned against it) it would be double Torment to me.

*Cbr.* And how did you then?

*Hope.* \* I thought I must endeavour to mend my Life; for else, thought I, I am sure to be damned.

*Cbr.* And did you endeavour to mend?

*Hope.* Yes; and fled from, not only my Sins, but sinful Company too, and betook me to Religious Duties; as Praying, Reading, weeping for Sin, speaking Truth to my Neighbours, &c. These Things did I, with many others, too much here to relate.

*Cbr.* And did you think yourself well then?

*Hope.* † Yes, for a while; † but at the last my Trouble came tumbling upon me again, and that over the Neck of all my reformation.

*Cbr.* How came that about, since you was now reformed?

*Hope.* There were several Things brought it upon me, especially such Sayings as these: *All our Righteousnesses are as filthy Rags. By the Works of the Law, no Man shall be justified. When ye have done all these Things, say, We are unprofitable:* With many more such like. From whence I began to reason with myself thus: If all my Righteousnesses are filthy Rags; if

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

by the Deeds of the Law *no* Man can be justified; and if when we have done *all* we are unprofitable, then it is but Folly to think of Heaven by the Law. I farther thought thus: \* If a Man runs a Hundred Pounds into the Shop-keeper's Debt, and after that shall pay for all that he shall fetch; yet if this old Debt stands still in the Book uncrossed, the Shop-keeper may sue him for it, and cast him into Prison till he shall pay the Debt.

\* *His being a Debtor by the Law troubled him.*

*Chr.* Well, and how did you apply this to yourself?

*Hope.* Why I thought thus with myself: I have by my Sins run a great Way into God's Book, and that my now reforming will not pay off that Score; therefore I should think still, under all my present Amendments. But how shall I be freed from that Damnation that I brought myself in Danger of by my former Transgressions?

*Chr.* A very good Application; but pray go on.

† *His espying bad Things in his best Duties troubled him.*

*Hope.* Another Thing that hath troubled me ever since my late Amendments is, † that if I look narrowly into the best of what I do now, I still see Sin, new Sin, mixing itself with the best of what I do; so that now I am forced to conclude, that notwithstanding my former fond Conceits of myself and Duties, I have committed Sin enough in one Day to send me to Hell, though my former Life had been faultless.

*Chr.* And what did you then?

*Hope.*



*Hope.* Do ! \* I could not tell what to do, <sup>\* This made him break his Mind to Faithful who told him the Way to be saved.</sup> till I broke my Mind to *Faithful* ; for he and I were well acquainted. And he told me, that unless I could obtain the Righteousness of a Man that never had sinned, neither mine own, nor all the Righteousness of the World could save me

*Chr.* And did you think he spake true ?

*Hope.* Had he told me so when I was pleased and satisfied with mine own Amendments, I had called him Fool for his Pains ; but now since I see mine own Infirmary, and the Sin which cleaves to my best Performance, I have been forced to be of his Opinion.

*Chr.* But did you think, when at first he suggested it to you, that there was such a Man to be found, of whom it might justly be said, that he never committed Sin ?

*Hope.* † I must confess the Words at first sounded strangely, but after a little more Talk and Company with him, I had full Conviction about it. <sup>† At which he started at present.</sup>

*Chr.* And did you ask him what Man this was, and how you must be justified by him ?

*Hope.* Yes, and he told me it was the Lord Jesus, that dwelleth on the right Hand of the Most High : ‡ And thus, said he, you must be justified by him, even by trusting to what he hath done by himself in the Days of his Flesh, and suffered when he did hang on the Tree. I asked him further, how that Man's Righteousness could be of that Efficacy, as to justify another before GOD ? And he told

Heb. x.

Rom. iv.

Col. i.

1 Pet. i.

† A more

particular

Discovery of

the Way to be

saved.

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

me, He was the Mighty GOD, and did what he did, and died the Death also, not for himself, but for me; to whom his Doings, and the Worthiness of them, should be imputed, if I believed on him.

*Chr.* And what did you do then?

*\*He doubts of Hope.\** I made my Objections against my Believing, for that I thought he was not willing to save me.

*Chr.* And what said *Faithful* to you then?

Mat. xi. 28.

† *He is better instructed.*

Mat. xxiv.

25.

Pſalm xcv. 6.

Dan. vi. 10.

Jer. xxix. 12,

43.

Exod. xxv.

Lev. xvi. 9.

Num. xi. 7,

8.

Heb. iv. 6.

† *He is bid to pray.*

*Hope.* He bid me go to him and see. Then I said it was presumption. † He said No, for I was invited to come. Then he gave me a Book of Jesus's inditing, to encourage me the more freely to come; and he said concerning that Book, That every Jot and Tittle thereof stood firmer than Heaven and Earth. Then I asked him, what I must do when I came: And he told me I must entreat upon my Knees, with all my Heart and Soul, the Father to reveal him to me. Then I asked him further, how I must make my Supplication to him? And he said, Go, and thou shalt find him upon a Mercy Seat, where he sits all the Year long, to give Pardon and Forgiveness to them that come. I told him, that I knew not what to say when I came. ‡ And he bid me say to this Effect: God be merciful to me a Sinner, and make me to know and believe in Jesus Christ; for I see, that if his Righteousness had not been, or I have not Faith in that Righteousness, I am utterly cast away. Lord, I have heard that thou art a merciful God, and hast ordained that thy Son Jesus

Jesus Christ should be the Saviour of the World: And moreover, {that thou art willing to bestow upon such a poor Sinner as I am (and I am a Sinner indeed) Lord, take therefore this Opportunity, and magnify thy Grace in the Salvation of my Soul, through thy Son Jesus Christ. *Amen.*

*Cbr.* And did you do as you were bidden?

*Hope.* \* Yes, over, and over, and over. \* *He prays.*

*Cbr.* And did the Father revealed the Son to you?

*Hope.* Not at first, nor second, nor third, nor fourth, nor fifth; no, nor at the sixth Time neither.

*Cbr.* What did you do then?

*Hope.* What! why I could not tell what to do.

*Cbr.* Had you not Thoughts of leaving off praying?

*Hope.* † Yes, and a Hundred Times <sup>+He thought to leave off</sup> twice told.

*Cbr.* And what was the Reason you did <sup>praying.</sup> not?

*Hope.* ‡ I believed that that was true, † <sup>Durst not leave praying, and why?</sup> which hath been told me, to wit, That without the Righteousness of this Christ, all the World could not save me, and therefore thought I with myself, if I leave off, I die: and can but die at the Throne of Grace. And withal this came into my Mind, if it tarry, wait for it, because it <sup>Heb. ii. 3.</sup> will surely come, and will not tarry. So I continued praying, until the Father shewed me his Son.

*Cbr.* And how was he revealed unto you?

Eph. i. 18, *Hope.* I did not see him with my bodily  
19. Eyes, but with the Eyes of mine Under-

\**Christ is re-* standing; and thus it was. \* One Day I was  
*vealed to him,* very sad, I think sadder than at any one  
*and how.* Time of my Life, and this Sadness was

through a fresh Sight of the Greatness and  
Vileness of my Sins. And as I was then  
looking for nothing but *Hell*, and the ever-  
lasting Damnation of my Soul, suddenly,  
as I thought, I saw the Lord Jesus look  
Afts xvi. 30, down from Heaven upon me, and saying,  
31. Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou  
shalt be saved.

But I replied, Lord, I am a great, a  
very great Sinner : And he answered, My  
2 Cor. xii. 9. Grace is sufficient for thee. Then I said,  
but Lord, what is believing? And then  
John vi. 35. I saw from that Saying, [He that cometh  
to me shall never hunger, and he that  
believeth on me shall never thirst] that

Believing and Coming was all one ; and  
that he that came, that is, ran out in his  
Heart and Affections after Salvation by  
Christ, he indeed believed in Christ. Then  
the Water stood in mine Eyes, and I ask-  
ed further : But, Lord, may such a great  
Sinner as I am, be indeed accepted of thee,  
and be saved by thee? And I heard him say

John vi. 16. *And him that cometh to me, I will in no wise*  
*cast out.* Then I said, but how, Lord,  
must I consider of thee in my coming to  
thee, that my Faith must be placed aright

1 Tim. i. 15. upon thee? Then he said, Christ came  
Rom. x. 4. into the World to save Sinners. He is  
Chap. iv. the End of the Law of Righteousness to  
every one that believes. He died for our  
Sins, and rose again for our Justification.

He



He loved us, and washed us from our Sins in his own Blood: He is a Mediator betwixt God and us; He ever liveth to make Intercession for us. From all which I gathered, That I must look for Righteousness in his Person, and for Satisfaction for my Sins by his Blood; that what he did in Obedience to his Father's Law, and in submitting to the Penalty thereof, was not for himself, but for him that will accept it for his Salvation, and be thankful. And now was my Heart full of Joy, mine Eyes full of Tears, and mine Affections running over with Love to the Name, People, and Ways of Jesus Christ.

*Chr.* This was a Revelation of Christ to your Soul indeed: But tell me particularly what Effect this had upon your Spirit?

*Hope.* It made me see that all the World, notwithstanding all the Righteousness thereof, is in a State of Condemnation: It made me see that God the Father, though he be just, can justly justify the coming Sinner: It made me greatly ashamed of the Vileness of my former Life, and confounded me with the Sense of mine own Ignorance; for there never came a Thought into my Heart before now, that showed me so the Beauty of Jesus Christ: It made me love a holy Life, and long to do something for the Honour and Glory of the Name of the Lord Jesus: Yea, I thought that if I had now a thousand Gallons of Blood in my Body, I could spill it all for the Sake of the Lord Jesus.

I saw

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

I saw in my Dream, that *Hopeful* looked back and saw *Ignorance*, whom they had left behind, coming after: Look, said he to *Christian*, how far yonder Youngster loitereth behind!

*Cbr.* Ay, ay, I see him; he careth not for our Company.

*Hope.* But I trow it would not have hurt him, had he kept Pace with us hitherto.

*Cbr.* That is true, but I will warrant you he thinketh otherwise.

*Hope.* That I think he doth; but however let us tarry for him. [*So they did.*]

• Young Ignorance comes up again.  
Their Talk.

\*Then *Christian* said to him, come away, Man, why do you stay so behind?

*Ignor.* I take my Pleasure in walking alone, even more a great deal than in Company, unless I like it better.

Then said *Christian* to *Hopeful*, (but softly) Did I not tell you he cared not for our Company? But however, said he, come up, and let us talk away the Time in this solitary Place. Then directing his Speech to *Ignorance*, he said, Come, how do you? How stands it between God and your Soul now?

† Ignorance's Hope and the Ground of it.

*Ignor.* † I hope well, for I am always full of good Motions, that come into my Mind, to comfort me as I walk.

*Cbr.* What good Motions? Pray tell us.

*Ignor.* Why, I think of God and Heaven.

*Cbr.* So do the Devils and damned Souls.

*Ignor.* But I think of them, and desire them.

*Cbr.*

*Chr.* So do many that are never like to come there. The Soul of the Sluggard Prov. xxviii, 29. desires, and hath nothing.

*Ignor.* But I think of them, and leave all for them.

*Chr.* That I doubt : for to leave all is a very hard Matter ; yea, a harder Matter than many are aware of. But, why, or by what, art thou persuaded that thou hast left all for God and Heaven ?

*Ignor.* My Heart tells me so.

*Chr.* The wise Man says. *He that trusts his own Heart, is a Fool.*

*Ignor.* This is spoken of an evil Heart, but mine is a good one.

*Chr.* But how dost thou prove that ?

*Ignor.* It comforts me in Hopes of Heaven.

*Chr.* That may be through its Deceitfulness ; for a Man's Heart may minister Comfort to him in the Hopes of that Thing for which he has yet no Ground to hope.

*Ignor.* But my Heart and Life agree together, and therefore my Hope is well grounded.

*Chr.* Who told thee that thy Heart and Life agree together ?

*Ignor.* My Heart tells me so.

*Chr.* Ask my Fellow if I be a Thief ? Thy Heart tells thee so ! Except the Word of God beareth Witness in this Matter, other Testimony is of no Value.

*Ignor.* But is it not a good Heart that has good Thoughts ? And is not that a good Life, that is according to God's Commandments ?

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

*Chr.* Yes, that is a good Heart that hath good Thoughts; and that is a good Life that is according to God's Commandments: But it is one Thing indeed to have these, and another Thing only to think so.

*Ignor.* Pray, what count you good Thoughts, and a Life according to God's Commandments?

*Chr.* There are good Thoughts of divers Kinds; some respecting ourselves, some God, some CHRIST, and some other Things.

*Ignor.* What be good Thoughts respecting ourselves?

*Chr.* \* Such as agree with the Word of God.

\* What are  
good Thoughts

*Ignor.* When do our Thoughts of ourselves agree with the Word of God?

Rom. iii.  
Gen. vi. 8.

*Chr.* When we pass the same Judgment upon ourselves which the Word passes. To explain myself: The Word of God saith of Persons in a natural Condition, *There is none righteous, there is none that doeth Good.* It saith also, *That every Imagination of the Heart of a Man is only Evil, and that continually.* And again, *The Imagination of Man's Heart is Evil from his Youth.* Now then, when we think thus of ourselves, having Sense thereof, then are our Thoughts good ones, because according to the Word of God.

*Ignor.* I will never believe that my Heart is thus bad.

*Chr.* Therefore thou never hadst one good Thought concerning thyself in thy Life. But let me go on. As the Word passeth



passeth a Judgment upon our Heart, so it passeth Judgment upon our Ways; and when the Thoughts of our Hearts and Ways agree with the Judgment which the Word giveth of both, then are both good, because agreeing thereto.

*Ignor.* Make out your Meaning.

*Cbr.* Why, the Word of God saith, That Man's Ways are crooked Ways, not good, but perverse: It saith, They are naturally out of the good Way, that they have not known it. Now when a Man thus thinketh of his Ways, I say, when he doth sensibly, and with Heart-Humiliation thus think, then hath he good Thoughts of his own Ways, because his Thoughts now agree with the Judgment of the Word of God.

*Psal. cxxv. 5.*  
*Prov. ii. 15.*  
*Rom. iii.*

*Ignor.* What are good Thoughts concerning God?

*Cbr.* Even (as I have said concerning ourselves) when our Thoughts of God do agree with what the Word saith of him; and that is, when we think of his Being and Attributes as the Word hath taught; of which I cannot now discourse at large: But to speak of him in reference to us, then we have right Thoughts of God when we think that he knows us better than we know ourselves, and can see Sin in us when and where we can see none in ourselves: When we think he knows our inmost Thoughts, and that our Hearts, with all its Depths, is always open unto his Eyes: Also when we think that all our Righteousness stinks in his Nostrils, and that therefore he cannot

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

cannot abide to see us stand before him in any Confidence, even of all our best Performances.

*Ignor.* Do you think that I am such a Fool as to think God can see no farther than I? Or that I would come to God in the best of my Performances?

*Chr.* Why, how dost thou think in this Matter?

*Ignor.* Why, to be short, I think I must believe in Christ for Justification.

*Chr.* How! Think thou must believe in Christ, when thou seest not the Need of him! Thou neither seest thy Original nor Actual Infirmities, but hast such an Opinion of thyself and of what thou dost, as plainly renders thee to be one that did never see a Necessity of Christ's personal Righteousness to justify thee before God. How then dost thou say, I believe in Christ.

*Ignor.* I believe well enough for all that.

*Chr.* How dost thou believe?

\* *The Faith  
of Ignorance.*

*Ignor.* \*I believe that Christ died for Sinners, and that I shall be justified before God from the Curse, through his gracious Acceptance of my Obedience to his Law. Or thus, Christ makes my Duties, that are religious, acceptable to his Father by virtue of Merits, and so shall I be justified.

*Chr.* Let me give an answer to this Confession of thy Faith.

1. Thou believest with a Fantastical Faith; for this Faith is no where described in the Word.

2. Thou

2. Thou believest with a false Faith, because it taketh Justification from the Personal Righteousness of Christ and applies it to thy own.

3. This Faith maketh not Christ a Justifier of thy Person, but of thy Actions; and of thy Person, for thy Actions Sake, which is false.

4. Therefore this Faith is deceitful, even such as will leave thee under Wrath in the Day of God Almighty: For true *Justifying Faith* puts the Soul (as sensible of its lost Condition by the Law) upon flying for Refuge unto Christ's Righteousness: (Which Righteousness of his is not an Act of Grace, by which he maketh, for Justification, thy Obedience accepted with God, by his personal Obedience to the Law, in doing and suffering for us what that required at our Hands.) This Righteousness, I say, true Faith accepteth; under the Skirt of which the Soul being shrouded, and by it presented as spotless before God, it is accepted, and acquitted from Condemnation.

*Ignor.* What, would you have us trust to what Christ in his own Person hath done without us? This Conceit would loosen the Reins of our Lust, and tolerate us to live as we list: For, what Matter how we live, we may be justified by Christ's personal Righteousness, from all, when we believe it?

*Chr.* Ignorance is thy Name; and as thy Name is, so art thou; even this thy Answer demonstrateth what I say. *Ignorant* thou art of what *Justifying Righteousness* is,

is, and as *ignorant* how to secure thy Soul through the Faith of it from the heavy Wrath of God. Yea, thou also art *ignorant* of the true Effects of Saving Faith in this Righteousness of Christ, which is to bow and win over the Heart to God in Christ, to love his Name, his Word, Ways, and People, and not as thou *ignorantly* imaginest.

*Hope.* Ask him if ever he had Christ revealed to him from Heaven?

• Ignorance  
jangles with  
them.

*Ignor.* \*What! you are a Man for Revelation! I do believe that what both you and all the rest of you say about that Matter, is but the Fruit of distracted Brains.

*Hope.* Why Man! Christ is so hid in God from the natural Apprehensions of the Flesh, that he cannot by any Man be savingly known, unless God the Father reveals him to them.

† He speaks  
reproachfully  
of what he  
knows not.

*Ignor.* †That is your Faith, but not mine; yet mine, I doubt not, is as good as yours, though I have not in my Head so many Whimsies as you.

*Chr.* Give me Leave to put in a Word: You ought not to speak so slightly of this Matter: For this I will boldly affirm, (even as my good Companion hath done,) that no Man can know Jesus Christ but by the Revelation of the Father; yea, and Faith too, by which the Soul layeth Hold upon Christ, (if it be right) must be wrought by the exceeding Greatness of his mighty power; the working of which Faith, I perceive, poor *Ignorance*, thou art ignorant of. Be awakened then, see  
thine

Mat. xi. 28.

1 Cor. xi. 3.

Eph. i. 18,

19.



thine own Wretchedness, and fly to the Lord Jesus; and by his Righteousness, which is the Righteousness of God, (for he himself is God) thou shalt be delivered from Condemnation.

*Ignor.* \* You go so fast, I cannot keep \* *The Talk*  
Pace with you: Do you go on before; I *broke up*.  
must stay awhile behind.

Then they said,

*Well, Ignorance, wilt thou yet foolish be  
To slight good Counsel, ten Times given thee?  
And If thou yet refuse it, thou shalt know,  
Ere long, the Evil of thy doing so.  
Remember, Man, in Time; stoop, do not fear;  
Good Counsel taken well secures; then bear.  
But if thou yet shall slight it, thou wilt be  
The Loser, Ignorance, I'll warrant thee.*

Then *Christian* addressed himself thus to his Fellow:

*Cbr.* Well, come my good *Hopeful*, I perceive that thou and I must walk by ourselves again.

So I saw in my Dream, that they went on apace before, and *Ignorance* he came hobbling after. Then said *Christian* to his Companion, I am much grieved for this poor Man; it will certainly go hard with him at the last.

*Hope.* Alas! there are Abundance in our Town in this Condition, whole Families, yea, whole Streets, and that of  
O Pilgrims

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Pilgrims too; and if there be so many in our Parts, how many, think you, must there be in the Place where he was born?

*Chr.* Indeed the Word saith, *He hath blinded their Eyes, lest they should see, &c.*

But now we are by ourselves, What do you think of such Men? Have they at no Time, think you, Convictions of Sin, so consequently Fears that their State is dangerous?

*Hope* Nay, do you answer that Question yourself, for you are the elder Man.

*Chr.* Then I say, sometimes (as I think) they may; but they being naturally ignorant, understand not that such Convictions tend to their Good: and therefore they do desperately seek to stifle them, and presumptuously continue to flatter themselves in the Way of their own Hearts.

• *The good  
Use of Fear.*

Job xxviii.  
28.  
Psal. cxi. 10.  
Prov. i. 7.  
ch. ix. 10.

*Hope.* I do believe, as you say, that Fear tends much to Men's Good, \* and to make them right at their Beginning to go on Pilgrimage.

*Chr.* Without all Doubt it doth, if it be right: For so says the Word, *The Fear of the Lord is the Beginning of Wisdom.*

*Hope.* How will you describe right Fear!

† *Right Fear.* *Chr.* True or right Fear is † discovered by three Things:

1. By its Rise; it is caused by Saving Convictions for Sin.

2. It driveth the Soul to lay fast Hold of Christ for Salvation.

3. It begetteth and continueth in the Soul a great Reverence of G O D, his  
Word

Word and Ways, keeping it tender, and making it afraid to turn from them, to the right Hand or to the left, to any Thing that may dishonour God, break its Peace, grieve the Spirit, or cause the Enemy to speak reproachfully.

*Hope.* Well said; I believe you have said the Truth. Are we now almost got past the *Inchanted Ground*?

*Cbr.* Why, art thou weary of this Discourse?

*Hope.* No verily, but that I would know where we are.

*Cbr.* We have not now above two Miles farther to go thereon. But let us return to our Matter. \* Now the Ignorant know \* *Why ignorant Persons do stifle Con-  
victions.* not that such Convictions as tend to put them in Fear, are for their Good, and therefore they seek to stifle them.

*Hope.* How do they seek to stifle them?

*Cbr.* 1. They think that those Fears <sup>1. In general.</sup> are wrought by the Devil; though indeed they are wrought of God, and thinking so, they resist them, as Things that directly tend to their overthrow. 2. They <sup>2. In particular.</sup> also think that these Fears tend to the Spoiling of their Faith, when, alas! for them, poor Men that they are, they have none at all! and therefore they harden their Heart against them. 3. They presume they ought not to fear, and therefore in Despite of them wax presumptuously confident. 4. They see that those Fears tend to take away from them their pitiful old Self-holiness, and therefore they resist them with all their Might.

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

*Hope.* I know something of this myself: before I knew myself, it was so with me.

*Cbr.* Well, we will leave, at this Time our Neighbour *Ignorance* by himself, and fall upon another profitable Question.

*Hope.* With all my Heart, but you shall still begin.

*Cbr.* Well then, did you know about ten Years ago, one *Temporary* in \* your Parts, who was a forward Man in Religion then?

\* Talk about one Temporary.

*Hope.* Know him! yes, he dwelt in *Graceless*, a † Town about two Miles off of *Honesty*, and he dwelt next door to one *Turnback*.

† Where he dwelt.

*Cbr.* Right, he dwelt under the same Roof with him. ‡ Well, that Man was much awakened once; I believe that then he had some Sight of his Sins, and of the Wages that were due thereto.

‡ He was towardsly once.

*Hope.* I am of your Mind, for (my House not being above three Miles from him) he would oftentimes come to me, and that with many Tears. Truly I pitied the Man, and was not altogether without Hope of him: But one may see, it is not every one that cries *Lord, Lord*.

*Cbr.* He told me once, that he was resolved to go on Pilgrimage, as we go now; but all on a sudden he grew acquainted with one *Savefelf*, and then he became a Stranger to me.

*Hope.* Now since we are talking about him, let us a little enquire into the Reason of the sudden Backsliding of him and such others.



*Cbr.* It may be very profitable, but do you begin.

*Hope.* Well then, there are in my Judgment four Reasons for it.

1. \* Though the Consciences of such Men <sup>\*Reasons why</sup> are awakened, yet their Minds are not <sup>towardsly ones</sup> changed: Therefore, when the Power of <sup>go back.</sup> Guilt weareth away, that which provoketh them to be religious ceaseth: Wherefore they naturally return to their own Course again; even as we see the Dog that is sick of what is eaten, so long as his Sicknes prevails, he vomits and casts up all: Not that he doeth this of a free Mind, (if we may say a Dog has a Mind) but because it troubleth his Stomach: but now, when his Sicknes is over, and so his Stomach eased, his Desires being not at all alienated from his Vomit, he turns him about and licks up all; and so it is true which is written, *The Dog is turned to his own* 2 Pet. ii. 2. *Vomit again.* Thus, I say, being hot for Heaven by Virtue only of the Sense and Fear of the Torments of Hell, as that Sense of Hell, and Fear of Damnation chills and cools, so their Desires for Heaven and Salvation cool also. So then it comes to pass, that when their Guilt and Fear is gone, their Desires for Heaven and Happiness die, and they return to their Course again.

2. Another Reason is, they have slavish Fears that do over-master them; I speak now of the Fears that they have of Men; *For the Fear of Men bringeth a Snare.* So then Prov. xxix. though they seem to be hot for Heaven so long as the Flames of Hell are about their

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Ears, yet when that Terror is a little over, they betake themselves to second Thoughts, namely, that it is good to be wise, and not to run (for they know not what) the Hazard of losing all, or at least of bringing themselves into unavoidable and unnecessary Troubles, and so they fall in with the World again.

3. The Shame that attends Religion lies also as a Block in their Way; they are proud and haughty, and Religion in their Eye is low and contemptible: Therefore when they have lost their Sense of Hell, and Wrath to come, they return again to their former Course.

4. *Guilt*, and to meditate Terror, are grievous to them; they look not to see their Misery before they come into it, though perhaps the Sight of it first, if they loved that Sight, might make them fly whither the righteous fly and are safe; but because they do, as I hinted before, even shun the Thoughts of Guilt and Terror, therefore when once they are rid of their Awakenings about the Terrors and Wrath of God, they harden their Hearts gladly, and choose such Ways as will harden them more and more.

*Cbr.* You are pretty near the Business, for the Bottom of all is, for Want of a Change in their Mind and Will. And therefore they are but like the Felon that standeth before the Judge; he quakes and trembles, and seems to repent most heartily; but the Bottom of all is, the Fear of the Halter: not that he hath any Detestation of the Offence, as is evident, because,

because, let but this Man have his Liberty, and he will be a Thief, and so a Rogue still; whereas if his Mind was changed, he would be otherwise.

*Hope.* Now I have showed you the Reasons of their going back, do you show me the Manner thereof.

*Chr.* So I will willingly.

1. \* They draw off their Thoughts, all \* *How the*  
that they may, from the Remembrance of *Apostate goes*  
God, Death, and Judgment to come. *back.*

2. Then they cast off by Degrees private Duties, as Closet-Prayer, curbing their Lusts, watching, Sorrow for Sin, &c.

3. Then they shun the Company of lively and warm Christians.

4. After that they grow cold to publick Duty, as hearing, reading, godly Conference, and the like.

5. Then they begin to pick Holes, as we say, in the Coats of some of the Godly, and that devilishly, that they may have a seeming Colour to throw Religion (for the Sake of some Infirmities they have espied in him) behind their Backs,

6. Then they begin to adhere to, and associate themselves with carnal, loose, and wanton Men.

7. Then they give Way to carnal and wanton Discourses in secret; and glad are they if they can see such Things in any that are counted honest, that they may the more boldly do it through their Example.

8. After this, they begin to play with little Sins openly.

9. And then being hardened, they  
O 4 show

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

show themselves as they are. Thus being launched again into the Gulf of Misery; unless a Miracle of Grace prevent it, they everlastingly perish in their own Deceivings.

Isa. lxii. 4.  
Cant. vii.  
10, 11, 12.

Now I saw in my Dream, that by this Time the Pilgrims were got over the *Enchanted Ground*, and entering into the Country of *Beulah*, whose Air was very sweet and pleasant, the Way lying directly through it, they solaced themselves there for a Season. Yea, here they heard continually the Singing of Birds, and saw every Day the Flowers appear in the Earth, and heard the Voice of the Turtle in the Land. In this Country the Sun shineth Night and Day: Wherefore it was beyond the Valley of the *Shadow of Death*, and also out of the Reach of *Giant Despair*, neither could they from this Place so much as see *Doubting Castle*. Here they were within Sight of the City they were going to; also here met them some of the Inhabitants thereof: For in this Land the

ANGELS.

Isa. lxii. 5.

Ver. 8.

Ver. 11.

*Shining Ones* commonly walked, because it was upon the Borders of Heaven. In this Land also the Contract between the Bride and the Bridegroom was renewed: Yea, here, as *the Bridegroom rejoiceth over the Bride, so did their God rejoice over them*. Here they had no Want of Corn and Wine; for in this Place they met Abundance of what they had sought for in all their Pilgrimage. Here they heard Voices from out of the City, loud Voices, saying, *Say ye to the Daughter of Zion, Behold thy Salvation cometh! Behold his Reward is with him!*

Here



Here all the Inhabitants of the Country called them, *The holy People, the Redeemed* Ver. 12. *of the Lord, sought out, &c.*

Now, as they walked in this Land, they had more rejoicing than in Parts more remote from the Kingdom to which they were bound ; and drawing nearer to the City yet, they had a more perfect View thereof. It was built of Pearls and precious Stones, also the Streets thereof were paved with Gold ; so that by Reason of the natural Glory of the City, and the Reflection of the Sun beams upon it, *Christian* with Desire fell sick ; *Hopeful* also had a Fit or two of the same Disease : Wherefore here they lay by it a while, crying out because of their Pangs ; *If you see my Beloved, tell him that I am sick of Love.*

But being a little strengthened, and better able to bear their Sickness, they walked on their Way, and came yet nearer and nearer, where were Orchards, Vineyards, and Gardens, and their Gates opened into the Highway. Now as they came up to these Places, behold the Gardener stood in the Way, to whom the Pilgrims said, Whose goodly Vineyards and Gardens are these ? He answered, They are the King's, Deut. xxiii. and are planted here for his own Delight, 24. and also for the Solace of Pilgrims : So the Gardener had them into the Vineyards, and bid them refresh themselves with Dainties : He also shewed them there the King's Walks and Arbours, where he delighted to be ; And here they tarried and slept.

Now

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

Now I beheld in my Dream, that they talked more in their Sleep at this Time, than ever they did in all their Journey; and being in a Muse thereabout, the Gardener said even to me, Wherefore musest thou at the Matter? It is the Nature of the Fruit of the Grapes of these Vineyards to go down so sweetly, as to cause the Lips of them that are asleep to speak.

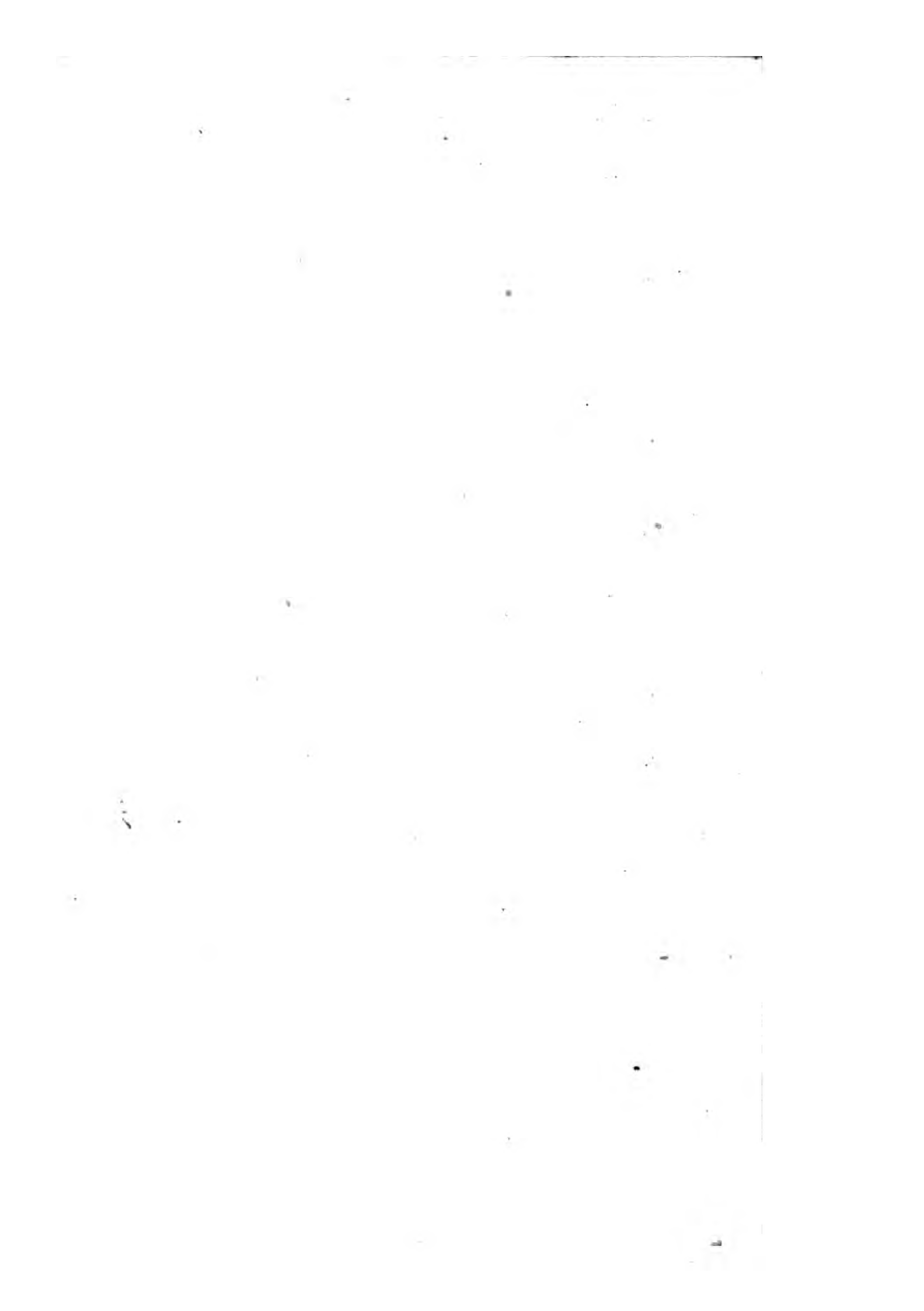
So I saw that when they awoke, they addressed themselves to go up to the City. But as I said, the Reflexion of the Sun upon the City (for the City was pure Gold) was so extremely glorious, that they could not as yet with open Face behold it, but through an Instrument made for that Purpose. So I saw that as they went on there met them two Men in Raiment that shone like Gold, also their Faces shone as the Light.

Rev. xxi. 28.  
1 Cor. iii. 18.

These Men asked the Pilgrims whence they came? and they told them. They also asked them where they had lodged, what Difficulties and Dangers, what Comforts and Pleasures they had met with in the Way? And they told them. Then said the Men that met them, You have but two Difficulties more to meet with, and then you are in the City.

*Christian* then and his Companion asked the Men to go along with them, so they told them that they would: But, said they, you must obtain it by your own Faith. So I saw in my Dream that they went on together till they came in Sight of the Gate.

Now





The Pilgrims pass the River.



Now I farther saw, that betwixt them and the Gate was a River, but there was no Bridge to go over, and the River was very deep. At the Sight therefore of this River, the Pilgrims were much stunn'd, but the Men that went with them, said, You must go through, or you cannot come at the Gate.

The Pilgrims then began to enquire if there was no other Way to the Gate ; \* to which they answered, Yes, but there hath not any, save two, to wit, *Enoch* and *Elijah*, been permitted to tread that Path, since the Foundation of the World, nor shall until the last Trumpet shall sound. The Pilgrims then (especially *Christian*) began to despond in their Minds, and looked this Way and that, but no Way could be found by them, by which they might escape the River. Then they asked the Men if the Waters were all of a Depth ? They said, No, yet they could not help them in that Case : For, said they, *you shall find it deeper or shallower, as you believe in the King of the Place.*

They then address'd themselves to the Water, and entering, *Christian* began to sink, and crying out to his good Friend *Hopeful*, he said, I sink in deep Waters :  
the

*\* Death is not welcome to Nature, tho' by it we pass out of this World into Glory.*  
1 Cor. xv. 51, 52.  
*Angels help us out comfortably through Death.*

---

*Now, now look how the holy Pilgrims ride,  
Clouds are their Chariots, Angels are their Guide ;  
Who would not here for him all Hazards run,  
That thus provides for his, when this World's done ?*

## The Pilgrim's Progress.

the Billows go over my Head, all the Waves go over me. *Selab.*

•Christian's  
Conflict at the  
Hour of  
Death.

Then said the other, Be of good Cheer, my Brother, I feel the Bottom, and it is good. Then said *Christian*, \*Ah! my Friend, the Sorrow of Death hath compassed me about, I shall not see the Land that flows with Milk and Honey. And with that a great Darkness and Horror fell upon *Christian*, so that he could not see before him. Also he in a great Measure lost his Senses, so that he could neither remember nor orderly talk of any of those sweet Refreshments that he had met with in the Way of his Pilgrimage. But all the Words that he spake still tended to discover that he had Horror of Mind, and Heart Fears that he should die in that River, and never obtain Entrance in at the Gate. Here also, as they that stood by perceived, he was much in the troublesome Thoughts of the Sins that he had committed, both since and before he began to be a Pilgrim. It was also observed, That he was troubled with Apparitions of Hobgoblins and evil Spirits: for ever and anon he would intimate so much by Words. *Hopeful* therefore here had much ado to keep his Brother's Head above Water, yea, sometimes he would be quite gone down, and then ere awhile he would rise up again half dead. *Hopeful* did also endeavour to comfort him, saying, Brother, I see the Gate, and Men standing by to receive us; but *Christian* would answer, It is you, it is you they wait for; you have been *Hopeful* ever since I knew you.  
And

And so have you, said he to *Christian*. Ah, Brother! said he, surely if I was right, he would now rise to help me, but for my Sins he hath brought me into the Snare and left me. Then said *Hopeful*, My Brother, you have quite forgot the Text, where it is said of the Wicked, There is no Bands in their Death, but Psal. xxxiii. 4, 5. their Strength is firm, they are not troubled as other Men, neither are they plagued like other Men. These Troubles and Distresses that you go through in these Waters, are no Sign that God hath forsaken you, but are sent to try you, whether you will call to Mind that which heretofore you have received of his Goodness, and live upon him in your Distresses.

Then I saw in my Dream, that *Christian* was in a Muse a while. To whom also *Hopeful* added these Words, Be of good Cheer, Jesus Christ maketh thee whole: And with that *Christian* brake out with a loud Voice, \*Oh, I see him again! and he tells me, When thou passest through the Waters, I will be with thee; and through the Rivers, they shall not overflow thee. Then they both took Courage, and the Enemy was after that as still as a Stone, until they were gone over. *Christian* therefore presently found Ground to stand upon, and so it followed, that the rest of the River was but shallow; but thus they got over. Now upon the Bank of the River on the other Side, they saw the two shining Men again, who there waited for them: Wherefore being come out

\**Christian delivered from his Fears in Death.*  
Isa. xl. 2.

*\*The Angels do wait for them so soon as they are passed out of this World.* out of the River, \* they saluted them, saying, *We are ministering Spirits sent forth to minister to those that shall be Heirs of Salvation.* Thus they went along toward the Gate. Now you must note, that the City stood upon a mighty Hill, but the Pilgrims went up that Hill with Ease, because they had these two Men, to lead them up by the Arms; they had likewise left

*†They have put off Mortality.* their mortal † Garments behind them in the River: For though they went in with them, they came out without them. They therefore went up here with much Agility and Speed, though the Foundation upon which the City was framed was higher than the Clouds: They therefore went up through the Region of the Air, sweetly talking as they went, being comforted, because they safely got over the River, and had such glorious Companions to attend them.

The Talk that they had with the Shining Ones was about the Glory of the Place, who told them, that the Beauty and Glory of it was inexpressible. There, said they, is *Mount Zion*, the Heavenly *Jerusalem*, the innumerable Company of Angels, and the Spirits of just Men made perfect. You are going now, said they, to the Paradise of God, wherein you shall see the *Tree of Life*, and eat of the never-fading Fruits thereof; and when you come there you shall have white Robes given you, and your Walk and Talk shall be every Day with the KING, even all the Days of Eternity. There you shall not see again such Things as you saw when you

Heb. xii. 22,  
23, 24.  
Rev. ii. 7,  
& iii. 4.

Rev. xxii. 7.



## The Pilgrim's Progress.

you were in the lower Region upon the Earth, to wit, Sorrow, Sicknes, Affliction, and Death, *for the former Things are passed away.* You are now going to *Abraham, Isaac,* Isa. lvii. 12, & vi. 14. and *Jacob*, and to the Prophets, Men that God hath taken away from the Evil to come, and that are now resting upon their Beds, each one walking in his Righteousness. The Men then asked, What must we do in the Holy Place? To whom it was answered, You must there receive the Comforts of all your Toil, and have Joy for all your Sorrow; you must reap what you have sown, even the Fruit of all your Prayers and Tears, and Sufferings for the King by the Way. In that Place you must wear Crowns of Gold, and enjoy the perpetual Sight and Vision of the *Holy ONE*, *for there you shall see Him as He is.* John iii. 2. There also you shall serve him continually with Praise, with Shouting, and Thanksgiving, whom you desire to serve in the World, though with much Difficulty, because of the Infirmary of your Flesh. There your Eyes shall be delighted with seeing, and your Ears with hearing the pleasant Voice of the *Mighty ONE*. There you shall enjoy your Friends again, that are gone thither before you; and there you shall with Joy receive even every one that follows into the Holy Places after you. There also you shall be cloathed with Glory and Majesty, and put into an Equipage fit to ride out with the *KING of Glory*. When he shall come with Sound of Trumpet in the Clouds, as upon *the Wings of the Wind*,  
you

1 Thes. iv. 13. you shall come with him; and when he  
 14, 16, 17. shall sit upon the Throne of Judgment,  
 Jude xiv. you shall sit by him; yea, and when he  
 Dan. vii. 9, shall pass Sentence upon all the Workers  
 10. of Iniquity, let them be Angels or Men,  
 1 Cor. vi. 2, 3. you also shall have a Voice in that Judgment, because they were his and your Enemies. Also when he shall again return to the City, you shall go too with sound of Trumpet, and be ever with him.

Now while they were thus drawing towards the Gate, behold a Company of the Heavenly Host came out to meet them; to whom it was said by the other two Shining Ones, These are the Men that have loved our Lord, when they were in the World, and that have left all for his Holy Name; and he hath sent us to fetch them, and we have brought them thus far on their desired Journey, that they may go in, and look their Redeemer in the Face with Joy. Then the Heavenly Host gave a great Shout, saying, *Blessed are they that are called to the Marriage Supper of the Lamb.* There came out also at this Time to meet them, several of the King's Trumpeters, cloathed in white and shining Raiment, who with melodious Noises, and loud, made even the Heavens to echo with their Sound. These Trumpeters saluted *Christian* and his Fellow with Ten Thousand Welcomes from the World; and this they did with shouting and Sound of Trumpet.

This

This done, they compassed them round about on every Side; some went before, some behind, and some on the right Hand, some on the left (as it were to guard them through the upper Regions) continually sounding as they went with melodious Noise, in Notes on high; so that the very Sight was to them that could behold it, as if Heaven itself was come down to meet them. Thus therefore they walked on together; and as they walked, ever and anon these Trumpeters, even with joyful Sound, would, by mixing their Music with Looks and Gestures, still signifying to *Christian* and his Brother, how welcome they were into their Company, and with what Gladness they came to meet them: And now were these two Men, as it were, in Heaven before they came at it; being swallowed up with the Sight of Angels, and with hearing their melodious Notes. Here also they had the City itself in View, and thought they heard all the Bells therein to ring, to welcome them thereto. But above all, the warm and joyful Thoughts that they had about their own dwelling there with such Company, and that ever and ever: Oh! by what Tongue or Pen can their glorious Joy be expressed! Thus they came up to the Gate.

Now, when they were come up to the Gate, there was written over it in Letters of Gold, *Blessed are they that do his Com-* Rev. ii. 14.  
*mandments, that they may have Right to the Tree of Life, and may enter in through the Gates into the City.*

P

Then

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

Then I saw in my Dream, that the Shining Men bid them call at the Gate; the which when they did, some from above looked over the Gate, to wit, *Enoch, Moses, and Elijah, &c.* to whom it was said, These Pilgrims are come from the City of *Destruction*, for the Love that they bear to the KING of this Place; and then the Pilgrims gave in unto them each Man his Certificate, which they had received in the Beginning; those therefore were carried in to the King, who when he had read them, said, Where are the Men? To whom it was answered, They are standing without the Gate. The King then commanded to open the Gate, *That the Righteous Nation*, said he, *that keepeth Truth may enter in.*

Rev. 26. 2.

Now I saw in my Dream, That these two Men went in at the Gate; and lo! as they entered they were transfigured; and they had Raiment put on that shone like Gold. There were also that met them with Harps and Crowns, and gave them to them, the Harps to praise withal, and the Crowns in Token of Honour. Then I heard in my Dream, that all the Bells in the City rang again for Joy; and that it was said unto them, *Enter ye in to the Joy of our Lord.* I also heard the Men themselves, that they sang with a loud Voice. *faying, Blessing, Honour, and Glory, and Power, be to him that sitteth upon the Throne, and to the Lamb for ever and ever.*

Rev. v. 13,

14.

Now,



Now, just as the Gates were opened to let in the Men, I looked in after them, and behold the City shone like the Sun; the Streets also were paved with Gold, and in them walked many Men with Crowns on their Heads, Palms in their Hands, and golden Harps to sing Praises withal.

There were also of them that had Wings, and they answered one another without Intermission, saying, *Holy, Holy, Holy is the Lord.* And after that, they shut up the Gates; which when I had seen, I wished myself among them.

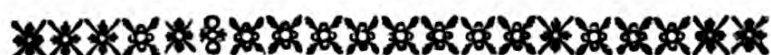
Now while I was gazing upon all these Things, I turned my Head to look back, and saw \* *Ignorance* coming up to the River Side: But he soon got over, and that without half the Difficulty which the other two Men met with. For it happened that there was then at that Place one *Vain-Hope*, a Ferry-Man, that with his Boat helped him over; so he, as the other, I saw, did ascend the Hill, to come up to the Gate, only he came alone; neither did any Man meet him with the least Encouragement. When he was come up to the Gate, he looked up to the Writing that was above, and then began to knock, supposing that Entrance should have been quickly administered to him: But he was asked by the Men that looked over the Top of the Gate, Whence come you? And what would you have? He answered, I have eat and drank in the Presence of the King, and he has taught in our Streets. Then they asked him for his Certificate,

**The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.**

that they might go in and shew it to the King ; so he fumbled in his Bosom for one, and found none. Then said they, Have you none ? But the Man answered never a Word. So they told the King, but he would not come down to see him, but commanded the two Shining Ones that conducted *Christian* and *Hopeful* to the City, to go out and take *Ignorance* and bind him Hand and Foot, and have him away. Then they took him up, and carried him through the Air to the Door that I saw on the Side of the Hill, and put him in there. Then I saw that there was a Way to Hell, even from the Gates of Heaven, as well as from the City of *Destruction*. So I awoke, and behold it was a *Dream*.



THE



## THE CONCLUSION.

**N**OW, Reader, I have told my Dream  
to Thee,  
See if thou can'st interpret it to me,  
Or to thyself, or Neighbour ; but take Heed  
Of misinterpreting ; for that, instead  
Of doing Good, will but thyself abuse :  
By Misinterpreting, Evil ensues.  
Take Heed also that thou be not extreme,  
In playing with the Outside of my Dream :  
Not let my Figure or Similitude  
Put thee into a Laughter or a Feud :  
Leave this for Boys and Fools ; but as for thee,  
Do thou the Substance of my Matter see.  
Put by the Curtains, look within my Vail,  
Turn up my Metaphors, and do not fail ;  
There, if thou seekest them, such Things thou'lt  
find,  
As will be helpful to an honest Mind.  
What of my Dross thou findest there, be bold  
To throw away, but yet preserve the Gold.  
What if my Gold be wrapped up in Ore ?  
None throw away the Apple for the Core.  
But if thou shalt cast all away as vain,  
I know not but 'twill make me dream again.

The End of the First PART.





THE  
PILGRIM'S PROGRESS  
FROM  
THIS WORLD  
TO  
THAT WHICH IS TO COME:

Delivered under the SIMILITUDE of a

D R E A M.

Wherein is set forth

The MANNER of the Setting out of  
CHRISTIAN'S Wife and Children;  
their dangerous JOURNEY; and  
Safe ARRIVAL at the DESIRED  
COUNTRY.

---

P A R T II.

---

By JOHN BUNYAN.

---

*I have used* SIMILITUDES. Hosea xii. 10.

---

L O N D O N:

Printed for W. JOHNSTONE in *Ludgate-street*.

M DCC LXXV.





THE  
AUTHOR'S WAY  
OF SENDING FORTH HIS  
SECOND PART  
OF THE  
PILGRIM.

*O now, my little Book, to every Place,  
G Where my First Pilgrim has but shewn his  
Face :  
Call at their Door : If any say, Who's  
there ?*

*Then answer thou, CHRISTIANA is here.  
If they bid thee Come in, then enter thou  
With all thy Boys : And then thou knowest how ;*

*Tell*

## P R E F A C E.

*Tell who they are, also from whence they came ;  
Perhaps they know them by their Looks or Name :  
But if they should not, ask them yet again,  
If formerly they did not entertain  
One Christian, a Pilgrim ? If they say,  
They did, and were delighted in his Way,  
Then let them know, that those related were  
Unto him : Yea, his Wife and Children are,*

*Tell them that they have left their House and Home,  
Are turned Pilgrims, seek a World to come :  
That they have met with Hardships in the Way,  
That they do meet with Troubles Night and Day :  
That they have trod on Serpents, fought with Devils,  
Have also overcome a many Evils.  
Yea tell them also of the next who have,  
Of Love to Pilgrimage, been stout and brave,  
Defenders of that Way, and how they still  
Refuse this World, to do their Father's Will.*

*Go tell them also of those dainty Things,  
That Pilgrimage unto the Pilgrims brings :  
Let them acquainted be too, how they are  
Beloved of their King, under his Care ;  
What goodly Mansions he for them provides,  
Tho' they meet with rough Winds and swelling Tides,  
How brave a Calm they will enjoy at last,  
Who to the Lord, and by his Ways hold fast.*

*Perhaps with Heart and Hand they will embrace  
Thee, as they did my Firstling, and will grace  
Thee, and thy Fellows, with good Cheer and Fare,  
As shew well, they of Pilgrims Lovers are.*



## P R E F A C E.

### I. O B J E C T I O N.

But how, if they will not believe of me  
That I am truly thine ; 'cause some there be  
That counterfeit the Pilgrim, and his Name,  
Seek, by Disguise, to seem the very same,  
*And by that Means have brought themselves into  
The Hands and Houses of I know not who ?*

### A N S W E R.

*'Tis true, some have of late, to counterfeit  
My Pilgrim to their own, my Title set ;  
Yea, others half my Name and Title too  
Have stitched to their Books, to make them do ;  
But yet they by their Features do declare  
Themselves, not mine to be, whose e'er they are.*

*If such thou meet'st with, then thine only Way  
Before them all, is to Say out thy Say,  
In thine own native Language, which no Man  
Now useth, nor with Ease dissemble can.  
If, after all, they still of you shall doubt,  
Thinking that you, like Gipsies, go about  
In naughty wise, the Country to defile,  
Or that you seek good People to beguile  
With Things unwarrantable, then send for me,  
And I will testify you Pilgrims be ;  
Yea, I will testify that only you  
My Pilgrims are, and that alone will do,*

### 2. O B J E C T.

But yet, perhaps, I may enquire for him,  
Of those that wish him damned Life and Limb.

What

## P R E F A C E.

What shall I do, when I at such a Door  
For *Pilgrims* ask, and they shall rage the more?

## A N S W E R.

*Fright not thyself, my Book, for such Bugbears  
Are nothing else but Ground for groundless Fears.  
My Pilgrim's Book has travell'd Sea and Land,  
Yet could I never come to understand  
That it was slighted or turn'd out of Door  
By any Kingdom, were they rich or poor.*

*In France and Flanders, where Men kill each other,  
My Pilgrim is esteem'd a Friend, a Brother.*

*In Holland too, 'tis said, as I am told,  
My Pilgrim is with some worth more than Gold.*

*Highlanders and Wild-Irish can agree  
My Pilgrim should familiar with them be.  
'Tis in New-England under such Advance,  
Receives there so much loving Countenance,  
As to be trim'd, new-cloth'd, and deck'd with Gems,  
That it may shew its Features and its Limbs.  
Yet more; so commonly doth my Pilgrim walk,  
That of him Thousands daily sing and talk.*

*If you draw nearer Home, it will appear,  
My Pilgrim knows no Ground of Shame or Fear;  
City and Country will entertain  
With Welcome, Pilgrim, yea, they can't refrain  
From smiling, if my Pilgrim be but by,  
Or shew his Head in any Company.*

*Brave Gallants do my Pilgrim hug and love,  
Esteem it much, yea, value it above*

## P R E F A C E.

*Things of a greater Bulk ; yea, with Delight,  
Say, my Lark's Leg is better than a Kite.*

*Young Ladies, and young Gentlewomen too,  
Do no small Kindness to my Pilgrim shew ;  
Their Cabinets, their Bosoms, and their Hearts,  
My Pilgrim has, 'cause he to them imparts  
His pretty Riddles, in such wholesome Strains,  
As yields them Profit double to their Pains  
Of reading ; yea, I think I may be bold  
To say, some prize him far above their Gold.*

*The very Children that do walk the Street,  
If they do but my Holy Pilgrim meet,  
Salute him will, will wish him well, and say,  
He is the only Strippling of the Day.*

*They that have not seen him, yet admire  
What they have heard of him, and much desire  
To have his Company, and hear him tell  
Those Pilgrim Stories which he knows so well.*

*Yea, some that did not love him at the first,  
But call'd him Fool and Noddy, say they must,  
Now they have seen and heard him, him commend,  
And to those whom they love they do him send.*

*Wherefore, my Second Part, thou need'st not be  
Afraid to shew thy Head ; none can hurt thee  
That wish but well to him that went before,  
'Cause thou com'st after with a second Store  
Of Things as good, as rich, as profitable,  
For Young, for Old, for Stagging, and for Stable.*

## 3. O B J E C T.

## P R E F A C E.

### 3. O B J E C T.

But some there are that say, *He laughs too loud;*  
And some do say, *His Head is in a Cloud.*  
Some say, *His Words and Stories are so dark,*  
They know not how by them to find his Mark.

### A N S W E R.

*One may (I think) say, Both his Laughs and Cries  
May well be guess'd at by his wat'ry Eyes.  
Some Things are of that Nature, as to make  
One's Fancy checkle, while his Heart doth ach:  
When Jacob saw his Rachael with the Sheep,  
He did at the same Time both kiss and weep.*

*Whereas some say, A Cloud is in his Head,  
That doth but shew his Wisdom's covered  
With his own Mantle, and to stir the Mind  
To search well after what it fain would find.  
Things that seem to be hid in Words obscure,  
Do but the godly Mind the more allure,  
To study what those Sayings should contain,  
That speak to us in such a cloudy Strain.*

*I also know a dark Similitude  
Will on the curious Fancy more intrude,  
And will stick faster in the Heart and Head  
Than Things from Similies not borrowed.*

*Wherefore, my Book, let no Discouragement  
Hinder thy Travels: Behold, thou art sent  
To Friends, not Foes, to Friends that will give Place  
To thee, thy Pilgrims, and thy Words embrace.*

*Besides,*



## P R E F A C E.

*Besides, what my first Pilgrim left conceal'd,  
Thou, my brave Second Pilgrim, hast reveal'd;  
What Christian left lock'd up, and went his Way,  
Sweet Christiana opens with her Key.*

## 4. O B J E C T.

But some love not the Method of your first;  
Romance they count it, throw't away as Dust.  
If I should meet with such, What shall I say?  
Must I slight them as they slight me, or nay?

## A N S W E R.

*My Christiana, if with such thou meet,  
By all means in all loving wise them greet;  
Render them not Reviling for Revile;  
But if they frown, I pr'ythee on them smile:  
Perhaps 'tis Nature, or some ill Report,  
Has made them thus despise, or thus retort.*

*Some love no Fish, some love no Cheese, and some  
Love not their Friends, nor their own House or Home.  
Some start at Pig, slight Chicken, love not Fowl  
More than they love a Cuckow or an Owl;  
Leave such, my Christiana, to their Choice,  
And seek those who to find thee will rejoice;  
By no Means strive, but in humble-wise  
Present thee to them in thy Pilgrim's Guise*

*Go then, my little Book, and shew to all  
That entertain, and bid thee welcome shall,  
What thou shalt keep close, shut up from the rest,  
And wish what thou shalt shew them may be blest  
To them for Good, and make them chuse to be  
Pilgrims by better far than thee and me.*

## P R E F A C E.

*Go then, I say, tell all Men who thou art,  
Say, I am Christiana, and my Part  
Is now, my Four Sons, to tell you what  
It is for Men to take a Pilgrim's Lot.*

*Go also, tell them who and what they be,  
That now do go on Pilgrimage with thee :  
Say, Here's my Neighbour Mercy, she is one  
That has long Time with me a Pilgrim gone :  
Come, see her in her Virgin Face, and learn  
'Twixt idle ones, and Pilgrims, to discern.  
Yea, let young Damsels learn of her to prize  
The World which is to come in any wise :  
When little tripping Maidens follow God,  
And leave old doting Sinners to his Rod ;  
'Tis like those Days wherein the young ones cry'd  
Hosanna, when the old ones did deride.*

*Next tell them of old Honest, whom you found  
With his white Hairs treading the Pilgrim's Ground ;  
Yea, tell them how plain-hearted this Man was,  
How after his good Lord he bare the Cross :  
Perhaps with some grey Head this may prevail  
With Christ to fall in Love, and Sin bewail.*

*Tell them also, how Master Fearing went  
On Pilgrimage, and how the Time he spent  
In Solitariness, with Fears and Cries ;  
And how, at last, he won the joyful Prize.  
He was a good Man, though much down in Spirit ;  
He is a good Man, and doth Life inherit.*

*Tell them of Master Feeble-mind also,  
Who, not before, but still behind would go ;  
Shew them also how he'd like t' have been slain,  
And how one Great-Heart did his Life regain :*

*This*

## P R E F A C E.

*This Man was true of Heart, though weak in Grace,  
One might true Godliness read in his Face.*

*Then tell them of Master Ready-to-halt,  
A Man with Crutches, but much without Fault :  
Tell them how Master Feeble-Mind and he  
Did love, and in Opinion much agree,  
And let all know, though Weakness was their Chance,  
Yet sometimes one would Sing, the other Dance.*

*Forget not Master Valiant-for-the-Truth,  
That Man of Courage, though a very Youth :  
Tell every one his Spirit was so stout,  
No Man could ever make him face about ;  
And how Great-Heart and he could not forbear,  
But put down Doubting-Castle, slay Despair.*

*Overlook not Master Despondency,  
Nor Much-afraid his Daughter, though they lie  
Under such Mantles, as may make them look  
(With some) as if their God had them forsook.  
They softly went, but sure, and at the End  
Found that the Lord of Pilgrims was their Friend.  
When thou hast told the World of all these Things,  
Then turn about, my Book, and touch these Strings ;  
Which, if but touched, will such Music make,  
They'll make a Cripple dance, a Giant quake.*

*Those Riddles that lie couch'd within thy Breast,  
Freely propound, expound : And for the rest  
Of thy mysterious Lines, let them remain  
For those whose nimble Fancies shall them gain.*

*Now may this Little-Book a Blessing be  
To those who love this Little-Book and me :*

Q

And

## P R E F A C E.

*And may it's Buyer have no Cause to say  
His Money is but lost, or thrown away ;  
Yea, may this Second Pilgrim yield that Fruit  
As may with each good Pilgrim's Fancy suit ;  
And may it some persuade that go Astray,  
To turn their Foot and Heart to the right Way,*

Is the Hearty PRAYER of

The AUTHOR,

JOHN BUNYAN.

THE







Christiana and her Children fet out on Pilgrimage



THE

# *Pilgrim's Progress:*

In the SIMILITUDE of a

# D R E A M.

---

P A R T II.

---

*Courteous Companions.*

**S**OME Time since to tell  
you my DREAM that I had of  
*Christian the Pilgrim*, and of his  
dangerous Journey towards the  
Cœlestial Country, was plea-  
sant to me, and profitable to you. I told you  
then also what I saw concerning his Wife and  
Children



## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

Children, and how unwilling they were to go with him on Pilgrimage; inso-much that he was forced to go on his Progress without them; for he durst not run the Danger of that Destruction, which he feared would come, by staying with them in the City of *Destruction*. Wherefore, as I then shewed you, he left them and departed.

Now it hath so happened, through the Multiplicity of Business, that I have been much hindred and kept back from my wonted Travels into those Parts where he went, and so could not, till now, obtain an Opportunity to make further Enquiry after whom he left behind, that I might give an Account of them. But having had some Concerns that Way of late, I went down again thitherward. Now having taken up my Lodgings in a Wood, about a Mile off the Place, as I slept, I dreamed again.

And as I was in my Dream, behold an aged Gentleman came by where I lay; and because he was to go some Part of the Way that I was travelling, methought I got up and went with him. So as we walked, and as Travellers usually do, I was as if we fell into a Discourse, and our Talk happened to be about *Christian*, and his Travels: For thus I began with the old Man.

Sir, said I, What Town is that there below, that lieth on the left Hand of our Way?

Then said Mr. *Sagacity*, for that was his Name, it is the City of *Destruction*, a populous



## PART II. The Pilgrim's Progress.

3

populous Place, but possessed with a very ill-conditioned and idle Sort of People.

I thought that was that City, quoth I; I went once myself through that Town; and therefore I know that this Report you give of it is true.

Sag. Too true; I wish I could speak Truth in speaking better of them that dwell therein.

Well, Sir, quoth I, then I perceive you to be a well-meaning Man, and so one that takes Pleasure to hear and tell of that which is Good: Pray, did you never hear what happened to a Man some Time ago in this Town (whose Name was *Christian*) that went on a Pilgrimage up towards the higher Regions?

Sag. Hear of him? Ay; and I also heard of the Molestations, Troubles, Wars, Captivities, Cries, Groans, Frights, and Fears that he met with and had in his Journey; besides, I must tell you, all our Country rings of him; there are but few Houses that have heard of him and his Doings, but have sought after, and got the Records of his Pilgrimage; yea, I think I may say, That this hazardous Journey has got many Well-wishers to his Ways: For though when he was here, he was *Fool* in every Man's Mouth, \* yet \* *Christians are well spoken of when gone; though called Fools while they are here.* now he is gone, he is highly commended of all. For, it is said, he lives bravely where he is: Yea, many of them that are resolved never to run his Hazards, yet have their Mouth water at his Gains.

Q 3

They

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

They may, *quoth I*, well think, if they think any Thing that is true, that he liveth well were he is ; for he now lives at and in the Fountain of Life, and has what he has without Labour and Sorrow, for there is no Grief mixed therewith. But pray, what Talk have the People about him?

*Sag.* Talk ? The People talk strangely about him ? Some say, that he now walks in White ! that he has a Chain of Gold about

Rev. iii. 4. his Neck, that he has a Crown of Gold,  
Chap. vi. 11. beset with Pearls, upon his Head : Others

say, That the Shining Ones that sometimes shewed themselves to him in his Journey, are become his Companions, and that he is as familiar with them in the Place where he is, as here one Neighbour is with another. Besides, it is confidently

Zek. iii. 7. upon him already a very rich and pleasant  
Luke xiv. Dwelling at Court, and that he every Day

eateth and drinketh, and walketh and talketh with him, and receive the Smiles and Favours of him that is Judge of all there. Moreover, it is expected of some that this Prince, the Lord of that Country, will shortly come into these Parts, and will know the Reason, if they can give any, why his Neighbours set so little by him, and had him so much in Derision, when they perceived that he would be a Pilgrim.

• Christian's  
*King will take*  
Christian's  
*Part.*

\* For they say, that now he is so in the Affections of his Prince, and that his Sovereign is so much concerned with the Indignities that were cast upon *Christian*, when he became a Pilgrim, that he will look

## PART II. *The Pilgrim's Progress.*

look upon all as done to himself; and no marvel, for it was for the Love that he had to his Prince, that he ventured as he did.

I dare say, *quoth I*, I am glad on it; I am glad for the poor Man's Sake, for that now he has Rest from his Labour, and for that he now reaps the Benefits of his Tears with Joy: And for that he has got beyond the Gun-shot of his Enemies, and is out of the Reach of them that hate him. I also am glad, for that a Rumour of these Things is noised abroad in this Country; who can tell but that it may work some good Effect on some that are left behind? But, pray, Sir, while it is fresh in my Mind, do you hear any Thing of his Wife and Children? Poor Hearts, I wonder in my Mind what they do!

*Sag.* Who! *Christiana* and her Sons!

\* They are like to do well, as did *Christian* himself; for though they all played the Fool at first, and would by no Means be persuaded either by the Tears or Entreaties of *Christian*, yet second Thoughts have wrought wonderfully with them; so they have packed up, and are also gone after him.

• *Good Tidings of Christian's Wife and Children*

Better and better, *quoth I*: But, what! Wife and Children and all!

*Sag.* It is true, I can give you an Account of the Matter, for I was upon the Spot at the Instant, and was thoroughly acquainted with the whole Affair.

Then, *said I*, a Man may report it for a Truth.

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*Sag.* You need not fear to affirm it. I mean that they are all gone on Pilgrimage, both the good Woman and her four Boys. And being we are, as I perceive, going some considerable Way together, I will give you some Account of the whole Matter.

*Part I. Page 205.* This *Christiana* (for that was her Name) from the Day that she with her Children betook themselves to a Pilgrim's Life, after her Husband was gone *over the River*, and she could hear of him no more, her Thoughts began to work in her Mind.

• *Mark this you that are churlish to your goodly Relations.*

*First*, for that she had lost her Husband, and for that the loving Bond of that Relation was utterly broken betwixt them. For you know, said he to me, Nature can do no less but entertain the Living with many a heavy Cogitation in the Remembrance of the Loss of loving Relations. \*This therefore of her Husband did cost her many a Tear. But this was not all, for *Christiana* did also begin to consider with herself, Whether her unbecoming Behaviour towards her Husband was not one Cause that she saw him no more; and that in such Sort he was taken away from her. And upon this, came into her Mind by *swarms*, all her Unkind, Unnatural, and Ungodly Carriage to her dear Friend; which also clogged her Conscience, and did load her with Guilt. She was moreover much broken with calling to Remembrance the restless Groans, the brinish Tears, and Self-bemoaning of her Husband, and how she did harden her Heart against all his Entreaties, and loving Persuasions.



## PART II. The Pilgrim's Progress.

7

Persuasions (of her and her Sons) to go with him; yea, there was not any Thing that *Christian* either said to her, or did before her all the while that his Burden did hang on his Back, but it returned upon her like a Flash of Lightening, and rent the Caul of her Heart in sunder, especially that bitter Out-cry of his, *What shall I do to be saved?* did ring in her Ears most dolefully. Part I. page 1, 3.

Then said she to her Children, Sons, we are all undone. I have sinned away your Father, and he is gone; he would have had us with him, but I would not go myself; I also hindered you of Life. With that the Boys fell into Tears, and cried to go after their Father. Oh! said *Christiana*, that it had been but our Lots to go with him, then it had fared well with us beyond what it is like to do now. For though I formerly foolishly imagined concerning the Troubles of your Father, that they proceeded of a foolish Fancy that he had, or for that he was over-run with melancholy Humours; yet now it will not out of my Mind, but that they sprang from another Cause, to wit, for that the Light of Life was given him; by the Help of which, as I perceive, he has escaped the Snares of Death. Then they wept all again, and cried out, *Oh, Wo worth the Day!* James i. 23, 24, 25.

The next Night, *Christiana* had a Dream; and behold, † she saw as if a broad Parchment was opened before her, in which were recorded the Sum of her Ways, and the Crimes, as she thought, looked very black upon her. Then she cried out aloud in her

†*Christiana's Dream.*  
Luke xviii. 13.

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

her Sleep, *Lord have Mercy upon me, a Sinner*; and the little Children heard her.

• *Mark this, this is the Quintessence of Hell.*

After this she thought she saw two very ill-favoured Ones standing by her Bed-side and saying, \* *What shall we do with this Woman? For she cries out for Mercy waking and sleeping: If she be suffered to go on as she begins, we shall lose her as we have lost her Husband.* Wherefore we must, by some Way, seek to take her off, from the Thoughts of what shall be hereafter, else all the World cannot help but she will become a Pilgrim.

† *Help against Discouragement.*

Now she awoke in a great Sweat, also a Trembling was upon her; but after a while she fell to sleeping again. † And then she thought she saw *Christian* her Husband in a Place of Bliss among many *Immortals*, with a *Harp* in his Hand, standing and playing upon it before one that sat on a Throne, with a Rainbow about his Head. She saw also as if he bowed his Head with his Face to the Paved-Work that was under his Prince's Feet, saying, *I heartily thank my Lord and King for bringing me into this Palace.* Then shouted a Company of them that stood round about, and harped with their Harps: But no Man living could tell what they said, but *Christian* and his Companions.

Next Morning, when she was up, had prayed to God, and talked with her Children a while, one knocked hard at the Door; to whom she spake out, saying, *If thou comest in God's Name, come in.* So he said *Amen*; and opened the Door, and saluted her with *Peace on this House.* The which,

## PART II. *The Pilgrim's Progress.*

9

which, when he had done, he said, \* *Christiana*, knowest thou wherefore I am come? <sup>*Convictions*</sup>  
 Then she blushed and trembled, also her <sup>*seconded with*</sup>  
 Heart began to wax warm with Desires to <sup>*fresh Tidings*</sup>  
 know from whence he came, and what his <sup>*of God's Readiness to pardon*</sup>  
 Errand was to her. So he said to her,  
 My Name is *Secret*, I dwell with those that  
 are high. It is talked of where I dwell, as  
 if thou hast a Desire to go thither; also  
 there is a Report that thou art aware of  
 the Evil thou hast formerly done to thy  
 Husband, in hardening of thy Heart  
 against his Way, and in keeping of these  
 Babes in their Ignorance. *Christiana*, the  
 Merciful One hath sent me to tell thee,  
 That he is a God ready to forgive, and  
 that he taketh Delight to multiply the Par-  
 don of Offences. He also would have  
 thee to know, That he inviteth thee to  
 come into his Presence, to his Table, and  
 that he will feed thee with the Fat of his  
 House, and with the Heritage of *Jacob*  
 thy Father.

There is *Christian* thy Husband, *that was*,  
 with Legions more, his Companions, ever  
 beholding that Face that doth minister Life  
 to Beholders; And they will all be glad  
 when they shall hear the Sound of thy Feet  
 step over thy Father's Threshold.

*Christiana* at this was greatly abashed  
 in herself, and bowed her Head to the  
 Ground. This *Vision* proceeded, and said,  
*Christiana*, Here is also a Letter for thee,  
 which I have brought from thy Husband's  
 King; so she took it and opened it, but it <sup>*Song 1, 2.*</sup>  
 smelt after the Manner of the best Perfume.  
 Also it was written in Letters of Gold. The

Contents

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

Contents of the Letter was this; *That the King would have her to do as did Christian her Husband, for that was the Way to come to his City, and to dwell in his Presence with Joy*

\* *Christiana* *quite overcome.* \* At this the good Woman was quite overcome: So she cried out to her Visiter, Sir, *will you carry me and my Children with you, that we may also go and worship the King?*

† *Further Instructions to Christiana.* Then said the Visiter, † *Christiana! the Bitter is before the Sweet.* Thou must

through Troubles, as he did that went before thee, to enter this Coelestial City, wherefore I advise thee to do as did *Christian* thy Husband: Go to the *Wicket-Gate* yonder over the Plain, for that stands in the Head of the Way up which thou must go, and I wish thee all good Speed. Also I advise thee, that thou put this Letter in thy Bosom: That thou read therein to thyself, and to thy Children, until they have got it by Heart: For it is one of the Songs that thou must sing while thou art in this House of thy Pilgrimage: Also this thou must deliver in at the farther Gate.

*Psal. cxix. 55.*

Now I saw in my Dream, that this old Gentleman, as he told me this Story, did himself seem to be greatly affected therewith. He moreover proceeded and said: So *Christiana* called her Sons together, and began to address herself unto them: † My Sons, I have, as you may perceive, been of late under much Exercise in my Soul, about the Death of your Father; not for that I doubt at all of his Happiness; for I am satisfied now that he is well. I have

† *Christiana prays well for her Journey.*



## PART II. The Pilgrim's Progress.

11

have been also much affected with due Thoughts of mine own State and yours, which I verily believe is by Nature miserable. My Carriage also to your Father in his Distress, is a great Load to my Conscience: For I hardened both my own Heart and yours against him, and refused to go with him on Pilgrimage.

The Thoughts of these Things would now kill me outright, but that for a Dream which I had last Night, and but that for the Encouragement that this Stranger has given me this Morning. Come my Children, let us pack up, and be gone to the Gate that leads to that Cœlestial Country, that we may see your Father, and be with him and his Companions in Peace, according to the Laws of that Land.

Then did her Children burst out into Tears, for Joy that the Heart of their Mother was so inclined: So that Visiter bid them farewell: And they began to prepare to set out for their Journey.

\* But while they were thus about to be gone, two of the Women that were *Christiana's* Neighbours, came up to her House, and knocked at the Door. To whom she said as before. † At this the Women were stunned; for this Kind of Language they used not to hear, or to perceive to drop from the Lips of *Christiana*. Yet they came in: But behold, they found the good Woman preparing to be gone from her House.

\* Timorous  
comes to visit  
Christiana  
with Mercy,  
one of her  
Neighbours.  
† Christiana's  
new Language  
stuns her old  
Neighbours.

So they began, and said, Neighbour, pray what is your Meaning by this?

*Christiana*

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*Christiana* answered, and said to the eldest of them, whose Name was Mrs. *Timorous*, I am preparing for a Journey. (This *Timorous* was Daughter to him that met *Christian* upon the Hill of *Difficulty*, and would have had him gone back for Fear of the Lions.)

Part I. Page  
97.

*Tim.* For what Journey, I pray you?

*Christ.* Even to go after my old Husband; and with that she fell a weeping.

*Tim.* I hope not so, good Neighbour; pray, for your poor Children's Sake, do not so unwomanly cast away yourself.

*Christ.* Nay, my Children shall go with me, not one of them is willing to stay behind.

*Tim.* I wonder in my Heart, what or who has brought you into this Mind.

*Christ.* Oh, Neighbour, knew you but as much as I do, I doubt not but that you would go along with me.

*Tim.* Pr'ythee what new Knowledge hast thou got, that so worketh off thy Mind from thy Friends, and that tempteth thee to go nobody knows where?

*Christ.* Then *Christiana* replied, I have been sorely afflicted since my Husband's Departure from me; but especially since he went over the River. \* But that which troubleth me most, is my churlish Carriage to him, when he was under his Distress. Besides, I am now as he was then; nothing will serve me, but going on Pilgrimage. I was dreaming last Night that I saw him. O that my Soul was with him! He dwelleth in the Presence of the King of the Country; he sits and eats with

\* Death.

with him at his Table; he is become a Companion of *Immortals*, and has a House 1 Cor. v. now given him to dwell in, to which the 1, 2, 3, 4 best Palaces on Earth, if compared, seem to me but as a Dunghill. The Prince of the Palace has also sent for me, with Promises of Entertainment, if I shall come to him; his Messenger was here even now, and brought me a Letter, which invites me to come. And with that she plucked out her Letter, and read it, and said to them, What now will you say to this?

*Tim.* Oh! the Madness that has possessed thee and thy Husband! to run yourselves upon such Difficulties! You have heard, I am sure, what your Husband did meet with, even in a Manner, at the first Step Part I. Page 5, 6, 7, 8, 9. that he took on his Way, as our Neighbour *Obstinate* can yet testify, for he went along with him; yea, and *Pliable* too, until they, like *wise Men*, were afraid to go any farther. We also heard over and above, how he met with the Lions, *Apollyon*, the Shadow of Death, and many other Things. \*Nor is the Danger that he met \*The Reasonings of the Flesh. with at *Vanity-Fair* to be forgotten by thee. For if he, though a Man, was so hard put to it, what canst thou, being but a poor Woman, do? Consider also, that these four sweet Babes are thy Children, thy Flesh, and thy Bones. Therefore, though thou shouldest be so rash as to cast away thyself; yet for the Sake of the Fruit of thy Body, keep thou at Home.

But *Christiana* said unto her, Tempt me not, my Neighbour: I have now a Prize put into my Hand to get again, and I should

\* *A pertinent  
Reply to fleshly  
Reasons.*

should be a Fool of the greatest Sort, if I should have no Heart to strike in with the Opportunity. And for that you tell me of all these troubles, that I am like to meet with in the Way, they are so far from being to me a Discouragement, that they show I am in the right. \* *The Bitter must come before the Sweet*, and that also will make the Sweet the sweeter. Wherefore since you came not to my House *in God's Name*, as I said; I pray you be gone, and do not disquiet me farther.

† *Mercy's  
Bowels yearn  
over Christiana.*

Then *Timorous* also reviled her, and said to her Fellow, Come, Neighbour *Mercy*, let us leave her in her own Hands, she scorns our Counsel and Company. But *Mercy* was at a Stand, and could not so readily comply with her Neighbour, and that for a twofold Reason, 1st, Her Bowels yearned over *Christiana*. † So she said within herself, If my Neighbour will be gone, I will go a little Way with her, and help her. 2dly, Her Bowels yearned over her own Soul; (for what *Christiana* had said, had taken some hold upon her Mind.) Wherefore she said within herself again, I will yet have more Talk with this *Christiana*, and if I find Truth and Life in what she shall say, myself with my Heart shall also go with her. Wherefore *Mercy* began thus to reply to her Neighbour *Timorous*.

‡ *Timorous  
forsakes her,  
but Mercy  
cleaves to her.*

*Mercy*. ‡ Neighbour, I did indeed come with you to see *Christiana* this Morning; and since she is, as you see, a taking her last Farewell of the Country, I think to walk



walk this Sun-shiny Morning, a little with her, to help her on her Way. But she told her not of the second Reason, but kept it to herself.

*Tim.* Well, I see you have a Mind to go a Fooling too; but take heed in Time and be wise; while we are out of Danger, we are out: but when we are in, we are in. So Mrs. *Timorous* returned to her House, and *Christiana* betook herself to her Journey. \* But when *Timorous* was got home to her House, she sends for some of her Neighbours, to wit, Mrs. *Bal's-Eyes*, Mrs. *Inconsiderate*, Mrs. *Light-mind*, and Mrs. *Know-Nothing*. So when they were come to her House, she falls to telling of the Story of *Christiana*, and of her intended Journey. And thus she began her Tale.

\* *Timorous* acquaints her Friends what the good *Christiana* intends to do,

*Tim.* Neighbours, having but little to do this Morning, ( I went to give *Christiana* a Visit; and when I came at the Door, I knocked, as you know it is our Custom: And she answered, *If you come in God's Name, come in.* So in I went, thinking all was well: But when I came in, I found her preparing herself to depart the Town, she, and also her Children. So I asked her, what was her Meaning by that? And she told me in short, That she was now of a Mind to go on Pilgrimage, as did her Husband. She told me also a Dream that she had, and how the King of the Country where her Husband was, had sent her an inviting Letter to come thither.

Then said † Mrs. *Know-nothing*, and what † Mrs. *Know-nothing* do you think she will go?

R

*Tim.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*Tim.* Ay, go she will, whatever come of it; and methinks I know it by this; for that which was my great Argument to persuade her to stay at home (to wit, the Troubles she was like to meet with in the Way) is one great Argument with her, to put her forward on her Journey. For she told me in so many Words, *the Bitter goes before the Sweet*: Yea, and forasmuch as it doth, it makes the Sweet the sweeter.

• Mrs. Bat's Eyes.

\* Mrs. Bat's Eyes. Oh, this blind and foolish Woman, said she; and will she not take Warning by her Husband's Afflictions? For my Part, I see, if he were here again, he would rest him content in a whole Skin, and never run so many Hazards for nothing.

† Mrs. Inconsiderate.

† Mrs. Inconsiderate also replied, saying, Away with such Fantastical Fools from the Town; a good Riddance, for my Part, I say, of her; should she stay where she dwells, and retain this Mind, who could live quietly by her? for she will either be dumpish or unneighbourly, to talk of such Matters as no wise Body can abide: Wherefore, for my Part, I shall never be sorry for her Departure; let her go, and let better come in her Room: It was never a good World since these whimsical Fools dwelt in it.

‡ Mrs. Light-mind, Madam Wanton, *she that had been too hard for Faithful in Time past, Part I. p. 82.*

Then ‡ Mrs. Light-Mind added as followeth; Come, put this Kind of Talk away. I was Yesterday at Madam Wanton's where we were as merry as the Maids. For who do you think should be there, but I and Mrs. Love-the-Flesh, and three or four

four more, with Mrs. *Lechery*, Mrs. *Filth*, and some others: So there we had Musick, and Dancing, and what else was meet to fill up the Pleasure. And I dare say, my Lady herself is an admirable well-bred Gentlewoman, and Mr. *Lechery* is as pretty a Fellow. By this Time *Christiana* was got on her Way, and *Mercy* went along with her: So as they went, her Children being there also, *Christiana* began to discourse. \* And, *Mercy*, said *Christiana*, I take this as an unexpected Favour, that thou shouldest set Foot out of Doors with me to accompany me a little in my Way.

\* Discourse between *Mercy* and good *Christiana*.

*Mercy*. † Then said young *Mercy* (for she was but young) if I thought it would be to any Purpose to go with you, I would never go near the Town.

† *Mercy* inclines to go.

*Christ*. Well, *Mercy*, said *Christiana*, ‡ cast in thy Lot with me, I well know what will be the End of our Pilgrimage; my Husband is where he would not but be for all the Gold in the *Spanish* Mines. Nor shalt thou be rejected, though thou goest but upon my Invitation. The King who hath sent for me and Children, is one that delighteth in *Mercy*. Besides, if thou wilt, I will hire thee, and thou shalt go along with me as my Servant. Yet we will have all Things in common betwixt thee and me, only go along with me.

‡ *Christiana* would have her Neighbour with her.

*Mercy*. § But how shall I be ascertained that I also should be entertained? Had I this Hope from one that can tell, I would make no Stick at all, but would go, being helped by him that can help, though the Way is never so tedious.

§ *Mercy* doubts of Acceptance.

\* *Christiana allures her to the Gate, which is Christ, and promises there to enquire for her.* *Christ.* \* Well, loving *Mercy*, I will tell thee what thou shalt do; go with me to the *Wicket-gate*, and there I will further enquire for thee; and if there thou shalt not meet with Encouragement, I will be content that thou return to thy Place; I also will pay thee for thy Kindness which thou shonest to me and my Children in the accompanying of us in our Way as thou dost.

+ *Mercy prays.* *Mercy.* † Then will I go thither, and will take what shall follow; and the Lord grant that my Lot may there fall, even as the King of Heaven shall have his Heart upon me.

‡ *Christiana glad of Mercy's Company.* ‡ *Christiana* then was glad at Heart, not only that she had a Companion, but also for that she had prevailed with this poor Maid to fall in Love with her own Salvation. So they went on together, and *Mercy* began to weep. Then said *Christiana*, Wherefore weepest my Sister so?

§ *Mercy grieves for her carnal Relations.* *Mercy.* Alas! § said she, who can but lament, that shall but rightly consider what a State and Condition my poor Relations are in, that yet remain in our sinful Town: And that which makes my Grief the more, is because they have no Instruction, nor any to tell them what is to come.

|| *Christian's Prayers were answered for his Relations after he was dead.* *Christ.* Bowels become Pilgrims: || And thou dost for thy Friends, as my good *Christian* did for me when he left me; he mourned for that I would not heed nor regard him, but his Lord and ours did gather up his Tears, and put them into his Bottle, and now both I and thou, and these my sweet Babes, are reaping the



Fruit and Benefit of them. I hope, *Mercy*, that these Tears of thine will not be lost; for the Truth hath said, *that they that sow in Tears, shall reap in Joy and Singing.* Psal. cxxvi. *And he that goeth forth and weepeth, bearing 5, 6. precious Seed, shall doubtless come again with Rejoicing, bringing his Sheaves with him.*

Then said *Mercy*,

*Let the most blessed be my Guide,  
If't be his blessed Will,  
Unto his Gate, into his Fold,  
Up to his holy Hill:  
And never let him suffer me  
To swerve or turn aside  
From his Free-grace and holy Ways,  
Whate'er shall me betide;  
And let him gather them of mine,  
That I have left behind;  
Lord, make them pray they may be thine,  
With all their Heart and Mind.*

Now my old Friend proceeded, and said—But when *Christiana* came to the Slough of Despond, \* she began to be at a Stand; for, said she, This is the Place in which my dear Husband had like to have been smothered with Mud. She perceived also, That notwithstanding the Command of the King to make this Place for Pilgrims good, yet it was rather worse than formerly: So I asked if that was true? Yes, said the old Gentleman, too true: For many there be, that pre-

*Part I. page*

*9, 10.*

*\* Their own  
carnal Con-  
clusions in-  
stead of the  
Word of Life.*

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

tend to be the King's Labourers, and say, They are for mending the King's Highway, that bring *Dirt* and *Dung* instead of Stones, and so marr instead of mending. Here *Christiana* therefore, and her Boys, did make a Stand : But, said *Mercy*,

\* *Mercy the boldest at the Slough of Despond.*  
Luke i. 45.

\* Come, let us venture, only let us be wary. Then they looked well to their Steps, and made Shift to get staggering over.

Yet *Christiana* had like to have been in, and that not once or twice. Now they had no sooner got over; but they thought they heard Words that said unto them, *Blessed is she that believeth, for there shall be a Performance of what has been told her from the Lord.*

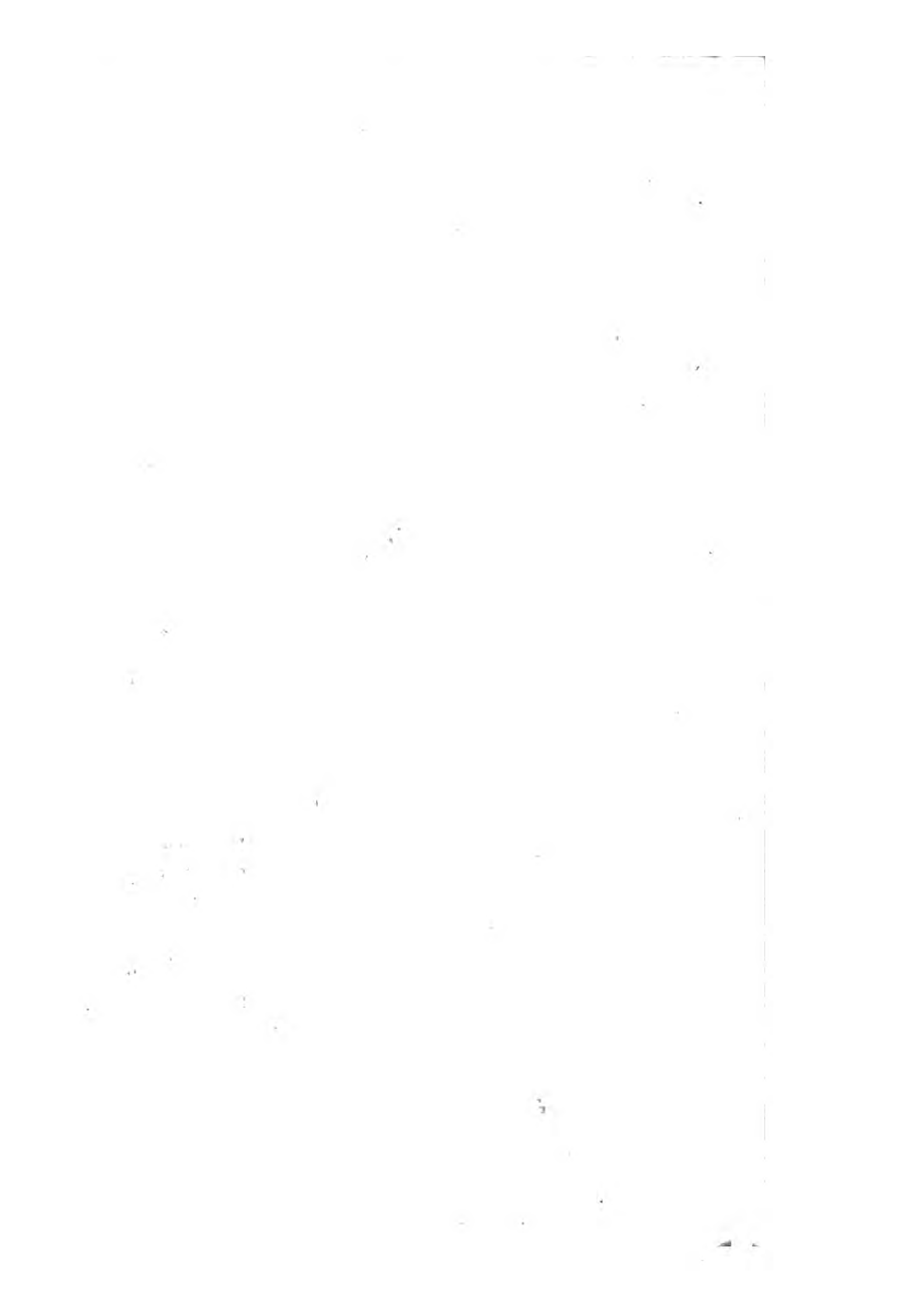
Then they went on again, and said *Mercy* to *Christiana*, Had I as good Ground to hope for a loving Reception at the *Wicket-Gate*, as you, I think no *Slough of Despond* would discourage me.

Well, said the other, you know your Sore, and I know mine ; and, good Friend, we shall all have enough Evil before we come to our Journey's End.

For it cannot be imagined, That the People that design to attain such excellent Glories as we do, and that are so envied that Happiness as we are ; but that we shall meet with what Fears and Snares, with what Troubles and Afflictions they can possibly assault us with, that hate us.

And now Mr. *Sagacity* left me to dream out my Dream by myself. Wherefore, methought I saw *Christiana* and *Mercy*, and the Boys, go all of them up to the Gate :

To







Christiana and her Children enter the Wicket Gate.



## PART II. The Pilgrim's Progress.

21

To which, \* when they came, they betook themselves to a short Debate, about *how* they must manage their Calling at the Gate; and what should be said unto him that did open unto them. So it was concluded, since *Christiana* was the Eldest,

*Prayer should be made with Consideration and Fear, as well as in Faith and Hope.*

That she should knock for Entrance, and that she should speak to him that did open, for the Rest. So *Christiana* began to knock, and as her poor Husband did, she knocked, and knocked again. But instead of

*Part I. p. 27.*

any that answered, they all thought that they heard as if a † Dog came barking up-

*† The Dog, the Devil, an Enemy to Prayer.*

on them. A Dog, and a great one too, and this made the Women and Children afraid. Nor durst they for a while to

knock any more, for Fear the Mastiff should fly upon them. ‡ Now therefore

*† Christiana and her Companions perplexed about Prayer.*

they were greatly tumbled up and down in their Minds, and know not what to

do: Knock they durst not, for Fear of the Dog; Go back they durst not, for fear

the Keeper of that Gate should espy them as they so went, and be offended with

them: At last they thought of knocking again, and knocking more vehemently

than they did at first. Then said the Keeper of the Gate, Who is there? So the

Dog left off to bark, and he opened unto them.

Then *Christiana* made low Obeisance, and said, Let not our Lord be offended

with his Hand-maidens, for that we have knocked at his Princely Gate. Then

said the Keeper, Whence came ye? And what is that you would have?

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*Christiana* answered, We are come from whence *Christian* did come, and upon the same Errand as he; to wit, to be, if it shall please you, graciously admitted, by this Gate, into the Way that leads unto the Cœlestial City. And I answer, my Lord, in the next Place, that I am *Christiana*, once the Wife of *Christian*, that now is gotten above.

With that the Keeper of the Gate did marvel saying, What is she now become a Pilgrim, that but a while ago abhorred that Life? Then she bowed her Head and said, Yea, and so are these my sweet Babes also.

Then he took her by the Hand, and let her in, and said also, *Suffer the little Children to come unto me*; and with that he shut up the Gate.\* This done, he called to a Trumpeter that was above, over the Gate to entertain *Christiana* with Shouting, and Sound of the Trumpet, for Joy. So he obeyed and sounded, and filled the Air with his melodious Notes.

\* How *Christiana* is entertained at the Gate.

Now all this while poor *Mercy* did stand without, trembling and crying, for fear that she was rejected. But when *Christiana* had gotten Admittance for herself and her Boys, then she began to make Intercession for *Mercy*.

† *Christiana's Prayer for her Friend Mercy.*

*Christ.* † And she said, My Lord, I have a Companion of mine that stands yet without, that is come hither upon the same Account as myself: One that is much dejected in her Mind, for that she comes, as she thinks, without sending for; where-

as

as I was sent to by my Husband's King to come.

\* Now *Mercy* began to be very impatient \* *The Delays*  
and each Minute was as long to her as an *make the hun-*  
Hour; wherefore she prevented *Christiana* *gering Soul the*  
from a fuller Interceding for her, by knock-  
*serventer.*  
ing at the Gate herself. And she knocked  
then so loud, that she made *Christiana* to  
start. Then said the **Keeper** of the Gate,  
Who is there? And *Christiana* said, It is  
my Friend.

So he opened the Gate and looked out,  
but *Mercy* was fallen down without in a  
Swoon, † for she fainted, and was afraid † *Mercy*  
that no Gate would be open to her. *faints.*

Then he took her by the Hand, and  
said, *Damsel*, I bid thee arise.

O, Sir, said she, I am faint; there is  
scarce Life left in me. But he answered  
that one said, *When my Soul fainted within* John ii. 7.  
*me, I remembered the Lord, and my Prayer*  
*came unto thee, into thy holy Temple.* Fear  
not but stand upon thy Feet, and tell me  
wherefore thou art come.

*Mercy.* † I am come for that unto which † *The Cause of*  
I was never invited, as my Friend *Chri-* *her Fainting.*  
*stiana* was. Hers was from the King, and  
mine was but from her. Wherefore I  
presume.

Did she desire thee to come with her to  
this Place?

*Mercy.* Yes; and as my Lord sees, I am  
come. And if there is any Grace or For-  
giveness of Sins to spare, I beseech that  
thy poor Hand-maid may be Partaker  
thereof.

Then

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*Mark this.*

Then he took her again by the Hand, and led her gently in, and said, I pray for all them that believe on me. Then said he to those that stood by, fetch something and give it *Mercy* to smell on, thereby to stay her Faintings : So they fetched her a Bundle of Myrrh ; a while after, she was revived.

And now was *Christiana* and her Boys, and *Mercy*, received of the Lord at the Head of the Way, and spoke kindly unto by him. Then said they yet farther unto him, We are sorry for our Sins, and beg of our Lord his Pardon, and farther Information what we must do.

*Song i. 2.**John xx. 20.*

I grant Pardon, said he, by Word and Deed ; by Word, in the Promise of Forgiveness ; by Deed, in the Way I obtained it. Take the first from my Lips with a Kiss, and the other as it shall be revealed.

\**Christ crucified seen afar off.*

Now I saw in my Dream, that he spake many good Words unto them, whereby they were greatly gladdened. He also had them up to the Top of the Gate, \* and shewed them by what Deed they were saved ; and told them withal, That that Sight they would have again as they went along in the Way, to their Comfort.

† *Talk between the Christians.*

So he left them awhile in a Summer Parlour below, where they entered into † Talk by themselves ; and thus *Christiana* began : O Lord ! how glad am I, that we are got in hither !

*Mercy.* So you well may ; but I of all have Cause to leap for you.



*Christ.* I thought one Time as I stood at the Gate (because I had knocked and none did answer) that all our Labour had been lost, especially when that ugly Cur made such a heavy Barking at us.

*Mercy.* But my worst Fear was, after I saw that you was taken into his Favour, and that I was left behind: Now, thought I, it is fulfilled which is written; *Two Women shall be grinding together, the one shall be taken, and the other left.* I had much ado to forbear crying out, *Undone!*

And afraid I was to knock any more: but when I looked up to what was written over the Gate, I took Courage. I also thought that I must either knock again, or die: So I knocked, but I cannot tell how; for my Spirit now struggled between Life and Death.

*Christ.\** Can you not tell how you knocked? I am sure your Knocks were so earnest, that the very Sound made me start; I thought I never heard such Knocking in all my Life; I thought you would come in by a violent Hand, or take the Kingdom by Storm.

*\* Christiana thinks her Companion prays better than she.*

*Matt. xi. 12,*

*Mercy.* Alas! to be in my Case, who that so was, could but have done so? You saw that the Door was shut upon me, and that there was a most cruel Dog thereabout. Who, I say, that was so faint-hearted as I would not have knocked with all their Might? But pray, What said my Lord unto my Rudeness? Was he not angry with me?

*Christ.†* When he heard your lumbering Noise, he gave a wonderful innocent Smile:

*† Christ pleased with loud and restless Prayer.*

Smile; I believe what you did, pleased him well, for he shewed no Sign to the contrary. But I marvel in my Heart why he keeps such a Dog; had I known that before, I should not have had Heart enough to have ventured myself in this Manner. But now we are in, we are in, and I am glad with all my Heart.

*Mercy.* I will ask, if you please, next Time he comes down, why he keeps such a filthy Cur in his Yard: I hope he will not take it amiss.

*The Children*  
*are afraid of*  
*the Dog.* Do so, said the Children, and persuade him to hang him, \* for we are afraid he will bite us when we go hence.

So at last he came down to them again, and *Mercy* fell to the Ground on her Face, before him, and worshipped, and said, Let my Lord accept the Sacrifice of Praise which I now offer unto him with the Calves of my Lips.

*Jer. xii. 1, 2.* So he said unto her *Peace be to thee, stand up.* But she continued upon her Face, and said, *Righteous art thou, O Lord, when I plead with thee, let me talk with thee of thy*  
*† Mercy exposes*  
*flutes about*  
*the Dog.* *Judgments: † Wherefore dost thou keep so cruel a Dog in thy Yard, at the Sight of which, such Women and Children, as we, are ready to fly from the Gate for Fear?*

*Devil.* He answered and said, *That Dog has another Owner; he also is kept close in another Man's Ground, only my Pilgrims hear his Barking: He belongs to the Castle which you*  
*Part I. p. 31.* *see there at a Distance, but can come up to the Walls of this Place. He has frighted many an honest Pilgrim from Worse to Better by the Great Voice of his Roaring. Indeed*  
*he*

he that owneth him, doth not keep him cut of any Good-will to me or mine, but with Intent to keep the Pilgrims from coming to me, and that they may be afraid to come and knock at this Gate of Entrance. Sometimes also he has broken out, and has worried some that I loved; but I take all at present patiently. I also give my Pilgrims timely Help, so that \* they <sup>• A Check to the</sup> are not delivered up to his Power, to do to carnal Fear them what his Doggish Nature would prompt <sup>of the Pil-</sup> him to. But what! my purchased one, I <sup>grims.</sup> trow, hadst thou known never so much beforehand, thou wouldst not have been afraid of a Dog.

The Beggars that go from Door to Door, will, rather than they will lose a supposed Alms, run the Hazard of the Bawling, Barking, and Biting too of a Dog: And shall a Dog in another Man's Yard, a Dog whose Barking I turn to the Profit of Pilgrims, keep any from coming to me? I deliver them from the Lions, and my Darling from the Power of the Dog.

Mercy. † Then said Mercy, I confess my † Christians Ignorance: I speak what I understand <sup>when wise</sup> not; I acknowledge that thou dost all <sup>enough, acqui-</sup> Things well. <sup>esce in the</sup>

Chrst. Then *Christiana* began to talk of <sup>Wisdom of</sup> their Journey, and to enquire after the <sup>the Lord.</sup> Way. So he fed them and washed their <sup>Part I. p. 36.</sup> Feet, and set them in the Way of his Steps, according as he had dealt with her Husband before. So I saw in my Dream, that they went on their Way, and the Weather was comfortable to them.

Then

Then *Christiana* began to sing, saying,

*Bless'd be the Day that I began*

*A Pilgrim for to be ;*

*And blessed also be the Man,*

*That thereunto mov'd me.*

*'Tis true, 'twas long ere I began*

*To seek to live for ever :*

*But now I run fast as I can ;*

*'Tis better late, than never.*

*Our Tears to Joy, our Fears to Faith,*

*Are turned as we see ;*

*That our Beginning (as one saith)*

*Shews what our End will be.*

Now there was on the other Side of the Wall, that fenced in the Way up which *Christiana* and her Companions were to go, a Garden, and that belonged to him, *\* The Devil's* whose was that *\* Barking Dog*, of whom *Garden.* Mention was made before. And some of the Fruit-Trees that grew in the Garden, shot their Branches upon the Wall; and being mellow, they that found them did gather them up, and eat of them to their Hurt. So *Christiana's* Boys, as Boys are apt to do, being pleased with the Trees, and with the Fruit that did hang thereon, *† The Children* † did pluck them, and began to eat. Their *at of the Enemy's Fruit.* Mother did also chide them for so doing, but still the Boys went on.

Well, said she, my Sons, you transgress, for that Fruit is none of ours; but she did not know that they did belong to the Enemy :



Enemy: I will warrant you, if she had, she would have been ready to die for Fear. But that passed, and they went on their Way. Now, by that they were gone about two Bows-shot from the Place that led them into the Way, they espied \* two \* *Two Ill-favoured Ones* very Ill-favoured Ones coming down apace to meet them. With that *Christiana*, and *Mercy* her Friend, covered themselves with their veils, and kept also on their Journey: The Children also went on before; so that at last they met together. Then they that came down to meet them, came just up to the Women, as if they would embrace them; but *Christiana* said, Stand back, or go peaceably as you should. Yet these two, as Men that † are deaf, regarded not *Christiana's* Words but began to *struggle with* lay hands upon them; at that *Christiana* waxed very wroth, and spurned at them with her Feet. *Mercy* also, as well as she could, did what she could to shift them. *Christiana* again said to them, Stand back, and be gone, for we have no Money to lose, being Pilgrims as you see, and such too as live upon the Charity of our Friends.

*Ill-Fav.* Then said one of the two Men, we make no Assault upon you for Money, but are come out to tell you, that if you will but grant one small Request which we shall ask, we will make Women of you for ever.

*Christ.* Now *Christiana* imagining what they should mean, made Answer again, *We will either hear nor regard, nor yield to what you shall all ask. We are in haste, and cannot*

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

cannot stay, our Blessed is of Life and Death: So again she and her Companions made a fresh Essay to go past them: But they letted them in their Way.

*Ill-Fav.* And they said, we intend no Hurt to your Lives, it is another Thing we would have.

\* *She cries out.*

*Christ.* \* Ay, quoth *Christiana*, you would have us Body and Soul, for I know it is for that you are come; but we will die rather upon the Spot, than to suffer ourselves to be brought into such Snares, as shall hazard our Well-being hereafter. And with that they both shrieked out, and cried, *Murder, Murder.* And so put themselves under those Laws that are provided for the Protection of Women. But the Men still made their Approach upon them with Design to prevail against them. They therefore cried out again.

Deut. xxii.  
23, 26, 27.

† *It is good to cry out when we are assaulted.*

‡ *The Reliever comes.*

Now they being, as I said, † not far from the Gate, in at which they came, their Voice was heard from where they were, thither: Wherefore some of the House came out, and knowing that it was *Christiana's* Tongue, they made haste to her Relief. But by that they were got within Sight of them, the Women were in a very great Scuffle, the Children also stood crying by. Then did he that came in to their ‡ Relief call out to the Ruffians, saying, What is that Thing you do? Would you make my Lord's People to transgress? He also attempted to take them, but they did make their Escape over the Wall into the Garden of the Man to whom the Great Dog belonged; so the Dog became their Protector,

Protector. This *Reliever* then came up *The ill ones fly to the Devil for Relief.* to the Women, and asked them how they did. So they answered, We thank thy Prince, pretty well, only we have been somewhat affrighted; we thank thee also, for that thou camest in to our Help, for otherwise we had been overcome.

*Reliever.* So after a few more Words, *The Reliever talks to the Women.* this *Reliever* said as followeth: I marvelled much when you was entertained at the Gate above, being ye know that ye were but weak Women, that you petitioned not the Lord for a Conductor: Then might you have avoided these Troubles and Dangers; he would have granted you one.

*Christ.* Alas! said *Christiana*, we were *Mark this.* so taken with our present Blessing; that Dangers to come were forgotten by us: Besides, who could have thought, that so near the King's Palace, there should have lurked such naughty ones? Indeed, it had been well for us, had we asked our Lord for one; but since our Lord knew it would be for our Profit, I wonder he sent not one along with us!

*Rel.* It is not always necessary to grant *We lose for want of asking.* Things not asked for, lest by so doing they become of little Esteem; but when the Want of a Thing is felt, it then comes under, in the Eyes of him that feels it, that Estimate that properly is its due, and so consequently will be hereafter used. Had my Lord granted you a Conductor, you would not neither so have bewailed that Oversight of your's, in not asking for one, as now you have Occasion to do.

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

So all Things work for Good, and tend to make you more wary.

*Christ.* Shall we go back again to my Lord, and confess our Folly, and ask one?

*Rel.* Your Confession of your Folly I will present him with: To go back again, you need not; for in all Places where you shall come, you will find no Want at all; for in every of my Lord's Lodgings, which he has prepared for the Reception of his Pilgrims, there is sufficient to furnish them against all Attempts whatsoever. But as I said, he will be enquired of by them

Ezek. xxxvi. 37. to do it for them. And it is a poor Thing that is not worth asking for. When he had thus said, he went back to his Place, and the Pilgrims went on their Way.

*The Mistake of Mercy*

*Mercy.* Then said *Mercy*, What a sudden Blank is here! I made Account we had been past all Danger, and that we should never sorrow more.

*Christiana's Guilt.*

*Christ.* Thy Innocency, my Sister, said *Christiana* to *Mercy*, may excuse thee much; but as for me, my Fault is so much the greater, for that I saw this Danger before I came out of the Doors, and yet did not provide for it where Provision might have been had. I am much to be blamed.

*Mercy.* Then said *Mercy*, How knew you this before you came from Home? Pray open to me this Riddle.

*Christ.* Why, I will tell you: Before I set Foot out of Doors one Night, as I lay in my Bed, I had a Dream about this: For methought I saw two Men, as like these as ever the World they could look,



look, stand at my Bed's Feet, plotting how they might prevent my Salvation. I will tell you their very Words: They said, (it was when I was in my Troubles) What *Christiana's* shall we do with this Woman? For she *Dream re-* cries out awaking and sleeping for For- *peated.* giveness; if she be suffered to go on as she begins, we shall lose her as we have lost her Husband. This you know might have made me take Heed, and have provided when Provision might have been had.

*Mercy.* Well, said *Mercy*, as by this *Mercy makes* Neglect we have an Occasion ministered *good Use of* unto us, to behold our Imperfections, so *their Neglect* our Lord has taken Occasion thereby to *of Duty.* make manifest the Riches of his Grace; for he, as we see, has followed us with unasked Kindness, and has delivered us from their Hands that were stronger than we, of his mere good Pleasure.

Thus now when they had talked away a little more Time, they drew near to a House which stood in the Way, which House was built for the Relief of Pilgrims, as you will find more fully related in the first Part of the Records of the *Pilgrim's Part I. page* *Progress*: So they drew on towards the *27, &c.* House, (the House of the *Interpreter*,) and when they came to the Door, they heard a great Talk in the House; then they gave Ear, and heard, as they thought, *Christi-* *Talk in the* *Interpreter's* *House about* *Christiana's* *going on Pil-* *grimage.* *ana* mentioned by Name. For you must know, that there went along, even before her, a Talk of her and her Children going on Pilgrimage. And this was the more pleasing to them, because they had heard that she was *Christian's* Wife, that

**The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.**

*She knocks at  
the Door,*

Woman who was some Time ago so unwilling to hear of going on Pilgrimage. Thus, therefore, they stood still, and heard the good People within commending her, who they little thought stood at the Door. At last *Christiana* knocked, as she had done at the Gate before. Now when she had knocked, there came to the Door a young Damsel, named *Innocent*, and opened the Door, and looked, and behold, two Women were there.

*The Door is  
opened to them  
by Innocent.*

*Damsel.* Then said the Damsel to them, With whom would you speak in this Place?

*Christ.* *Christiana* answered, We understand that this is a privileged Place for those that are become Pilgrims, and we now at this Door are such: Wherefore we pray that we may be Partakers of that for which we at this Time are come; for the Day, as thou seest, is very far spent, and we are loth to Night to go any farther.

*Damsel.* Pray, what may I call your Name, that I may tell it to my Lord within?

*Christ.* My Name is *Christiana*; I was the Wife of that Pilgrim that some Years ago did travel this Way, and these be his four Children. This Maiden is also my Companion, and is going on Pilgrimage too.

*Innocent.* Then ran *Innocent* in (for that was her Name) and said to those within. Can you think who is at the Door? There is *Christiana* and her Children, and her Companion, all waiting for Entertainment

ment here. Then they leaped for Joy, and went and told their Master. So he came to the Door, and looking upon her, he said, Art thou that *Christiana* whom *Christian* the good Man left behind him, when he betook himself to a Pilgrim's Life?

*Joy in the House of the Interpreter, that Christiana is turned Pilgrim.*

*Christ.* I am that Woman that was so hard-hearted as to flight my Husband's Troubles, and that left him to go on his Journey alone, and these are his four Children; but now I also am come, for I am convinced that no Way is right but this.

*Inter.* Then is fulfilled that which is written of the Man that said to his Son, *Matt. xxi. 29.* Go work to-day in my Vineyard; and he said to his Father, I will not; but afterwards repented and went.

*Christ.* Then said *Christiana*, So be it, *Amen.* God make it a true Saying upon me, and grant that I may be found at the last, of him in Peace, without Spot and blameless.

*Inter.* But why standest thou at the Door? Come in, thou Daughter of *Abraham*; we were talking of thee but now, for Tidings have come to us before, how thou art become a Pilgrim. Come Children, come in; come, Maiden, come; so he had them all into the House.

So when they were within, they were bidden to sit down and rest them; the which when they had done, those that attend upon the Pilgrims in the House, came into the Room to see them. And one smiled, and another smiled, and another smiled, and they all smiled, for Joy

*Old Saints glad to see the young ones walk in God's Way.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

that *Christiana* was become a Pilgrim: They also looked upon the Boys; they stroked them over their Faces with their Hands, in Token of their kind Reception of them: They also carried it lovingly to *Mercy*, and bid them all welcome into their Master's House.

• *The Significant Rooms.*

After a while, because Supper was not ready, the \* *Interpreter* took them into his *Significant Rooms*, and shewed them what *Christian*, *Christiana's* Husband, had seen some Time before. Here therefore they saw the Man in the Cage, the Man and his Dream, the Man that cut his Way through his enemies, and the Picture of the biggest of all, together with the rest of those Things that were then so profitable to *Christian*.

*The Man with the Muckrake expounded.*

This done, and after those Things had been somewhat digested by *Christiana* and her Company, the *Interpreter* takes them apart again, and has them first into a Room, where was a Man that could look no Way but downwards, with a Muckrake in his Hand: There stood also one over his Head with a Cœlestial Crown in his Hand, and proffered him that Crown for his Muckrake; but the Man did neither look up, nor regard, but raked to himself the Straws, the small Sticks, and Dust of the Floor.

Then said *Christiana*, I persuade myself, that I know somewhat the Meaning of this: For this is the Figure of a Man in this World: Is it not, good Sir?

*Inter.* Thou hast said right, said he, and his Muckrake doth shew his carnal Mind.  
And



## PART II. *The Pilgrim's Progress.*

37

And has were thou seest him rather give Heed to rake up Straws and Sticks, and the Dust of the Floor, than do what he says that calls to him from above, with the Cœlestial Crown in his Hand; it is to shew, that Heaven is but as a Fable to some, and that Things here are counted the only Things substantial. Now whereas, it was also shewed thee, that the Man could look no Way but downwards: It is to let thee know that earthly Things, when they are with Power upon Men's Minds, quite carry their Hearts away from God.

*Christ.* Then said *Christiana*, Oh! deliver me from this Muckrake.

*Christian's Prayer*

*Inter.* That Prayer, said the *Interpreter*, has lain by till it is almost rusty: Give me not Riches, is scarce the Prayer of one of ten Thousand. Straws and Sticks, and Dust, with most are the great Things now looked after.

*against the Muckrake. Prov. xxxii. 8.*

With that *Mercy* and *Christiana* wept and said, it is, alas! too true.

When the *Interpreter* had shewed them this, he had them into the very best Room in the House; (a very brave Room it was;) so he bid them look round about, and see if they could find any Thing profitable there. Then they looked round and round; for there was nothing to be seen but a very great Spider on the Wall; and that they overlooked.

*Of the Spider.*

*Mercy.* Then said *Mercy*, Sir, I see nothing; but *Christiana* held her Peace.

*Inter.* But, said the *Interpreter*, look again: She therefore looked again, and

**The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.**

*Talk about  
the Spider,*

said, Here is not any Thing but an ugly Spider, who hangs by his Hands upon the Wall. Then said he, is there but one Spider in all this spacious Room? Then the Water stood in *Christiana's* Eyes, for she was a Woman quick of Apprehension: And she said, Yea, Lord, there is more here than one. Yea, and Spiders, whose Venom is far more destructive than that which is in her. The *Interpreter* then looked pleasantly on her, and said, Thou hast said the Truth. This made *Mercy* blush, and the Boys to cover their Faces, for they all began now to understand the Riddle.

*The Interpre-  
tation,*

Then said the *Interpreter* again, *The Spider taketh hold with her Hands, as you see, and is in King's Palaces.* And wherefore is this recorded, but to shew you, that how full of the Venom of Sin soever you be, yet you may, by the Hand of Faith, lay hold of, and dwell in, the best Room that belongs to the King's House above?

*Christ.* I thought, said *Christiana*, of something of this; but I could not imagine it all. I thought that we were like *Spiders*, and that we looked like ugly Creatures, in what fine Rooms soever we were: But that by this *Spider*, this venomous and ill-favoured Creature, we were to learn *how to act Faith*, that came not into my Thoughts, that she worketh with Hands, and, as I see, dwells in the best Room of the House. God has made nothing in vain.

Then they seemed all to be glad; but the Water stood in their Eyes: Yet they  
looked

looked one upon another, and also bowed before the *Interpreter*.

He had them then into another Room, *Of the Hen and Chicken.* where was a Hen and Chicken, and bid them observe a while. So one of the Chicken went to the Trough to drink, and every Time she drank, she lifted up her Head, and her Eyes towards Heaven. See, said he, what this little Chick doth, and learn of her to acknowledge whence you Mercies come, by receiving them with looking up. Yet again, said he, observe and look: so they gave Heed, and perceived that the Hen did walk in a four-fold Method towards her Chicken. 1. She had a *common Call*, and that she had all the Day long. 2. She had a *special Call*, and that she had but sometimes. 3. She *Mat.xxiii.27:* had a *brooding Note*. And, 4. She had an *Out-cry*.

Now, said he, compare this Hen to your King, and these Chicken to his obedient ones. For answerable to her, himself has his Methods, which he walketh in towards his People; by his *common Call*, he gives nothing; by his *special Call*, he always has something to give; he has also a *Brooding Voice*, for they that are under his Wing. And he has an *Out-cry*, to give the Alarm when he seeth the Enemy come. I chose, my Darlings, to lead you into the Room where such Things are, because you are Women, and they are easy for you.

*Christ*. And, Sir, said *Christiana*, pray let us see some more: So he had them into the Slaughter-house, where was a Butcher killing

*Of the Butcher  
and his Sheep.*

killing a Sheep: And behold the Sheep was quiet, and took her Death patiently. Then said the *Interpreter*, you must learn of this Sheep to suffer, and to put up Wrongs without Murmuring and Complaints. Behold how quietly she takes her Death and without objecting, she suffereth her Skin to be pulled over her Ears. Your King doth call you his Sheep.

*Of the Garden.*

After this, he led them into his Garden, where was great Variety of Flowers: And he said, Do you see all these? So *Christiana* said, Yes. Then said he again, Behold the Flowers are divers in *Stature*, in *Quality*, and *Colour*, and *Smell* and *Virtue*; and some are better than some: Also where the Gardener had set them, there they stand, and quarrel not with one another.

*Of the Field.*

Again, he had them into his Field, which he had sown with Wheat and Corn; but when they beheld the Top of all were cut off, only the Straw remained, he said again; This Ground was dunged, and ploughed, and sowed, but what shall we do with the Crop? Then said *Christiana*, burn some, and make Muck of the rest. Then said the *Interpreter* again, Fruit, you see, is that Thing you look for, and for Want of that you condemn it to the Fire, and to be trodden under Feet of Men: Beware that in this you condemn not yourselves.

*Of the Robin  
and the  
Spider.*

Then as they were coming in from abroad, they espied a *Robin* with a great *Spider* in his Mouth: So the *Interpreter* said, look here: So they looked, and *Mercy* wondered;



wondered; but *Christiana* said, What a Disparagement it is to such a little pretty Bird as the *Robin-red-breast* is, he being also a Bird above many that loveth to maintain a Kind of Sociableness with Men; I had thought they had lived upon Crumbs of Bread, or upon other such harmless Matter: I like him worse than I did.

The *Interpreter* then replied, This *Robin* is an Emblem, very apt to set forth some Professors by; for to Sight they are, as this *Robin*, pretty of Note, Colour and Carriage: They seem also to have a very great Love for Professors that are sincere, and above all other to desire to sociate with them, and to be in their Company, as if they could live upon the good Man's Crumbs. They pretend also, that therefore it is that they frequent the House of the Godly, and the Appointments of the Lord: But when they are by themselves, as the *Robin*, they can catch and gobble up *Spiders*, they can change their Diet, drink and swallow down Sin like Water.

So when they were come again into the *Pray, and* House, because Supper as yet was not ready, *Christiana* again desired that the *Inter-* <sup>*you will get*</sup> *preter* would either shew or tell of some <sup>*at that which*</sup> <sup>*yet lies unre-*</sup> <sup>*vealed.*</sup> other Things that are profitable.

Then the *Interpreter* began and said: *The fatter the Sow is the more she desires the Mire; the fatter the Ox is the more gamely he goes to the Slaughter; and the more healthy the lusty Man is, the more prone he is unto Evil.*

*There*

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*There is a Desire in Women to go neat and fine, and it is a comely Thing to be adorned with that, that in God's Sight is of great Price.*

*It is easier watching a Night or two, than to sit up a whole Year together: So it is easier for one to begin to profess well than to hold out as he should to the End.*

*Every Ship master, when in a Storm, will willingly cast that over Board that is of the smallest Value in the Vessel; but who will throw the best out first? None but he that feareth not God.*

*One Leak will sink a Ship, and one Sin will destroy a Sinner.*

*He that forgets his Friend, is ungrateful unto him; but he that forgets his Saviour is unmerciful to himself.*

*He that lives in Sin, and looks for Happiness hereafter, is like him that soweth Cockle, and thinks to fill his Barns with Wheat or Barley.*

*If a Man would live well, let him fetch his last Day to him, and make it always his Company-keeper.*

*Whispering and Change of Thoughts prove that Sin is in the World.*

*If the World, which God sets light by, is counted a Thing of that Worth with Men, what is Heaven that God commendeth?*

*If the Life that is attended with so many Troubles, is so loth to be let go by us, what is the Life above?*

*Every Body will cry up the Goodness of Men: But who is there that is, as he should be, affected with the Goodness of God?*

*We*







Christiana and her Children at Supper in the Interpreter's House



*We seldom sit down to Meat, but we eat, and leave. So there is in Jesus Christ, more Merit and Righteousness, than the whole World has need of.*

When the *Interpreter* had done, he takes them out into his Garden again, and had them to a Tree, whose Inside was all rotten and gone, and yet it grew and had Leaves. Then said *Mercy*, What means this? This Tree, said he, whose Outside is fair, and whose Inside is rotten, it is, to which many may be compared that are in the Garden of God: Who with their Mouths speak high in behalf of God, but indeed will do nothing for him; whose Leaves are fair, but their Heart good for nothing but to be Tinder for the Devil's Tinder-Box.

*Of the Tree  
that is rotten  
at Heart.*

Now Supper was ready, the Table spread, and all Things set on Board; so they sat down and did eat, when one had given Thanks. And the *Interpreter* did usually entertain those that lodged with him with Music at Meals; so the Minstrels played. There was also one that did sing, and a very fine Voice he had. His Song was this:

*They are at  
Supper.*

*The Lord is only my Support,  
And he that doth me feed;  
How can I then want any Thing  
Whereof I stand in Need?*

When the Song and Music was ended, the *Interpreter* asked *Christiana*, What it was that at first did move her thus to betake

*Talk at Supper. A Repetition of Christiana's Experience.*

betake herself to a Pilgrim's Life? *Christiana* answered, *First*, the Loss of my Husband came into my Mind, at which I was heartily grieved: But all that was natural Affection. Then, after that came the Troubles and Pilgrimage of my Husband into my Mind, and also how like a Churl I had carried it to him as to that. So Guilt took hold of my Mind, and would have drawn me into the Pond; but that opportunely I had a Dream of the Well-being of my Husband, and a Letter sent by the King of that Country where my Husband dwells to come to him. The Dream and the Letter together so wrought upon my Mind, that they forced me to this Way.

*Inter.* But met you with no Opposition before you set out of Doors?

*Christ.* Yes, a Neighbour of mine, one Mrs. *Timorous*. (She was a-kin to him that would have persuaded my Husband to go back, for Fear of the Lions.) She also so befooled me, for, as she called it, my intended desperate Adventure; she also urged what she could to dishearten me from it, the Hardship and Troubles that my Husband met with in the Way; but all this I got over pretty well. But a Dream that I had of two ill-looking ones, that I thought did plot how to make me miscarry in my Journey, that hath troubled me: Yea, it still runs in my Mind, and makes me afraid of every one that I meet, lest they should meet me to do me a Mischief, and turn me out of my Way. Yea, I may tell my Lord, though I would

would not every Body know it, that between this and the Gate by which we got into the Way, we were both so sorely assaulted, that we were made to cry out *Murder*; and the two that made this Assault upon us, were like the two that I saw in my Dream.

Then said the *Interpreter*, Thy Beginning is good, thy latter End shall greatly increase. So he addressed himself to *Mercy*, *A Question put to Mercy.* and said under her, And what moved thee to come hither, Sweet-heart?

*Mercy.* Then *Mercy* blushed and trembled, and for a while continued silent.

*Inter.* Then said he, Be not afraid, only believe, and speak thy Mind.

*Mercy.* Then she began, and said, Truly, *Mercy's Answer.* Sir, my Want of Experience is that which makes me covet to be in Silence, and that also that fills me with Fears of coming short at last. I cannot tell of Visions and Dreams, as my Friend *Christiana* can: Nor know I what it is to mourn for my refusing of the Counsel of those that were good Relations.

*Inter.* What was it then, Dear Heart, that hath prevailed with thee to do as thou hast done?

*Mercy.* Why, when our Friend here was packing up to be gone from our Town; I and another went accidentally to see her. So we knocked at the Door, and went in. When we were within, and seeing what she was doing, we asked her what was her Meaning? She said, she was sent for to go to her Husband; and then she up and told us how she had seen him

**The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.**

him in a Dream, dwelling in a curious Place, among *Immortals*, wearing a Crown, playing upon a Harp, eating and drinking at his Prince's Table, and singing Praises to him for bringing him thither, &c. Now methought while she was telling these Things unto us, my Heart burned within me. And I said in my Heart, If this be true, I will leave my Father and my Mother, and the Land of my Nativity, and will, if I may, go along with *Christiana*.

So I asked her farther of the Truth of these Things, and if she would let me go with her; for I saw now, that there was no dwelling, but with the Danger of Ruin, any longer in our Town. But yet I came away with a heavy Heart, not for that I was unwilling to come away, but for that so many of my Relations were left behind.

And I come with all the Desire of my Heart, and will go, if I may, with *Christiana*, unto her Husband, and his King.

*Inter.* Thy setting out is good, for thou hast given Credit to the Truth; thou art a *Ruth*, who did for the Love she bare to *Naomi*, and to the Lord her God, leave Father and Mother, and the Land of her Nativity, to come out and go with a People that she knew not before, *Ruth* ii. 11, 12. *The Lord recompence thy Work, and full Reward be given thee of the Lord God of Israel, under whose Wings thou art come to trust.*

Now Supper was ended, and Preparation was made for Bed; the Women were  
laid



laid singly alone, \* and the Boys by themselves. Now when *Mercy* was in Bed, she could not sleep for Joy, for that now her Doubts of missing at last, were removed farther from her than ever they were before. So she lay blessing and praising God, who had such Favour for her.

\**They undress themselves for Bed. Mercy's good Night's Rest.*

In the Morning they rose with the Sun, and prepared themselves for their Departure; but the *Interpreter* would have them tarry a while, for, said he, you must orderly go from hence. Then said he to the Damsel that first opened unto them, Take them and have them into the Garden to the *Bath*, and there wash them and make them clean from the Soil which they have gathered by travelling. Then *Innocent* the Damsel took them, and led them into the Garden, and brought them to † the *Bath*, so she told them, that there they must wash and be clean, for so her Master would have the Women to do that called at his House as they were going on Pilgrimage. Then they went in and ‡ washed, yea, they and the Boys and all; and they came out of that *Bath*, not only sweet and clean, but also much enlivened and strengthened in their Joints. So when they came in, they looked fairer a deal than when they went out to the Washing.

†*The Bath of Sanctification.*

‡*They wash in it.*

When they were returned out of the Garden from the *Bath*, the *Interpreter* took them and looked upon them, and said unto them, *Fair as the Moon*. Then he called for the *Seal*, wherewith they *sed* to be sealed that are washed in his *Bath*.



So the *Seal* was brought, and he set his Mark upon them, that they might be known in the Places whither they were yet to go: Now the Seal was the Contents and Sum of the Passover which the Children of *Israel* did eat, *Exod.* xiii. 8, 9, 10. when they came out of the Land of *Egypt*; and the Mark was set between their Eyes. This *Seal* greatly added to their Beauty, for it was an Ornament to their Faces. It also added to their Gravity, and made their Countenance more like them of Angels.

\* They are clothed.

\* Then said the *Interpreter* again to the Damsel that waited upon the Women, Go into the Vestry, and fetch out Garments for these People: So she went and fetched out white Raiment, and laid it down before him; so he commanded them to put it on. *It was fine Linen, white and clean.* When the Women were thus adorned, they seemed to be a Terror one to the other; for that they could not see that Glory each one in herself, which they could see in each other. Now therefore they began to esteem each other better than themselves. † For you are fairer than I am, said one: and you are more comely than I am, said another. The Children also stood amazed to see into what Fashion they were brought.

† True Humility.

The *Interpreter* then called for a Man-Servant of his, one *Great-Heart*, and bid him take *Sword* and *Helmet*, and *Shield*, and take these my Daughters, said he, conduct them to the House called *Beautiful*, at which Place, they will rest next.

So





Great-Heart conducts the Pilgrims to the House called Be...



So he took his Weapons and went before them ; and the *Interpreter* said, God speed. Those also that belonged to the Family, sent them away with many a good Wish So they went on their Way, and sang ;

*This Place has been our second Stage,  
Here we have heard, and seen  
Those good Things, that from Age to Age  
To others bid have been.*

*The Dungbill-raker, Spider, Hen,  
The Chicken too, to me,  
Hath taught a Lesson, let me then  
Conformed to it be.*

*The Butcher, Garden, and the Field,  
The Robin, and his Bait,  
Also the rotten Tree doth yield  
Me Argument of Weight ;*

*To move me for to watch and pray,  
To strive to be sincere ;  
To take my Cross up Day by Day,  
And serve the Lord with Fear.*

Now I saw in my Dream, that those went on, and *Great-Heart* before them ; so they went and came to the Place where *Christian's* Burden fell off his Back, and

T 2                      tumbled

---

*Behold here how the Slothful are a Sign  
Hung up, 'cause holy Ways they did decline.  
See here too, how the Child doth play the Man,  
And weak grow strong, when Great-heart leads  
the Van.*

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II

tumbled into a Sepulchre. Here then they made a Pause; here also they blessed God. Now, said *Christiana*, it comes to my Mind what was said to us at the Gate, to wit, That we should have Pardon by *Word* and *Deed*, by *Word* that is, by the Promise; by *Deed*, to wit, in the Way it was obtained. What the Promise is, of that I know something: But what it is to have Pardon by *Deed*, or in the Way that it was obtained, Mr. *Great-Heart*, I suppose you know; which, if you please, let us hear you Discourse thereof.

\* A Comment upon what was said at the Gate, or a Discourse of our being justified by Christ.

*Great-heart*. \* Pardon by the Deed done, is Pardon obtained by some one for another that hath Need thereof: Not by the Person pardoned, but in the Way, *saith another*, in which I have obtained it. So then, to speak to the Question more at large, the Pardon that you and *Mercy*, and these Boys have attained by another; to wit, by him that let you in at that Gate: And he hath obtained it in this double Way. He has performed Righteousness to cover you, and spilt Blood to wash you in.

*Christ*. But if he parts with his Righteousness to us, what will he have for himself?

*Great-Heart*. He has more Righteousness than you have need of, or than he needeth himself.

*Christ*. Pray make that appear.

*Great-Heart*. With all my Heart; but first I must premise, that he of whom we are now about to speak, is one that has not his Fellow. He has two Natures in

## PART II. *The Pilgrim's Progress.*

51

One Person, plain to be *distinguished, impossible to be divided*. Unto each of these Natures a Righteousness belongeth, and each Righteousness is essential to that Nature. So that one may as easily cause the Natures to be extinct, as to separate its Justice or Righteousness from it. Of *these* Righteousnesses therefore we are not made Partakers, so as that they, or any of them, should be put upon us, that we might be made just, and live thereby. Besides these, there is a Righteousness which this Person has as these two Natures are joined in one. And this is not the Righteousness of the *God-head*, as distinguished from the *Manhood*; nor the Righteousness of the *Manhood*, as distinguished from the *God-head*, but a Righteousness which standeth in the Union of both Natures; and may properly be called the Righteousness that is essential to his being prepared of God to the Capacity of the mediatory Office, which he was entrusted with. If he parts with his first Righteousness, he parts with his *God-head*: If he parts with his second Righteousness, he parts with the Purity of his *Manhood*: If he parts with his third, he parts with that Perfection which capacitates him to the Office of Mediation. He has therefore another Righteousness, which standeth in *Performance*, or Obedience to a revealed Will: And that is that he puts upon Sinners, and that by which their Sins are covered. Wherefore he saith, *As by one Man's Disobedience, many were*

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART. II.

*made Sinners : So by the Obedience of one shall many be made righteous, Rom. v. 19.*

*Christ.* But are the other Righteousnesses of no Use to us ?

*Great-heart.* Yes ; for though they are essential to his Natures and Offices, and cannot be communicated unto another, yet it is by Virtue of them that the Righteousness that justifies, is for that Purpose efficacious. The *Righteousness* of his *Godhead* gives *Virtue* to his Obedience ; the *Righteousness* of his *Manhood* giveth *Capability* to his Obedience to justify ; and the *Righteousness* that standeth in the Union of these two Natures to his Office, giveth *Authority* to that Righteousness to do the Work for which it was ordained.

So then here is a Righteousness that Christ, as God, has no Need of : for he is God without it : Here is a Righteousness, that Christ, as Man, has no Need of to make him so, for he is a perfect Man without it. Again, here is a Righteousness, that Christ, as God-Man, has no Need of ; for he is perfectly so without it. Here then is a Righteousness, that Christ, as God, and as God-Man, has no Need of, with Reference to himself, and therefore he can spare it ; a justifying Righteousness, that he for himself wanteth not, and therefore giveth it away. Hence it is called *the Gift of Righteousness*. The Righteousness, since Christ Jesus the Lord has made himself under the Law, must be given away : for the Law doth not only bind that is under it, *to do justly*, but to use Charity. Rom. v. 17. Wherefore he  
must,



must, or ought by the Law, if he hath two Coats, to give one to him that hath none. Now our Lord indeed hath two Coats, one for himself, and one to spare; wherefore he freely bestows one upon those that have none. And thus, *Christiana* and *Mercy*, and the rest of you that are here, doth your Pardon come by Deed, or by the Work of another Man. Your Lord Christ is he that worked, and hath given away what he wrought for, to the next poor Beggar he meets.

But again, in order to pardon by *Deed*, there must something be paid to God as a Price, as well as something prepared to cover us withal. Sin has delivered us up to the just Course of Righteous Law: Now from this Course we must be justified by Way of Redemption, a Price being paid for the Harms we have done; and this is by the Blood of your Lord, who came and stood in your Place and Stead, and died your Death for your Transgressions. Thus has he ransomed you from your Transgressions, by Blood, and covered your polluted and deformed Souls with Righteousness. Rom. viii. 34. For the Sake of which, God passeth by you, and will not hurt you, when he comes to judge the World. Gal. iii. 13.

*Christ.* \* This is brave: Now I see that \* *Christiana* there was something to be learned by our *affected with* being pardoned by *Word* and *Deed*. Good *this Way of* *Mercy*, let us labour to keep this in Mind; *Redemption.* and my Children, do you remember it also. But, Sir, was not this it that made my good *Christian's* Burden fall from off

his Shoulder, and that made him give three Leaps for Joy?

• *How the Strings that bound Christian's Burden to him were cut,*

*Great-heart.* \* Yes, it was the Belief of this that 'cut those Strings that could not be cut off by other Means; and it was to give him a Proof of the Virtue of this, that he was suffered to carry his Burden to the Cross.

*Christ.* I thought so; for though my Heart was lightsome and joyous before, yet it is ten Times more lightsome and joyous now. And I am persuaded by what I have felt, though I have felt but little as yet, that if the most burdened Man in the World was here, and did see and believe as I now do, it would make his Heart the more merry and blithe.

† *How Affection to Christ is begot in the Soul.*

*Great-heart.* † There is not only Comfort, and the Ease of a Burden brought to us, by the Sight and Consideration of these, but an endeared Affection begot in us by it: But who can (if he doth but once think that Pardon comes not only by Promise, but thus) but be affected with the Way and Means of Redemption, and so with the Man that hath wrought it for him?

*Part I. page 40.*

‡ *Cause of Admiration.*

*Christ.* True; methinks it makes my Heart bleed to think that he should bleed for me. Oh! thou loving one! Oh! thou blessed one! Thou deservest to have me; thou hast bought me: Thou deservest to have me all; thou hast paid for me ten Thousand Times more than I am worth. No \* Marvel that this made the Water stand in my Husband's Eyes, and that it made him trudge so nimbly on: I am

am persuaded he wished me with him; but, vile Wretch that I was, I let him come all alone. O *Mercy*, that thy Father and Mother were here! yea, and Mrs. *Timorous* also! Nay, I wish now with all my Heart that here was Madam *Wanton* too. Surely, surely their Hearts would be affected; nor could the Fear of the one, nor the powerful Lusts of the other, prevail with them to go Home again, and refuse to become good Pilgrims.

*Great-Heart.* You speak now in the Warmth of your Affections: Will it, think you, be always thus with you? Besides, this is not communicated to every one, nor to every one that did see your Jesus bleed. \* There were that stood by, and that saw the Blood run from the Heart to the Ground, and yet were so far off this, that instead of lamenting, they laughed at him; and instead of becoming his Disciples, did harden their Hearts against him. So that all that you have, my Daughters, you have, by peculiar Impression, made by a divine contemplating upon what I have spoken to you. Remember that it was told you, that the *Hen*, by her *common call*, gives no Meat to her Chicken. This you have therefore by especial Grace.

Now I saw still in my Dream, that they went on until they were come to the Place that *Simple*, and *Sloth*, and *Presumption*, lay and Slept in, when Christian went by on Pilgrimage: And behold † they were hanged up in Irons a little Way off on the other Side.

*Mercy.*

\* To be affected with Christ and with what he has done, is a Thing special.

† Simple, Sloth, and Presumption hanged, and why.

*Mercy.* Then said *Mercy* to him that was their Guide and Conductor, What are these three Men? And for what are they hanged there?

• *Their  
Crimes.*

*Great-heart.* These three Men were Men of bad Qualities; \* they had no Mind to be Pilgrims themselves, and whomsoever they could they hindered; they were for *Sloth* and *Folly* themselves, and whomsoever they could persuade, they made so too; and withal taught them to presume that they should do well at last. They were asleep when *Christian* went by, and now you go by, they are hanged.

*Mercy.* But could they persuade any one to be of their Opinion?

† *Whom they  
prevailed upon  
to turn out of  
the Way.*

*Great-heart.* † Yes, they turned several out of the Way. There was *Slow-pace* that they persuaded to do as they. They also prevailed with one *Short-wind*, with one *No-heart*, with one *Linger-after-Lust*, and with one *Sleepy-head*, and with a young Woman, her Name was *Dull*, to turn out of the Way, and become as they. Besides, they brought up an ill Report of your Lord, persuading others that he was a hard Task-Master. They also brought up an evil Report of the good Land, saying, it was not half so good as some pretended it was. They also began to vilify his Servants, and to count the best of them meddlesome, troublesome, Busy-bodies, Farther, they would call the Bread of God *Husks*; the Comforts of his Children *Fancies*; the Travel and Labour of Pilgrims, *Things to no Purpose*.

*Christ.*



*Christ.* Nay, said *Christiana*, if they were such, they should never be bewailed by me: They have but what they deserve; and I think it well that they stand so near the Highway, that others may see and take Warning. But had it not been well if their Crimes had been engraven on some Pillar of Iron or Brass, and left here where they did their Mischiefs, for a Caution to other bad Men?

*Great-heart.* So it is, you may well perceive, if you will go a little to the Wall.

*Mercy.* No, no; let them hang, and their Names rot, and their Crimes live for ever against them. I think it is a high Favour that they are hanged before we came hither; who knows else what they might have done to such poor Women as we are? Then she turned it into a Song, saying,

*Now then you three hang there, and be a Sign,*

*To all that shall against the Truth combine,  
And let him that comes after fear this End,  
If unto Pilgrims he is not a Friend.*

*And thou, my Soul, of all such Men beware,  
That unto Holiness Opposers are.*

Thus they went on, till they came at the Foot of the Hill Difficulty, where again their good Friend Mr. Great-heart took an Occasion to tell them what happened there when *Christian* himself went

Part L. Page

45.

Ezek. xxxiv,

18.

• It is difficult  
getting of good  
Doctrine in

by erroneous  
Times.

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

by. So he had them first to the Spring : Lo, saith he, this is the Spring that *Christian* drank of before he went up this Hill ! Then it was clear and good, but now it is dirty with the Feet of some that are not desirous that Pilgrims here should quench their Thirst. Thereat *Mercy* said, *And why so envious trow ?* But, said the Guide, it will do, if taken up and put into a Vessel that is sweet and good ; for then the Dirt will sink to the Bottom, and the Water come out by itself more clear. Thus therefore *Christiana* and her Companions were compelled to do. They took it up, and put it into an earthen Pot, and so let it stand till the Dirt was gone to the Bottom, and then they drank thereof.

Next he showed them the two *By-ways* that were at the Foot of the Hill, where *Formality* and *Hypocrisy* lost themselves. And, said he, these are dangerous Paths. Two were here cast away when *Christian* came by. And although you see these Ways are since stopped up with \* *Chains*, *Peggs*, and a *Ditch*, yet there are them that will chuse to adventure here, rather than take the Pains to go up this Hill.

\* *By-Paths*, though barred up, will not keep all from going in them.

*Christ*. The Way of Transgressors is hard, *Prov.* xiii. 15. It is a Wonder that they can get into those Ways, without Danger of breaking their Necks.

*Great-heart*. They will venture; yea, if at any Time any of the King's Servants do happen to see them, and do call upon them, and tell them that they are in the wrong Way, and do bid them beware of the Danger; then they will railingly return them



The Pyramids as seen from the Hill of Ballinacorney.



The Pilgrims going up the Hill Difficulty.



them Answer, and say, *As for the Word that thou hast spoken unto us in the Name of the King, we will not hearken unto thee; but we will certainly do whatsoever Thing goeth out of our Mouths, &c. Jer.\* xlv. 16, 17.* Nay, if you look a little farther, you shall see that these Ways are made cautionary enough, not only by these *Posts*, and *Ditch*, and *Chain*, but also by being hedged up, yet they will choose to go there.

*Chr. \* They are idle; they love not to take Pains; up-hill Way is unpleasant to them. So it is fulfilled unto them as it is written: The Way of the slothful Man is a Hedge of Thorns: Yea, they will rather choose to walk upon a Snare, than to go up this Hill, and the rest of this Way to the City.*

*\* The Reason why some do choose to go in By-Ways. Prov. xv. 19.*

Then they set forward, and began to go up the Hill, and up the Hill they went; but before they got up to the Top, *Christiana* began to pant, † and said, I dare + *The Hill* say, this is a Breathing-hill; no Marvel if *puts the Pil-* they that love their Ease more than their *grims to it.* Souls, chuse to themselves a smooother Way. Then said *Mercy*, I must sit down; also the least of the Children began to cry. Come, come, said *Great-heart*, sit not down here, for a little above is the Prince's *Arbour*. Then he took the little Boy by the Hand, and led him up thereto.

When they were come to the *Arbour*, † they were very willing to sit down, for † *They sit in the Arbour.* they were all in a pelting Heat. Then *Part I. p. 48,* said *Mercy*, *How sweet is Rest to them that* *4).* *labour! And how good is the Prince of* *Matt. xi. 28.* Pilgrims to provide such Resting-places for them! Of this *Arbour* I have heard much;

much; but I never saw it before. But here let us beware of sleeping; for, as I have heard, for that it cost poor *Christian* dear.

\* *The little Boys' Answer to the Guide, and also to*  
*rcy.*

Then said Mr. *Great-heart* to the little ones, Come, my pretty *Boys*, how do you do? What think you now of going on Pilgrimage? \*Sir, said the least, I was almost beat out of Heart; but I thank you for lending me a Hand at my Need. And I remember now what my Mother hath told me, namely, that the Way to Heaven is as a Ladder, and the Way to Hell is as down a Hill. But I had rather go up the Ladder to Life, than down the Hill to Death.

† *Which is hardest, up Hill or down Hill?*

Then said *Mercy*, † but the Proverb is, *To go down the Hill is easy*; But *James* said, (for that was his Name) the Day is coming, when, in my Opinion, *going down the Hill will be the hardest of all*. It is a good Boy, said his Master, thou hast given her a right Answer. Then *Mercy* smiled, but the little boy did blush.

‡ *They refresh themselves.*

*Christ*. ‡ Come, said *Christiana*, will you eat a Bit to sweeten your Mouths, while you sit here to rest your Legs?

For I have here a Piece of Pomegranate, which Mr. *Interpreter* put into my Hand just when I came out of his Doors; he gave me also a Piece of an Honey-Comb, and a little Bottle of Spirits. I thought he gave you something, said *Mercy*, because he called you aside. Yes, so he did, said the other: But, said *Christiana*, it shall be still as I said it should, when at first we came from Home: Thou shalt be

be a Sharer in all the Good that I have, because thou so willingly didst become my Companion. Then she gave to them, and they did eat, both *Mercy* and the Boys. And said *Christiana* to Mr. *Great-heart*, Sir, Will you do as we? But he answered, You are going on Pilgrimage, and presently I shall return: Much Good may what you have do to you. At Home I eat the same every Day. Now when they had eaten and drank, and had chatted a little longer, their Guide said to them, The Day wears away, if you think good let us prepare to be going. So they got up to go, and the little Boys went before: But *Christiana* \* forgot to take her Bottle of Spi- \* *Christiana* *forgets her* *Bottle of Spi-* *rits.* *rits.* with her; so she sent her little Boy back to fetch it. Then said *Mercy*, I think this is a *losing* Place. Here *Christian* lost his *Roll*; and here *Christiana* left her Bottle behind her; Sir, What is the Cause of this? So their Guide made Answer, and said, the Cause is *Sleep* or *Forgetfulness*; some *sleep* when they should keep *awake*; and some *forget* when they should *remember*; that this is the very Cause, why often at the Resting Places, some Pilgrims, in some Things, come off Losers. Pilgrims should watch, and remember what they have already received under their greatest Enjoyments; but for want of doing so, oftentimes their Rejoicing ends in Tears, † + *Mark this.* and their Sun-shine in a Cloud; witness *Part I. p. 41.* the Story of *Christian* at this Place.

When they were come to the Place where *Mistrust* and *Timorous* met *Christian* to persuade him to go back for Fear of

the Lions, they perceived, as it were, a Stage, and before it, towards the Road, a broad Plate, with a Copy of Verses written thereon, and underneath, the Reason of raising up of that Stage, in that Place, rendered. The Verses were these:

*Let him that sees this Stage, take Heed  
Unto his Heart and Tongue :  
Lest if he do not, here he speed,  
As some have long ago.*

The Words underneath the Verses were, *This Stage was built to punish such upon, who, through Timorousness or Mistrust, shall be afraid to go farther on Pilgrimage : Also on this Stage both Mistrust and Timorous were burnt through the Tongue with a hot Iren, for endeavouring to hinder Christian on his Journey.*

Then said Mercy, This is much like to the Saying of the Beloved, *Psal. cxx. 3, 4. What shall be given unto thee ? Or what shall be done unto thee, thou false Tongue ? Sharp Arrows of the Mighty, with Coals of Juniper.*

*Part I. p. 50.  
• An Emblem  
of those that  
go on bravely  
when there is  
no Danger,  
but shrink  
when Troubles  
come.*

\* So they went on, till they came with-  
in Sight of the Lions. Now Mr. Great-  
heart was a strong Man, so he was not  
afraid of a Lion : But yet, when they  
were come up to the Place where the  
Lions were, the Boys that went before,  
were glad to cringe behind, for they were  
afraid of the Lions, so they stepped back,  
and went behind. At this their Guide  
smiled,



smiled and said; How now, my Boys, do you love to go before when no Danger doth approach, and love to come behind so soon as the Lions appear?

Now as they went on, Mr. *Great-heart* drew his Sword, with Intent to make a Way for the Pilgrims in Spite of the Lions. \* Then there appeared one that, it seems, had taken upon him to back the Lions: And he said to the Pilgrim's Guide, What is the Cause of your coming hither? Now the Name of that Man was *Grim*, or *Bloody-Man*, because of his slaying of Pilgrims, and he was of the Race of the *Giants*.

\* Of *Grim* the Giant, and of his backing the Lions.

*Great-heart*. Then said the Pilgrims' Guide, These Women and Children are going on Pilgrimage, and this is the Way they must go, and go it they shall, in Spite of thee and thy Lions.

*Grim*. This is not their Way, neither shall they go therein. I am come forth to withstand them, and to that End will back the Lions.

Now, to say the Truth, by Reason of the Fierceness of the Lions, and of the *Grim* Carriage of him that did back them, this Way had of late lain much unoccupied, and was almost all grown over with Grass.

*Christ*. Then said *Christiana*, though the Highways have been unoccupied heretofore, and though the Travellers have been made in Times past to walk through By-paths, it must not be so now I am risen, Now I am risen a Mother in Israel, Judges 5. 6, 7.

U

*Grim.*

*Grim.* Then he swore *by the Lions*, but it should, and therefore bid them turn aside, for they should not have Passage there.

*Great-Heart.* But their Guide made first his Approach unto *Grim*, \* and laid so heavily at him with his Sword, that he forced him to retreat.

\* A Fight betwixt *Grim* and *Great-Heart*.

*Grim.* Then said he, (that attempted to back the *Lions*) Will you slay me upon my own Ground?

*Great-Heart.* It is the King's Highway that we are in, and in this Way it is that thou hast placed the *Lions*; but these Women, and these Children, though weak, shall hold on their Way in spite of thy *Lions*. And with that he gave him again a downright Blow, and brought him upon his Knees, with this Blow he also broke his Helmet, and with the next cut off an Arm. Then did the Giant roar so hideously, that his Voice frightened the Women, and yet they were glad to see him lie sprawling upon the Ground†. Now the *Lions* were chained, and so of themselves could do nothing. Wherefore, when old *Grim*, that intended to back them, was dead, Mr. *Great-Heart* said to the Pilgrims, Come now, and follow me, and no † Hurt shall happen to you from the *Lions*. They therefore went on, but the Women trembled as they passed by them; the Boys also looked as if they would die, but they all got by without further Hurt.

† The Victory.

‡ They pass by the *Lions*.

Now, when they were within Sight of the *Porter's Lodge*, they soon came up unto it; but they made the more Haste after this to go thither, because it is dangerous

ous Travelling there in the Night. So when they were come to the Gate\*, the Guide knocked, and the Porter cried, *who is there?* But as soon as the Guide had said, *It is I*, he knew his Voice, and came down; (for the Guide had oft before that come thither as a *Conductor of Pilgrims*) when he was come down, he opened the Gate, and seeing the Guide standing just before it, for he saw not the Women, for they were behind him) he said unto him, How now, Mr. *Great-Heart*, what is your Business here so late at Night? I have brought, said he, some Pilgrims hither, where, by my Lord's Commandment, they must lodge: I had been here some Time ago, had I not been opposed by the Giant that used to back the Lions. But I, after a long and tedious Combat with him, have cut him off, and have brought the Pilgrims hither in Safety.

*Port.* Will you not go in, and stay till Morning?

*Great-Heart.* † No, I will return to my Lord to Night.

*Christ.* ‡ Oh, Sir, I know not how to be willing you should leave us in our Pilgrimage, you have been so faithful and so loving to us, you have fought so stoutly for us, you have been so hearty in counselling of us, that I shall never forget your Favour towards us.

*Mercy.* Then said *Mercy*, O that we might have thy Company to our Journey's End! How can such poor Women as we, hold out in a Way so full of Troubles as

\* *They come to the Porter's Lodge.*

† *Great-Heart attempts to go back.*

‡ *The Pilgrims implore his Company still.*

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

this Way is, without a Friend and Defender ?

*James.* Then said *James*, the youngest of the Boys, Pray, Sir, be persuaded to go with us, and help us, because we are so weak, and the Way so dangerous as it is.

*Great-heart.* I am at my Lord's Commandment . If he shall allot me to be your Guide quite through, I will willingly wait upon you ; but here you failed at first ; for when he bid me come thus far with you, then you should have begged me of him to have gone quite through with you, and he would have granted your Request. However at present I must withdraw ; and so, good *Christiana*, *Mercy*, and my brave Children, Adieu.

Then the Porter, *Mr. Watchful*, asked *Christiana* of her Country, and of her Kindred, and she said, *I come from the City of Destruction ; I am a Widow Woman, and my Husband is dead, his Name was Christian the Pilgrim.* How, said the Porter, was he your Husband ? Yes, said she, and these are his Children ; and this, pointing to *Mercy*, is one of my Town's Women. Then the Porter rang his Bell, as at such Times he is wont, and there came to the Door one of the Damsels, whose Name was *Humble-mind*. And to her the Porter said, Go tell it within, That *Christiana*, the Wife of *Christian*, and her Children are come hither on Pilgrimage. She went in therefore, and told it. \* But, oh, what Noise for Gladness was there, when the Damsel did

\* Joy at the  
Noise of the  
Pilgrims  
coming.



did but drop that Word out of her Mouth!

So they came with Haste to the Porter, for *Christiana* stood still at the Door. Then some of the most grave said unto her, *Come in, Christiana, come in, thou Wife of that good Man; come in, thou blessed Woman, come in, with all that are with thee.* So she went in, and they followed her that were her Children and her Companions. Now when they were gone in, they were had into a very large Room, where they were bidden to sit down: So they sat down, and the Chief of the House was called to see and welcome the Guests. \* Then they came in, and understanding who they were, did salute each other with a Kiss, and said, Welcome, ye Vessels of the Grace of God; Welcome to us your faithful Friends.

*\*Christiana's  
Love is kindled at the  
Sight of one  
another.*

Now, because it was somewhat late, and because the Pilgrims were weary with their Journey, and also made faint with the Sight of the Fight, and of the terrible Lions, therefore they desired, as soon as might be, to prepare to go to Rest, *Exod. xii. 31.* Nay, said those of the Family, refresh yourselves with a Morsel of Meat. For they had prepared for them a Lamb, with the accustomed Sauce belonging thereto, *John i. 29.* For the Porter had heard before of their Coming, and had told it to them within. So when they had supped and ended their Prayer with a Psalm, they desired they might go to Rest. But let us, said *Christiana*, if we may be so bold as to choose, be in that Chamber that was

*Part I. p. 61.* my Husbands, when he was here ; so they had them up thither, and they lay all in a Room. While they were at Rest, *Christiana* and *Mercy* entered into Discourse about Things that were convenient.

\* *Christ's Bosom is for all Pilgrims.*

*Christ.* \* Little did I think once, when my Husband went on Pilgrimage, that I should ever have followed him.

*Mercy.* And you as little thought of lying in his Bed, and in his Chamber to rest, as you do now.

*Christ.* And much less did I ever think of seeing his Face with Comfort, and of worshipping the Lord the King with him ; and yet now I believe I shall.

† *Musick.*

*Mercy.* Hark ! do you not hear a † Noise ?

*Christ.* Yes, it is, as I believe, a Noise of Musick, for Joy that we are here.

*Mercy.* Wonderful Musick in the House, Musick in the Heart, and Musick also in Heaven, for Joy that we are here.

Thus they talked a While, and then betook themselves to Sleep. So in the Morning, when they were awaked, *Christiana* said to *Mercy*,

† *Mercy did laugh in her Sleep.*

*Christ.* † What was the Matter that you did laugh in your Sleep to-night ? I suppose you was in a Dream.

*Mercy.* So I was, and a sweet Dream it was ; but are you sure I laughed ?

*Christ.* Yes ; you laughed heartily ; but pr'ythee *Mercy*, tell me thy Dream.

§ *Mercy's Dream.*

*Mercy.* § I was a dreaming that I sat all alone in a solitary Place, and was bemoaning of the Hardness of my Heart,

Now I had not sat there long, but methought many were gathered about me to see

see me, and to hear what it was that I said. So they hearkened, and I went on bemoaning the Hardness of my Heart. At this some of them laughed at me, some called me Fool, and some began to thrust me about. With that, methought I looked up, and saw one coming with Wings towards me. \* So he came directly to me, \* *What her Dream was.* and said *Mercy*, What aileth thee? Now when he heard me make my Complaint, he said, *Peace be to thee*: He also wiped mine Eyes with his Handkerchief, and clad me in *Silver and Gold*, Ezek. xvi. 8, 9, 10, 11. He put a Chain about my Neck, and Ear-rings in mine Ears, and a beautiful Crown upon my Head. Then he took me by the Hand, and said, *Mercy*, Come after me. So he went up, and I followed till he came at a golden Gate. Then he knocked, and when they within had opened, the Men went in, and I followed him up to a Throne, upon which one sat; and he said to me, *Welcome, Daughter*, The Place looked bright and twinkling, like the Stars, or rather like the Sun, and I thought that I saw your Husband there; so I awoke from my Dream. But did I laugh?

*Christ*. Laugh! ay, and Well you might, to see yourself so well. For you must give me Leave to tell you, that it was a good Dream; and that as you have begun to find the first Part true, so you will find the second at last. *God speaks once, yea twice, yet Man perceiveth it not, in a Dream, in a Vision of the Night, when deep Sleep falleth upon Men, in Slumbering upon*

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*the Bed*, Job xxxiii. 14, 15. We need not when a Bed, to lie awake to talk with God, he can visit us while we sleep, and cause us then to hear his Voice. Our Heart oft-times wakes when we sleep, and God can speak to that, either by Words, by Proverbs, by Signs, and Similitudes, as well as if one was awake.

• Mercy  
glad of her  
Dream.

*Mercy*. \*Well, I am glad of my Dream, for I hope, ere long, to see it fulfilled, to the making me laugh again.

*Christ*. I think it is now high Time to rise, and to know what we must do.

*Mercy*. Pray, if they invite us to stay a while, let us willingly accept of the Proffer. I am the willinger to stay a while here, to grow better acquainted with these Maids; methinks *Prudence*, *Piety*, and *Charity*, have very comely and sober Countenances.

*Christ*. We shall see what they will do. So when they were up and ready, they came down, and they asked one another of their Rest, and if it was comfortable or not.

*Mercy*. Very good, said *Mercy*, it was one of the best Night's Lodgings that ever I had in my Life.

Then said *Prudence* and *Piety*, if you will be persuaded to stay here awhile, you shall have what the House will afford.

*Char*. Ay, and that with a very good Will, said *Charity*. † So they consented and staid there about a Month or above, and became very profitable one to another. And because *Prudence* would see how *Christiana* had brought up her Children, ‡ she asked Leave

† They stay  
some Time.

‡ Prudence  
desires to  
catechise  
Christiana's  
Children.



## PART II. The Pilgrim's Progress.

71

Leave of her to catechise them: So she gave her free Consent: Then she began with the youngest, whose Name was *James*.

*Prudence*. And she said, Come, *James*,  
\* canst thou tell me who made thee? \* *James ca-*

*James*. God the Father, God the Son, *thechised.*  
and God the Holy Ghost.

*Prud.* Good Boy. And canst thou tell who saved thee?

*James*. God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost.

*Prud.* Good Boy still. But how doth God the Father save thee?

*James*. By his Grace.

*Prud.* How doth God the Son save thee?

*James*. By his *Illumination*, by his *Renovation*, and by his *Preservation*.

Then said *Prudence* to *Christiana*, You are to be commended for thus bringing up your Children. I suppose I need not ask the rest these Questions, since the youngest of them can answer them so well. I will therefore now apply myself to the next youngest.

*Prud.* Then she said, Come *Joseph*, † (for † *Joseph ca-*  
his Name was *Joseph*) will you let me *ca-* *techised.*  
*techise* you?

*Joseph*. With all my Heart.

*Prud.* What is Man?

*Joseph*. A reasonable Creature, made so by God, as my Brother said.

*Prud.* What is supposed by this Word *Saved*?

*Joseph*. That Man, by Sin, has brought himself into a State of Captivity and Misery.

*Prud.*

**The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.**

*Prud.* What is supposed by his being saved by the Trinity?

*Joseph.* That Sin is so great and mighty a Tyrant, that none can pull us out of it's Clutches, but God; and that God is so good and loving to Man, as to pull him indeed out of this miserable State.

*Prud.* What is God's Design in saving poor Men?

*Joseph.* The Glorifying of his Name, of his Grace, and Justice, &c. and the everlasting Happiness of his Creature.

*Prud.* Who are they that must be saved?

*Joseph.* Those that accept of his Salvation.

*Prud.* Good Boy, *Joseph*, thy Mother hath taught thee well, and thou hast hearkened to what she has said unto thee.

Then said *Prudence* to *Samuel*, who was the eldest Son but one.

\* Samuel catechised.

*Prud.* \* Come, *Samuel*, are you willing that I should catechise you?

*Samuel.* Yes, forsooth, if you please.

*Prud.* What is Heaven?

*Sam.* A Place and State most Blessed, because God dwelleth there.

*Prud.* What is Hell?

*Sam.* A Place and State most Woful, because it is the Dwelling-place of Sin, the Devil and Death.

*Prud.* Why wouldst thou go to Heaven?

*Sam.* That I may see God, and serve him without Weariness; that I may see Christ, and love him everlastingly; that I may have that Fulness of the Holy Spirit

rit in me, that I can by no Means here enjoy.

*Prud.* A very good Boy also, and one that has learned well.

Then she addressed herself to the eldest, whose Name was *Matthew*; and she said to him, \* Come, *Matthew*, shall I also cate-  
chise you? \* *Matthew catechised.*

*Matt.* With a very good Will.

*Prud.* I ask then, if there was ever any Thing that had a Being antecedent to or before God?

*Matt.* No, for God is Eternal; nor is there any Thing, excepting Himself, that had a Being until the Beginning of the first Day. *For in six Days the Lord made Heaven and Earth, the Sea, and all that in them is.*

*Prud.* What do you think of the Bible?

*Matt.* It is the Holy Word of God.

*Prud.* Is there nothing written therein but what you understand?

*Matt.* Yes, a great deal.

*Prud.* What do you do when you meet with Places therein that you do not understand.

*Matt.* I think God is wiser than I. I pray also that he will please to let me know all therein that he knows will be for my good.

*Prud.* How believe you as touching the Resurrection of the Dead.

*Matt.* I believe they shall rise, the same that was buried; the same in *Nature*, though not in Corruption. And I believe this upon a double Account. *First, Because*  
God

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

God hath promised it. *Secondly*, because he is able to perform it.

Then said *Prudence* to the Boys, You must still hearken to your Mother, for she can learn you more. You must also diligently give ear to what good Talk you shall hear from others; for your Sakes do  
 \* *Prudence's Conclusion upon the catechising of the Boys.* they speak good Things. \* Observe also, and that with Carefulness, what the Heavens and the Earth do teach you; but especially be much in the Meditation of that Book that was the Cause of your Father's becoming a Pilgrim. I, for my Part, my Children, will teach you what I can while you are here, and shall be glad if you will ask me Questions that tend to Godly Edifying.

Now by that these Pilgrims had been at this Place a Week, *Mercy* had a Visitor that † pretended some good Will unto her, and his Name was Mr. *Brisk*, a Man of some Breeding, and that pretended to Religion, but a Man that stuck very close to the World. So he came once or twice, or more, to *Mercy*, and offered Love unto her. Now *Mercy* was of a fair Countenance, and therefore the more alluring.

† *Mercy's temper.*

‡ Her Mind also was, To be always busying of herself in doing, for when she had nothing to do for herself, she would be making of Hose and Garments for others, and would bestow them upon them that had Need. And Mr. *Brisk* not knowing where, or how she disposed of what she made, seemed to be greatly taken, for that he found her never idle. I will warrant her



her a good Housewife, quoth he to himself.

\* *Mercy*. then revealed the Business to the \* *Mercy en-*  
Maidens that were of the House, and *quires of the*  
enquired of them concerning him, for *Maids con-*  
they did know him better than she. So *cerning Mr.*  
they told her, That he was a very busy *Brisk.*  
young Man, and one that pretended to Religion; but was, as they feared, a Stranger to the Power of that which is good.

Nay then, said *Mercy*, I will look no more on him; for I purpose never to have a Clog to my Soul.

*Prudence* then replied, That there needed no great Matter of Discouragement to be given to him, for continuing so as she had begun to do for the Poor, would quickly cool his Courage.

So the next Time he comes, he finds her at her old Work, a making of Things for the Poor. Then said he, What always at it? † Yes, said she, either for my- + *Talk be-*  
self or for others: And what canst thou *twixt Mercy*  
earn a Day, quoth he? I do these Things *and Mr. Brisk.*  
said she, *That I may be rich in good Works,*  
*laying a good Foundation against the Time to*  
*come, that I may lay hold of Eternal Life,*  
1 Tim. vi. 17, 18, 19. Why, Prithee,  
what dost thou with them? said he.  
Cloath the Naked, said she. With that  
his Countenance fell. So he forbore to  
come to her again. ‡ And when he was † *He forsakes*  
asked the Reason why, he said, *her, and why.*  
*cy was a pretty Lass, but troubled with ill*  
*Conditions.*

When

\* Mercy in the Practice of Mercy rejected, while Mercy in the Name of Mercy is liked. \* When he had left her, *Prudence* said, Did I not tell thee, that Mr. *Briſk* would soon forſake thee? yea, he will raiſe up an ill Report of thee: For notwithstanding his Pretence to Religion, and his ſeeming Love to *Mercy*, yet *Mercy* and he are of Tempers ſo different, that I believe they will never come together.

*Mercy*. I might have had Huſbands before now, though I ſpoke not of it to any; but they were ſuch as did not like my Conditions, though never did any of them find Fault with my Perſon. So they and I could not agree.

*Prud.* *Mercy* in our Days is little ſet by, any further than as to it's Name: The Practice, which is ſet forth by the Conditions, there are but few that can abide.

† *Mercy's*  
*Resolutions.*

*Mercy*. † Well, ſaid *Mercy*, if nobody will have me, I will die a Maid, or my Conditions ſhall be to me as a Huſband. For I cannot change my Nature; and to have One that lies croſs to me in this, that I purpoſe never to admit of as long as I live. ‡ I had a Siſter named *Bountiful*, married to One of theſe Churls; but he and ſhe could never agree; but becauſe my Siſter was reſolved to do as ſhe had begun, that is, to ſhew Kindneſs to the Poor, therefore her huſband firſt cried her down at the Croſs, and then turned her out of his Doors.

† How *Mercy's*  
*Siſter was*  
*ſerved by her*  
*Huſband.*

*Prud.* And yet he was a Profeſſor, I warrant you?

*Mercy*. Yes, ſuch a one as he was, and of ſuch as the World is now full; but I am for none of them all.

\* Now *Matthew*, the eldest Son of *Christiana*, fell sick, and his Sickness was sore *falls sick.* upon him, for he was much pained in his Bowels, so that he was with it, at Times, pulled, as it were, both Ends together. There dwelt also not far from thence, one Mr. *Skill*, an ancient and well-approved Physician. So *Christiana* desired it, and they sent for him, and he came: When he was entered the Room, and had a little observed the Boy, he concluded that he was sick of † the Gripes. Then he said to his Mother, What Diet has *Matthew* of late *+ Gripes of Conscience.* fed upon? Diet, said *Christiana*, nothing *The Physician's Judgment.* but what is wholesome. The Physician answered, This Boy has been tampering with something that lies in his Maw undigested, and that will not away without Means. And I tell you he must be purged, or else he will die.

*Sam.* ‡ Then said *Samuel*, Mother, what was that which my Brother did gather *‡ Samuel puts his Mother in Mind of the Fruit his Brother did eat.* and eat, so soon as we were come from the Gate that is at the Head of this Way? You know that there was an Orchard on the Left-hand, on the other Side of the Wall, and some of the Trees hung over the Wall, and my Brother did pluck and did eat.

*Christ.* True, my Child, said *Christiana*, he did take thereof, and did eat; naughty Boy as he was, I chid him, and yet he would eat thereof.

*Skill.* I know he had eaten something that was not wholesome Food, and that Food, to wit, that Fruit, is even the most hurtful of all. It is the Fruit of *Beelzebub's*

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*Beelzebub's Orchard.* I do marvel that none did warn you of it: many have died thereof.

*Christ.* Then *Christiana* began to cry, and she said, O naughty Boy, and O careless Mother, what shall I do for my Son?

*Skill.* Come, do not be too much dejected; the Boy may do well again, but he must Purge and Vomit.

*Christ.* Pray, Sir, try the utmost of your Skill with him, whatever it costs.

*Skill.* Nay, I hope, I shall be reasonable, *Heb. x. 1, 2, 3, 4.* So he made him a Purge, but it was too weak; it was said, it was made of the Blood of a Goat, the Ashes of a Heifer, and with some of the Juice of Hyssop, &c. When Mr. *Skill* had seen that the Purge was too weak, he made him one to the Purpose: It

\* *Potion prepared.*  
The Latin  
I borrow.

was \* made *Ex Carne, Ex Sanguine Christi, John vi. 54, 55, 56, 57. Mark ix. 49. Heb. ix. 14.* (you know Physicians give strange Medicines to their Patients) and it was made into Pills, with a Promise or two, and a Proportionable Quantity of Salt. Now he was to take them three at a Time fasting, in half a Quarter of a Pint of the Tears of Repentance. When this Potion was prepared, and brought to the Boy, † he was loth to take it, though torn with the Gripes, as if he should be pulled in Pieces. Come, come, said the Physician, you must take it. It goes against my Stomach said the Boy. *I must have you take it,* said his Mother, *Zeck. xii. 10.* I shall vomit it up again, said the Boy. Pray Sir,

† *The Boy loth to take the Physic.*



Sir, said *Christiana* to Mr. *Skill*, how does it taste? It has no ill Taste, said the Doctor; and with that she touched one of the Pills with the Tip of her Tongue.

\* Oh, *Matthew*, said she, this Potion is sweeter than Honey. If thou lovest thy Mother, if thou lovest thy Brothers, if thou lovest *Mercy*, if thou lovest thy Life, take it. So with much ado, after a short Prayer for the Blessing of God upon it, he took it, and it wrought kindly with him. It caused him to purge, to sleep, and rest quietly; it put him into a fine Heat and breathing Sweat, and rid him of his Gripes.

So in a little Time he got up, and walked about with a Staff, and would go from Room to Room, and talk with *Prudence*, *Piety*, and *Charity*, of his Distemper, and how he was healed.

So when the Boy was healed, † *Christiana* asked Mr. *Skill*, saying, Sir, What will content you for your Pains and Care to me, and of my Child? And he said, you must pay the *Master of the College of Physicians*, Heb. viii. 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, according to Rules in that Case made and provided.

*Christ*. But, Sir, said she, what is this Pill good for else?

*Skill*. ‡ It is an universal Pill; it is good against all Diseases that *Pilgrims* are incident to; and when it is well prepared, will keep good, Time out of Mind.

*Christ*. Pray, Sir, make me up twelve Boxes of them: For if I can get these, I will never take other Physic.

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*Skill.* These *Pills* are good to prevent Diseases, as well as to cure when one is Sick. Yea, I dare say it, and stand to it, That if a Man will but use this *Phyfic* as he should, *it will make him live for ever.* John vi. 50. But good *Christiana*, thou must give these *Pills* no other Way, but as I have prescribed: \* For if you do, they will do no Good. So he gave unto *Christiana* *Phyfic* for herself, and her Boys, and for *Mercy*, and bid *Matthew* take heed how he eat any more *Green-Plumbs*, and kissed them, and went his Way.

\* In a Glass  
of the Tears of  
Repentance.

It was told you before, that *Prudence* bid the Boys, that if at any Time they would, they should ask her some Questions that might be profitable, and she would say something to them.

*Matt.* Then *Matthew*, who had been sick, asked her, † Why for the most Part *Phyfic* should be bitter to our Palates?

† Of *Phyfic*.

*Prud.* To shew how unwelcome the Word of God and the Effects thereof are to a carnal Heart.

‡ Of the Effect  
of *Phyfic*.

*Matt.* ‡ Why does *Phyfic*, if it does good, purge, and cause to vomit?

*Prud.* To shew that the Word, when it works effectually, cleanseth the Heart and Mind. For look, what the one doth to the Body, the other doth to the Soul.

§ Of Fire, and  
of the Sun.

*Matt.* § What should we learn by seeing the Flame of our Fire go upwards? And by seeing the Beams and sweet Influences of the Sun strike downwards?

*Prud.* By the going up of the Fire, we are taught to ascend to Heaven, by fervent and hot desires. And by the Sun's sending

sending his Heat, Beams, and sweet Influences downwards, we are taught, That the Saviour of the World, though high, reacheth down with his Grace and Love to us below.

*Matt.* \* Where have the Clouds their Water ? *\* Of the Clouds.*

*Prud.* Out of the Sea.

*Matt.* What may you learn from that ?

*Prud.* That Ministers should fetch their Doctrine from God.

*Matt.* Why do they empty themselves upon the Earth ?

*Prud.* To shew that Ministers should give out what they know of God to the World.

*Matt.* † Why is the Rain-Bow caused by the Sun ? *† Of the Rain-bow.*

*Prud.* To shew that the Covenant of God's Grace is confirmed to us in Christ.

*Matt.* Why do the Springs come from the Sea to us through the Earth ?

*Prud.* To shew that the Grace of God comes to us through the Body of Christ.

*Matt.* ‡ Why do some of the Springs rise out of the Top of high Hills ? *‡ Of the Springs.*

*Prud.* To shew that the Spirit of Grace shall spring up in some that are Great and Mighty, as well as in many that are Poor and Low.

*Matt.* § Why doth the Fire fasten upon the Candle-wick ? *§ Of the Candle-wick.*

*Prud.* To shew that unless Grace doth kindle upon the Heart, there will be no true Light of Life in us.

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*Matt.* Why is the Wick and Tallow and all spent, to maintain the Light of the Candle?

*Prud.* To shew that Body and Soul, and all should be at the Service of, and spend themselves to maintain in good Condition, that Grace of God that is in us.

\* *Of the Pelican.*

*Matt.* \* Why doth the *Pelican* pierce her own Breast with her Bill?

*Prud.* To nourish her young Ones with her Blood, and thereby to shew that Christ the Blessed so loveth his Young, his People, as to save them from Death by his Blood.

† *Of the Cock.*

*Matt.* † What may one learn by hearing the Cocks crow?

*Prud.* Learn to remember *Peter's* Sin and *Peter's* Repentance. The Cock's crowing shews also that Day is coming on; let then the Crowing of the Cock put thee in Mind of that last and terrible Day of Judgment.

‡ *The Weak may call the Strong sometimes to Prayers.*

Now about this Time their Month was out; wherefore they signified to those of the House, that it was convenient for them to up and be going. Then said *Joseph* to his Mother, it is convenient ‡ that you forget not to send to the House of Mr. *Interpreter*, to pray him to grant that Mr. *Great-heart* should be sent unto us, that he may be our Conductor the Rest of our Way. Good Boy, said she, I had almost forgot. So she drew up a Petition, and prayed Mr. *Watchful* the Porter, to send it by some fit Man, to her good Friend Mr. *Interpreter*; who, when it was come, and he had seen the Contents of the Petition,



## PART II. The Pilgrim's Progress.

83

Petition, said to the Messenger, Go, tell them that I will send him.

When the Family where *Christiana* was, saw that \* they had a Purpose to go forward, they called the whole House together, to give Thanks to their King for sending of them such profitable Guests as these. Which done, they said unto *Christiana*, And shall we not shew thee something according as our Custom is to Pilgrims, on which thou mayest meditate, when thou art on the Way? So they took *Christiana*, her Children, and *Mercy*, into the Closet, and shewed them one of the Apples † that *Eve* eat of, and that she also did give to her Husband; and for the eating of which, they were both turned out of Paradise, and asked her what she thought that was? Then *Christiana* said, *It is Food or Poison, I know not which.* So they opened the Matter to her, ‡ and she held up her Hands and wondered, *Gen. iii. 6. Rom. vii. 24.*

\* They provide to be gone on their Way.

† Eve's Apple.

‡ A Sight of Sin is amazing.

§ Jacob's Ladder.

Then they had her to a Place, and shewed § her *Jacob's Ladder*. Now at that Time there were some Angels ascending upon it. So *Christiana* looked and looked to see the Angels go up, so did the Rest of the Company. Then they were going into another Place to shew them something else: But *James* said to his Mother, Pray bid them stay a little longer, for this is a curious Sight. So ¶ they turned again, and stood feeding their Eyes with this so pleasant a Prospect. After this they had them into a Place where did hang up a \* *Golden Anchor*, so they bid *Christiana* take it

¶ The Sight of Christ is taking.

\* Golden Anchor.

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

it down; for said they, you shall have it with you, *Gen. xxviii. 12.* for it is of absolute Necessity that you should, that you may lay hold of that within the Veil, and stand stedfast in case you should meet with turbulent Weather: So they were glad thereof, *John i. 15. Heb. vi. 19. Gen. xxviii. 12.* Then they took them, and had

• Of Abraham offering up Isaac.

them to the Mount upon which \* *Abraham* our Father had offered up *Isaac* his Son, and shewed them the *Altar*, the *Wood*, the *Fire*, and the *Knife*, for they remain to be seen to this very Day. When they had seen it, they held up their Hands, and blest themselves, and said Oh! What a Man for Love to his Master, and for Denial to himself was *Abraham*? After they had shewed them all these Things, *Prudence* took them into a Dining-Room,

† *Prudence's* Virginals.

where † stood a Pair of excellent Virginals; so she played upon them, and turned what she had shewed them into this excellent Song, saying,

*Eve's Apple we have shewed to you;  
Of that be you aware;  
You have seen Jacob's Ladder too,  
Upon which Angels are.  
An Anchor you received have,  
But let not this suffice,  
Until with Abra'm you have gave  
Your best of Sacrifice.*

Now

Now about this Time one knocked at the Door: So the Porter opened, and behold \* *Mr. Great-heart* was there; but when he was come in, what Joy was there! For it came now afresh again in their Minds, how but a while ago he had slain Old *Grim Bloody-man*, the Giant, and had delivered them from the Lions.

Then said *Mr. Great-heart* to *Christiana*, † *He brings a* and to *Mercy*, My Lord has sent each of you a Bottle of Wine, and also some parched Corn, together with a Couple of Pomegranates: He also sent the Boys some Figs and Raisins to refresh you in your Way.

Then they addressed themselves to their Journey; and *Prudence* and *Piety* went along with them. When they came at the Gate *Christiana* asked the Porter, if any of late went by. He said, No, only one some Time since, who also told me, that of late there had been a great ‡ Rob- † *Robbery.* bery committed on the King's Highway as you go: But said he, the Thieves are taken, and will shortly be tried for their Lives. Then *Christiana* and *Mercy* were afraid; but *Matthew* said, Mother, Fear nothing, as long as *Mr. Great-heart* is to go with us, and to be our Conductor.

§ Then said *Christiana* to the Porter, Sir, § *Christiana* I am much obliged to you for all the Kindnesses that you have shewed to me since I came hither; and also that you have been so Loving and Kind to my Children; I know not how to gratify your Kindness: Wherefore, pray, as a Token of my Respect to you, accept of

this small Mite : So she put a  
 in his Hand, and he made her a low  
 \* *The Porter's* Obedience \* and said, let thy Garments be  
*Blessing.* always white, and let thy Head want no  
 Ornament. Let *Mercy* be thy portion. And  
 and let not her Works be hindered to  
 the Boys he said, do you fly Youthful  
 Lusts, and follow after Godliness with them  
 that are Grave and Wise ; so shall you  
 put Gladness into your Mother's Heart,  
 and obtain Praise of all that are Sober-  
 minded : So they thanked the Porter, and  
 departed.

Now I saw in my Dream, that they went  
 forward until they were come to the Brow  
 of the Hill, where *Piety* bethinking her-  
 self, cried out, Alas ! I have forgot what  
 I intended to bestow upon *Christiana* and  
 her Companions ; I will go back and fetch  
 it ; so she ran and fetched it. When she  
 was gone, *Christiana* thought she heard in  
 a Grove a little Way off on the Right-  
 Hand, a most curious melodious Note,  
 with Words much like these :

*Tbro' all my Life thy Favour is  
 So frankly shew'd to me,  
 That in thy House for evermore  
 My Dwelling-place shall be.*

And listening still, she thought she heard  
 another answer, saying,

*For*



*For why? The Lord our God is good;  
His Mercy is for ever sure:  
His Truth at all Times firmly stood,  
And shall from Age to Age endure.*

So *Christiana* asked *Prudence* what it was that made those curious Notes. *Song* ii. 11, 12. They are, said she, our Country Birds: They sing these Notes but seldom, except it be at the Spring, when the Flowers appear, and the Sun shines warm, and then you may hear them all the Day long. I often, said she, go to hear them; we also oft-times keep them tame in our House. They are very fine Company for us when we are melancholy; also they make the Woods and Groves, and Solitary Places, desirous to be in.

\*By this Time *Piety* was come again; so \* *Piety* *be-* she said to *Christiana*, Look here, I have *stoweth some-* brought thee a Scheme of all those Things *thing on them* that thou hast seen at our House, upon *at parting.* which thou mayest look when thou findest thyself forgetful, and call those Things again to Remembrance for thy Edification and Comfort.

Now they began to go down the Hill into the Valley of *Humiliation*. It was a steep Hill, and the Way was slippery: But they were very careful, so they got down pretty well. When they were down in the Valley, *Piety* said to *Christiana*, this is the Place where your Husband met with the Foul Fiend *Apollyon*, and where they had the great Fight that they had: I know  
you

you cannot but have heard thereof. But be of good Courage, as long as you have here Mr. *Great-heart* to be your Guide and Conductor, we hope you will fare the better. So when these two had committed the Pilgrims unto the Conduct of their Guide, he went forward and they went after.

• Mr. *Great-heart* at the *Valley of Humiliation*.

*Great-heart*. \* Then said Mr. *Great-heart*, We need not be so afraid of this Valley, for here is nothing to hurt us, unless we procure it ourselves. It is true, *Christian* did here meet with *Apollyon*, with whom he had also a fore Combat; but that *Fray* was the Fruit of those Slips that he got in his going down the Hill: For they that get *Slips there*, must look for *Combats here*. And hence it is that this Valley has got so hard a Name. For the common People, when they hear that some frightful Thing has befallen such a One in such a Place, are of Opinion that that Place is haunted with some foul Fiend, or Evil Spirit; when, alas! it is for the Fruit of their Doing that such Things do befall them there.

† The Reason why *Christian* was so beset here.

† This Valley of *Humiliation* is of itself as fruitful a Place, as any the Crow flies over; and I am persuaded, if we could hit upon it, we might find somewhere hereabout something that might give us an Account why *Christian* was so hardly beset in this Place.

Then *James* said to his Mother, Lo, yonder stands a Pillar, and it looks as if somewhat was written thereon; let us go and see what it is. So they went and found there

there written, *Let Christian's Slips, before he came hither, and the Burden that he met with in this Place, be a Warning to those that come after.* Lo, said the Guide, Did I not tell you that there was something hereabouts that would give Intimation of the Reason why *Christian* was so hard beset in this Place: Then turning to *Christiana*, he said, No Disparagement to *Christian* more than to many others whose Hap and Lot it was. For it is easier going up than down this Hill, and that can be said but of few Hills in all these Parts of the World. But we will leave the good Man, he is at Rest, he also had a brave Victory over his Enemy: Let him grant that dwelleth above, that we fare no worse, when we come to be tried, than he.

But we will come again to this Valley of *Humiliation*. It is the best and most useful Piece of Ground in all these Parts. It is a fat Ground, and as you see, consisteth much in Meadows: and if a Man was to come here in the Summer Time, as we do now, if he knew not any Thing before thereof, and if he also delighted himself in the Sight of his Eyes, he might see that which would be delightful to him. Behold how green this Valley is, also how beautiful with *Lilies*, *Song ii.* 1 *Jam.* iv. 6, 1 *Pet.* v. 5. I have also known many labouring Men that have got good Estates in this Valley of *Humiliation* †. (For God resisteth the Proud, but gives more Grace to the Humble;) for indeed it is a very fruitful Soil, and doth bring forth by Handfuls. Some also have wished

\* A Pillar with an Inscription on it.

† This Valley a brave Place.

‡ Men thrive in the Valley of Humiliation.

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

wished, that the next Way to their Father's House was here, that they might be troubled no more with either Hills or Mountains to go over; but the Way is the Way, and there is an End.

Now as they were going along, and talking, they espied a Boy feeding his Father's Sheep. The Boy was in very mean Clothes, but of a fresh and well-favoured Countenance; and as he sat by himself, he sung. Hark, said Mr. Great-heart, to what the Shepherd's Boy saith; so they hearkened, and he said,

Phil. iv. 12,  
43.

*He that is down, needs fear no Fall;  
He that is low, no Pride:  
He that is humble, ever shall  
Have God to be his Guide.*

*I am content with what I have,  
Little be it or much:  
And, Lord, Contentment still I crave,  
Because thou savest such.*

Heb. xiii. 5.

*Fulness to such a Burden is,  
That go on Pilgrimage:  
Here little, and hereafter Bliss,  
Is best from Age to Age.*

Then said the Guide, do you hear him?  
I will dare to say, this Boy lives a merrier  
Life, and wears more of the Herb called  
*Heart's-*



*Heart's-Ease* in his Bosom, than he that is clad in Silk and Velvet; but we will proceed in our Discourse.

In this Valley our \* Lord formerly had *\*Christ, when in the Flesh, had his Country House in the Valley of* his Country-House, he loved much to be here: He loved also to walk in these Meadows, and found the Air was pleasant: Besides, here a Man shall be free from Humiliation. the Noise, and from the Hurryings of this Life: All States are full of Noise and Confusion, only the Valley of *Humiliation* is that empty and solitary Place. Here a Man shall not be let and hindered in his Contemplation, as in other Places he is apt to be. This is a Valley that no body walks in, but those that love a Pilgrim's Life. And though *Christian* had the hard Hap to meet with *Apollyon*, and to enter with him in a brisk Encounter, yet I must tell you, that in former Times Men have met with Angels here, have found Pearls here, and have in this Place found the Words of Life. *Hos. xii. 4, 5.*

Did I say our Lord had here in former Days his Country-House, and that he loved here to walk? I will add, in this Place, and to the People that live and trace these Grounds, he has left a yearly Revenue to be faithfully paid them at certain Seasons for their Maintenance by the Way, and for their further Encouragement to go on their Pilgrimage, *xi. 29.*

*Samuel.* Now as they went on, *Samuel* said to Mr. *Great-heart*: Sir I perceive that in this Valley, my Father and *Apollyon* had their Battle; but whereabouts was the

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

the Fight, for I perceive this Valley is large?

*Great-Heart.* Your father had the Battle with *Apollyon*, at a Place yonder before us, in a narrow Passage, just beyond *Forgetful*

• *Forgetful*  
• *Green.*

• *Green.* And indeed that Place is the most dangerous Place in all these Parts. For if at any Time Pilgrims meet with any Brunt it is when they forget what Favours they have received, and how unworthy they are of them: This is the Place also where others have been hard put to it: But more of the Place when we are come to it; for I persuade myself, that to this Day there remains either some Sign of the Battle, or some Monument to testify that such a Battle there was fought.

† *Humility a*  
*sweet Grace.*

*Mercy.* Then said *Mercy*, I think I am as well in this Valley as I have been any where else in all my Journey: The Place methinks, suits with my Spirit. † I love to be in such Places where there is no rattling with Coaches, nor Rumbling with Wheels: Methinks, here one may, without much Molestation, be thinking what he is, whence he came, what he has done, and to what the King as called him: Here one may think and break at Heart, and melt in one's Spirit, until one's Eyes become as the *Fish-Pools of Heshbon*, *Song vii. 5.* *Psal. lxxxiv. 5, 6, 7.* *Hos. ii. 15.* they that go rightly through this Valley of *Baccha*, make it a Well, the Rain that God sends down from Heaven upon them that are here, also filleth the Pools. This Valley is that from whence also the King will give to their Vineyards, and they that go through

through it, shall sing, as *Christian* did, for all he met *Apollyon*.

*Great-heart*. \* It is true, said their Guide, \* *Experiment*  
I have gone through this Valley many a of it.  
Time, and never was better than when here.

I have also been a Conductor to several Pilgrims, and they have confessed the same. *To this Man will I look, saith the King, even to him that is Poor, and of a contrite Spirit, and that trembles at my Word.*

Now they were come to the Place where the aforementioned Battle was fought. Then said the Guide to *Christiana*, her Children and *Mercy*, This is the Place, on this Ground *Christian* stood, and up there came *Apollyon* against him : † And look, did not I tell you, Here is some of your Husband's Blood upon these Stones to this Day : Behold, also how here and there are yet to be seen upon the Place some of the Shivers of *Apollyon's* broken Darts. See also, how they did beat the Ground with their Feet as they fought, to make good their Places against each other ; how also with their Bye-blows, they did split the very Stones in Pieces : Verily *Christian* did here play the Man, and shewed himself as stout as *Hercules* could, had he been there, even he himself. When *Apollyon* was beat, he made his Retreat to the next Valley, that is called, *The Valley of the Shadow of Death*, unto which we shall come anon.

Lo, yonder also stands a ‡ Monument † *Monument of the Battle.*  
on which is engraven this Battle, and *Christian's* Victory, to his Fame, throughout

+ *The Place where Christian and the Fiend did fight. Some Signs of the Battle remain.*

out all Ages : So because it stood just on the Way-side before them, they stepped to it, and read the Writing, which Word for Word was this :

• Monument of  
Christian's  
Victory.  
Part I. p. 70.

\* *Hard-by here was a Battle fought,  
Most strange, and yet most true ;  
Christian and Apollyon fought  
Each other to subdue.  
The Man so bravely played the Man,  
He made the Fiend to fly,  
Of which a Monument I stand,  
The same to testify.*

When they had passed by this Place, they came upon the Borders of *the Shadow of Death*, and this Valley was longer than the other, a Place also most strangely haunted with Evil Things, as many are able to testify : But these Women and Children went the better through it because they had Day-light, and because Mr. *Great-heart* was their Conductor.

† Groanings  
heard.

When they were entered upon this Valley, they thought that they heard a † Groaning, as of dead Men ; a very great Groaning. They thought also they did hear Words of Lamentation, spoken as of some in extreme Torment. These Things made the Boys to quake, the Women also looked pale and wan ; but their guide bid them be of good Comfort.

‡ The Ground  
shakes.

So they ‡ went on a little farther, and they thought that they felt the Ground begin



begin to shake under them, as if some hollow Place was there; \* they heard also • *The Ground* a Kind of Hissing, as of Serpents, but no- *shakes.* thing as yet appeared. Then said the Boys, are we not yet at the End of this doleful Place? But the Guide also bid them be of good Courage, and look well to their Feet, lest haply, said he, you be taken in some Snare.

Now *James* began to be sick, † but I think † *James sick* the Cause thereof was Fear; so his Mo- *with Fear.* ther gave him some of that Glass of Spirits that she had given her at the *Interpreter's* House, and three of the Pills that *Mr. Skill* had prepared, and the Boy began to revive. Thus they went on, till they came to about the Middle of the Valley; and then *Christiana* said methinks I see something yonder ‡ upon the Road before us, ‡ *A Fiend ap-* a Thing of such Shape as I have not *pears.* seen. Then said *Joseph*, Mother, What is it? An ugly Thing, Child; an ugly Thing, said she: § But Mother, What is § *The Pil-* is it like? said he. It is like I cannot tell *grims are a-* what, said she. And now it is but a little *fraid.* Way off: Then said she, it is nigh.

Well, said *Mr. Great-heart*, ¶ Let them ¶ *Gret-* that are most afraid, keep close to me: *heart cou-* So the *Fiend* came on, and the Conductor *rages them.* met it; but when it was just come to him it vanished to all their Sights: Then remembered they what had been said some Time ago: *Resist the Devil, and he will flee from you.*

They went therefore on, as being a little refreshed; but they had not gone far before *Mercy*, looking behind her,  
 Y saw

\* *A Lion.*

saw as she thought, something almost like  
\* a Lion, and it came a great padding Pace  
after; and it had a hollow Voice of roar-  
ing; and at every Roar that it gave, it  
made the Valley echo, and all their Hearts  
to ach, save the Heart of him that was  
their Guide. So it came up, and Mr.  
*Great-heart* went behind, and put the  
Pilgrims all before him. The Lion also  
came on apace, and Mr. *Great-heart* ad-  
dressed himself to give him Battle, 1 *Pit.*  
v. 8. But when he saw that it was deter-  
mined that Resistance should be made, he  
also drew back and came no farther.

† *A Pit and  
Darkness.*

Then they went on again, and their  
Conductor did go before them, till they  
came to a Place where was cast up a † Pit,  
the whole Breadth of the Way, and be-  
fore they could be prepared to go over  
that, a great Mist and Darkness fell upon  
them, so that they could not see. Then  
said the Pilgrims, Alas! Now what shall  
we do? But their Guide made Answer,  
Fear not, stand still, and see what an End  
will be put to this also; so they staid there,  
because their Path was marred. They then  
also thought that they heard more appa-  
rently the Noise and Rushing of the Ene-  
mies; the Fire also, and smoak of the Pit,  
was much easier to be discerned. Then  
said *Christiana* to *Mercy*, Now I see what my  
poor Husband went through; I have heard  
much of this Place, but I never was here  
afore now; poor Man, he went here all  
alone in the Night; he had Night almost  
quite through the Way: Also these Fiends  
were busy about him, as if they would  
have

have torn him in pieces\*. Many have spoke of it, but none can tell what the Valley of *the Shadow of Death* should mean until they came in themselves. *The Heart knows its own Bitterness, a Stranger intermeddleth not with its Joy.* To be here, is a fearful Thing.

† *Great-heart.* This is like doing Business in great Waters, or like going down into the Deep; this is like being in the Heart of the Sea, and like going down to the Bottoms of the Mountains: Now it seems as if the Earth, with its Bars, were about us for ever. *But let them that walk in Darkneſs, and have no Light, truſt in the Name of the Lord, and ſtay upon their God.* For my Part, as I have told you already, I have gone often through this Valley, and have been much harder put to it than now I am; and yet you ſee I am alive. I would not boaſt, for that I am not my own Saviour. But I truſt we ſhall have a good Deliverance. Come, pray for Light to him that lightened our Darkneſs, and that can rebuke, not only theſe, but all the Satans in Hell.

So ‡ they cried and prayed, and God ſent Light and Deliverance, for there was now no Let in their Way; no not there, where but now they were ſtopt with a Pit. Yet they were not got through the Valley; ſo they went on ſtill, and behold great Stinks and loathſome Smells, to the great Annoyance of them. Then ſaid *Mercy to Chriſtiana,* There is not ſuch pleaſant Being here as at the Gate, or at

\* *Chriſtiana now knows what her Huſband felt.*

† *Great-heart's Reply.*

‡ *They pray.*

the *Interpreter's*, or at the House where we lay last.

\* *One of the  
Boys' Reply.*

O but, \* said one of the Boys, it is not so bad to go through here, as it is to abide here always; and for ought I know, one Reason why we must go this Way to the House prepared for us, is, that our Home might be made the sweeter to us.

Well said *Samuel*, quoth the Guide, thou hast now spoke like a Man. Why, if ever I get out here again, said the Boy, I think I shall prize Light and good Way, better than ever I did in all my Life. Then said the Guide, We shall be out by and by.

So on they went, and *Joseph* said, Cannot we see to the End of this Valley as yet? Then said the Guide, Look to your Feet, for we shall presently be among Snares: So they looked to their Feet, and went on; but were troubled much with the Snares. Now when they were come among the Snares, they espied a Man cast into the Ditch on the left Hand, with his Flesh all rent and torn. Then said the Guide, That is one † *Heedless*, that was going this Way; he has lain there a great while: There was one *Takeheed* with him when he was taken and slain; but he escaped their Hands. You cannot imagine how many are killed hereabouts, and yet Men are so foolishly venturous, as to set out lightly on Pilgrimage, and to come without a Guide. Poor *Christian*! it was a Wonder that he here escaped; but he was beloved of his God: Also he had a good heart of his own, or else he

† *Heedless  
slain, and  
Takeheed  
preserved.*



he could never have done it. Now they drew towards the End of the Way, and just there where *Christian* had seen the Cave when he went by, out thence came forth *Maul* a Giant. \* This *Maul* did use \* *Maul a Giant.* to spoil young Pilgrims with Sophistry, and he called *Great-heart* by his Name, and said unto him, How many Times have you been forbidden to do these Things? † Then † *Quarrels with Great-heart.* said Mr. *Great-heart*, What Things? what Things, quoth the Giant; you know what Things; but I will put an End to your Trade. But, pray, said Mr. *Great-heart*, before we fall to it, let us understand wherefore we must fight. (Now the Women and Children stood trembling, and knew not what to do.) Quoth the Giant, you rob the Country, and rob it with the worst of Thieves. These are but Generals, said Mr. *Great-heart*; come to Particulars, Man.

‡ Then said the Giant, Thou practisest ‡ *God's Ministers counted as Kidnappers.* the Craft of a *Kidnapper*, thou gatherest up Women and Children, and carriest them into a strange Country, to the weakening of my Master's Kingdom. But now *Great-heart* replied, I am a Servant of the God of Heaven; my Business is to persuade Sinners to Repentance: ¶ I am commanded to do ¶ *The Giant and Mr. Great-heart must fight.* my Endeavour to turn Men, Women, and Children, from Darkness to Light, and from the Power of Satan to God; and if this be indeed the Ground of thy Quarrel, let us fall to it as soon as thou wilt.

Then the Giant came up, and Mr. *Great-heart* went to meet him; and as he

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

• *Weak  
Folks' Prayers  
at some Times  
help strong  
Folks' Cries.*

went, he drew his Sword, but the Giant had a Club. So without more ado they fell to it, and at the first Blow the Giant struck Mr. *Great-heart* down upon upon one of his Knees; with that the *Women* and *Children* cried: So Mr. *Great-heart* recovering himself, \* laid about him in full lusty Manner, and gave the Giant a Wound in his Arm; that he fought for the Space of an Hour, to that Height of Heat, that the Breath came out of the Giant's Nostrils, as the Heat doth out of a boiling Cauldron.

Then they sat down to rest them, but Mr. *Great-heart* betook himself to Prayer; also the *Women* and *Children* did nothing but sigh and cry all the Time that the Battle did last.

† *The Giant  
struck down.*

When they had rested them, and taken Breath, they both fell to it again, and Mr. *Great-heart*, with a full Blow, fetched the † Giant down to the Ground: Nay, hold, let me recover, quoth he. So Mr. *Great-heart* let him fairly get up; so to it they went again, and the Giant missed but little of breaking Mr. *Great-heart's* Skull with his Club.

‡ *He is slain  
and his Head  
disposed of.*

Mr. *Great-heart* seeing that, runs to him in the full Heat of his Spirit, and pierced him under the fifth Rib; with that the Giant began to faint, and could hold up his Club no longer. Then Mr. *Great-heart* seconded his Blow, and smit the Head of the Giant from his Shoulders. Then the *Women* ‡ and *Children* rejoiced, and Mr. *Great-heart* also praised God, for the Deliverance he had wrought.

When

When this was done, they among themselves erected a *Pillar*, and fastened the Giant's Head thereon, and wrote under it in Letters that Passengers might read :

*He that did wear this Head was one  
That Pilgrims did misuse ;  
He stopt their Way, he spared none,  
But did them all abuse :  
Until that I, Great-heart, arose,  
The Pilgrims' Guide to be ;  
Until that I did him oppose,  
That was their Enemy.*

Now I saw that they went to the Ascent that was a little Way off cast up to be a Prospect for *Pilgrims*; (that was the Place from whence *Christian* had the first Sight of *Faithful* his Brother.) Wherefore here they sat down and rested ; they also here did eat and drink, and make merry ; for that they had gotten deliverance from this so dangerous an Enemy. As they sat thus and did eat, *Christiana* asked the Guide, *If he had caught no Hurt in the Battle ?* Then said Mr. *Great-Heart*, No, save a little on my Flesh ; yet that also shall be so far from being to my Detriment, that it is at present a Proof of my Love to my Master and you, and shall be a Means, by Grace, to increase my Reward at last.

But was you not afraid, good Sir, when you saw him come with his Club ?

It is my Duty, said he, to mistrust my own Ability, that I may have Reli-

2 Cor. iv.

\* *Discourse of  
the Fight.*

ance on him that is stronger than all.  
But what did you think, when he fetched  
you down to the Ground at the first Blow?  
Why I thought, quoth he, that so my  
Master himself was served, and yet he it  
was that conquered at last.

† Matthew  
here admires  
God's Good-  
ness.

† *Matt.* When you all have thought what  
you please, I think God has been won-  
derful good unto us, both in bringing us  
out of this Valley, and in delivering us  
out of the Hand of this Enemy; for my  
Part, I see no Reason why we should dis-  
trust our God any more, since he has *now*,  
and in *such* a Place as this, given us such  
Testimony of his Love as this.

‡ *Old Honesty*  
*asleep under*  
*the Oak.*

‡ Then they got up, and went forward:  
Now a little before them stood an Oak,  
and under it when they came to it, they  
found an old Pilgrim fast asleep; they  
knew that he was a Pilgrim by his *Cloaths*,  
and his *Staff* and his *Girdle*.

So the *Guide*, Mr. *Great-beart*, awaked  
him, and the old Gentleman, as he lift up  
his Eyes, cried out, What is the Matter?  
Who are you? And what is your Business  
here?

§ *One Saint*  
*sometimes*  
*takes another*  
*for his Enemy.*

*Great-beart.* § Come, Man, be not so hot,  
here are none but Friends; Yet the old  
Man gets up, and stands upon his Guard,  
and will know of them what they were,  
Then said the *Guide*, my Name is *Great-  
beart*; I am the Guide of these Pilgrims,  
which are going to the *Cælestial Country*.

*Honest.* Then said Mr. *Honest*, I cry you  
Mercy; I feared that you had been of  
the Company of those that some Time ago  
did rob *Little-Faith* of his Money, but  
now



now I look better \* about me, I perceive \* *Talk between Great-heart and him.*  
you are honefter People.

*Great-Heart.* Why what would, or could you have done, or have helped yourself, if we indeed had been of that Company?

*Hon.* Done! Why, I would have fought as long as Breath had been in me; and had I so done, I am sure you could never have given me the worst on it; for a *Christian* can never be overcome unless he should yield of himself.

*Great-heart.* Well said, Father *Honesty* quoth the *Guide*, for by this I know thou art a Cock of the right Kind, for thou hast said the Truth.

*Hon.* And by this also I know that thou knowest what true Pilgrimage is; for all others do think, that we are the soonest overcome of any.

*Great-Heart.* Well, now we are happily met, pray let me crave your Name, and the Name of the Place you came from?

*Hon.* † My Name I cannot, but I came † *Whence My Honest came*  
from the Town of *Stupidity*; it lieth about four Degrees beyond the City of *Destruction*.

*Great-Heart.* Oh! Are you that Countryman? Then I deem I have half a Guess of you; your Name is *Old Honesty*, is it not? So the old Gentleman blushed, and said, not *Honesty* in the *Abstract*, but *Honesty* is my Name, and I wish that my *Nature* may agree to what I am called.

*Hon.* But, Sir, said the old Gentleman, how could you guess that I am such a Man, since I came from such a Place?

*Great-heart.* I had heard of you before by my Master; for he knows all Things that are \* done on the Earth: But I have often wondered that any should come from your Place, for your Town is worse than is the City of *Destruction* itself.

\* Stupified  
ones are worse  
than those  
merely carnal.

*Hon.* Yea, we lie more off from the Sun, and so are more cold and senseless; but was a Man in a Mountain of Ice, yet if the Sun of Righteousness will arise upon him, his frozen Heart shall feel a Thaw! And thus it has been with me.

*Great-heart.* I believe it, Father *Honesty*, I believe it; for I know the Thing is true.

Then the old Gentleman saluted all the *Pilgrims* with a holy Kiss of *Charity*, and asked them of their Names, and how they had fared since they set out on their Pilgrimage.

† Old *Honesty*  
and *Christi-*  
*ana* talk.

*Christ.* † Then said *Christiana*, my Name I suppose you have heard of; good *Christian* was my Husband, and these Four were his Children. But can you think how the old Gentleman was taken, when she told him who she was! He skipped, he smiled, and blessed them with a thousand good Wishes, saying:

*Hon.* I have heard much of your Husband, and of his Travels and Wars, which he underwent in his Days. Be it spoken to your Comfort, the Name of your Husband rings all over these Parts of the World; his Faith, his Courage, his Enduring, and his Sincerity under all, has made his Name famous. Then he turned

ed to the Boys\*, and asked them of their *\* He also talks with the Boys.*  
*Names*, which they told him; and then *Old Mr. Honesty's Blessing on them.*  
 said he unto them, *Matthew*, be thou like *Matt. x. 3.*  
*Matthew* the Publican, not in Vice, but in *Psal. xcix. 6.*  
 Virtue. *Samuel*, saith he, be thou like *Gen. xxxix.*  
*Samuel* the Prophet, a Man of Faith and *Acts i. 14.*  
 Prayer. *Joseph*, saith he, be thou like  
*Joseph* in *Potiphar's* House, chaste, and  
 one that flies from Temptation. And  
*James*, be thou like *James* the *Just*, and  
 like *James* the Brother of our Lord. Then  
 they told him of *Mercy*, and how she had  
 left her Town and her Kindred to come  
 along with *Christiana*, and with her Sons.  
 At that the old honest Man said, † *Mercy* † *He blesteth Mercy,*  
 is thy Name: By *Mercy* shalt thou be sus-  
 tained, and carried through all those Dif-  
 ficulties that shall assault thee in thy Way,  
 till thou shalt come thither, where thou  
 shalt look the *Fountain of Mercy in the Face*  
*with Comfort.*

All this while the Guide, Mr. *Great-heart*, was very well pleased, and smiled upon his Companion.

‡ Now as they walked together the † *Talk of one Mr. Fearing.*  
 Guide asked the old Gentleman, if he did  
 not know one Mr. *Fearing*, that came on  
 Pilgrimage out of his Parts?

*Hon.* Yes, very well, said he. He was a  
 Man that had the Root of the Matter in  
 him, but he was one of the most trouble-  
 some Pilgrims that I ever met with in all  
 my Days.

*Great-heart.* I perceive you knew him,  
 for you have given a very right Chrracter  
 of him.

*Hon.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*Hon.* Knew him ! I was a great Companion of his ; I was with him most an End ; when he first began to think of what would come upon us hereafter, I was with him.

*Great-heart.* I was his Guide from my Master's House to the Gate of the Cœlestial City.

*Hon.* Then you knew him to be a troublesome one.

*Great heart.* I did so ; but I could very well bear it ; for Men of my Calling are oftentimes intrusted with the Conduct of such as he was.

*Hon.* Well then, pray let us hear a little of him, and how he managed himself under your Conduct.

• *Mr. Fear-  
ing's trouble-  
some Pilgri-  
mage.*

† *His Behavi-  
our at the  
Slough of  
Despond.*

*Great-heart.* \* Why he was always afraid that he should come short whither he had a Desire to go. Every Thing frightened him that he heard any body speak of, that had but the least Appearance of Opposition in it. I hear that he lay roaring at † the *Slough of Despond*, for above a Month together : nor durst he, for all he saw several go over before him, venture, though they many of them offered to lend him their Hands. He would not go back neither. The Cœlestial City, he said, he should die if he came not to it, and yet was dejected at every Difficulty, and stumbled at every Straw that any body cast in his Way. Well, after he had lain in the *Slough of Despond* a great while, as I have told you, one Sun-shine Morning, I do not know how, he ventured, and he got over ; But when he was over, he would



would scarce believe it. He had, I think, a *Slough of Despond* in his Mind, a *Slough* that he carried every where with him, or else he could never have been as he was. So he came up to the Gate, you know what I mean, that stands at the Head of this Way, and there also he stood a good while before he would venture to knock. \* When the Gate was opened, he would give back, and give Place to others, and say, that he was not worthy: For all he got before some to the Gate, yet many of them went in before him. There the poor Man would stand shaking and shrinking. I dare say it would have pitied one's Heart to have seen him: Nor would he go back again. At last he took the Hammer that hanged at the Gate in his Hand, and gave a small Rap or two; then one opened to him, but he shrunk back as before. He that opened, stept out after him, and said, Thou trembling one, what wantest thou? With that he fell down to the Ground. He that spoke to him wondered to see him so faint. He said to him, *Peace be to thee*, up, for I have set open the Door to thee; come in, for thou art blest. With that he got up, and went in trembling; and when that he was in, he was ashamed to shew his Face. Well, after he had been entertained there a while, as you know how the Manner is, he was bid go on his Way, and also told the Way he should take. So he came till † he came to our House, but as he behaved himself at the Gate, so he did at my Master's the

\* *His Behaviour at the Gate.*

† *His Behaviour at the Interpreter's Door.*  
Inter-

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*Interpreter's Door.* He lay thereabouts in the Cold a good while, before he would adventure to call; *yet he would not go back:* And the Nights were long and cold then. Nay he had a Note of *Necessity* in his Bosom to my Master to receive him, and grant him the Comfort of his House, and also to allow him a stout and valiant Conductor, because he was himself so *Cbicken-hearted* a Man: And yet for all that, he was afraid to call at the Door. So he lay up and down thereabouts, till, poor Man, he was almost starved; yea, so great was his Dejection, that though he saw several others for knocking got in, yet he was afraid to venture. At last, I think, I looked out of the Window, and perceiving a Man to be up and down about the Door, I went out to him, and asked what he was, but, poor Man, the Water stood in his Eyes; so I perceived what he wanted. I went therefore in, and told it in the House, and we shewed the Things to our Lord: So he sent me out again, to entreat him to come in; but I dare say I had hard Work to do it. At last he came in, and I will say that for my Lord, he carried it wonderful loving to him.

\* *How he was entertained there.*

† *He is a little encouraged at the Interpreter's House.*

There were \* but a few good Bits at the Table, but some of it was laid upon his Trencher. Then he presented the *Note*, and my Lord looking thereon, said, his Desire should be granted. So when he had been there a good while, † he seemed to get some Heart, and to be a little more comforted. For my Master, you must know, is one of very tender Bowels, especially

especially to them that are afraid; wherefore he carried it so towards him, as might tend most to his Encouragement. Well, when he had a Sight of the Things of the Place, and was ready to take his Journey to go to the City, my Lord, as he did to *Christian* before, gave him a Bottle of Spirits, and some comfortable Things to eat. Thus we set forward, and I went before him; but the Man was but of few Words, only he would sigh aloud.

\* When we were come to where the three Fellows were hanged, he said, that he doubted that that would be his End also. Only he seemed glad when he saw the *Cross* and the *Sepulchre*. There I confess he desired to stay a little to look, and he seemed for a while after to be a little comforted. When we came at the Hill of *Difficulty*, he made no stick at that, nor did he much fear the Lions: For you must know, that his Troubles were not about such Things as these; his Fear was about his Acceptance at last.

I got him into the House Beautiful, I think, before he was willing; also when he was in, I brought him acquainted with the Damsels that were of the Place, but he † was ashamed to make himself much for Company; he desired much to be alone, yet he always loved good Talk, and often would get behind the Screen to hear it: He also loved much to see ancient Things, and to be pondering them in his Mind. He told me afterwards, that he loved to be in those two Houses from

\* He was  
frightened at  
the Gibbet;  
comforted at  
the Cross.

† Dampish at  
the House  
Beautiful.

from which he came last, to wit, at the Gate, and that of the *Interpreter*, but that he durst not be so bold as to ask.

• He went down into, and was very pleasant in, the Valley of Humiliation.

\* When we went also from the House Beautiful, down the Hill into the Valley of Humiliation, he went down as well as ever I saw a Man in my Life, for he cared not how mean he was, so he might be happy at last. Yea, I think there was a Kind of Sympathy betwixt that Valley and him: for I never saw him better in all his Pilgrimage, than he was in that Valley.

Here he would lie down, embrace the Ground, and kiss the very Flowers that grew in this Valley, *Lam. iii. 27, 28, 29.* He would now be up every Morning by Break of Day, tracing and walking to and fro in the Valley.

† Much perplexed in the Shadow of Death.

† But when he was come to the Entrance of the Valley of the *Shadow of Death*, I thought I should have lost my Man; not for that he had any Inclination to go back, that he always abhorred, but he was ready to die with Fear. O! the *Hobgoblins* will have me! the *Hobgoblins* will have me! cried he; and I could not beat him out of it. He made such a Noise, and such an Outcry here, that had they but heard him, it was enough to encourage them to come and fall upon us.

But this I took very great Notice of, that this Valley was as quiet when we went through it, as ever I knew it before or since. I suppose those Enemies here had now a special Check from our Lord, and



## PART II. *The Pilgrim's Progress.*

III

and a Command not to meddle until Mr. *Fearing* was passed over it.

It would be too tedious to tell you of all; we will therefore only mention a Passage or two more. When he was come to *Vanity-Fair*, I thought he would have fought with all the Men in the Fair; I feared there we should both have been knocked on the Head, so hot was he against *Fooleries*; upon the enchanted Ground he was also very wakeful. But when he was come at the River, where was no Bridge, there again he was in a heavy Case: Now, now, he said, he should be drowned for ever, and so never see that Face with Comfort, that he had come so many Miles to behold.

*His Behaviour  
at Vanity-  
Fair.*

And here also I took Notice of what was very remarkable: The water of that River was lower at this Time, than ever I saw it in all my Life; so he went over at last, not much above wet-shod. When he was going up to the Gate, Mr. *Great-heart* began to take his Leave of him, and to wish him a good Reception above, so he said, *I shall, I shall*: Then parted we asunder, and I saw him no more.

*Hon.* Then it seems he was well at last. *His Boldness*

*Great-heart.* Yes, yes, I never had Doubt about him, he was a Man of a choice Spirit, only he was always kept very low,

*at last.*

Z

and

---

*Behold Vanity-Fair! the Pilgrims there  
Are chain'd and ston'd beside;  
Even so it was our Lord pass'd here,  
And on Mount Calvary dy'd.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

and that made his Life so burdensome to himself, and so very troublesome to others. *Psal.* lxxxiii. *Rom.* xiv. 21. *1 Cor.* viii. 13. He was, above many, tender of Sin; he was so afraid of doing Injuries to others, that he often would deny himself of that which was lawful, because he would not offend.

*Hon.* But what should be the Reason that such a good Man should be all his Days so much in the Dark?

*Reason good  
Men are so in  
the Dark.  
Matt. xi. 16,  
17, 18.*

*Great-heart.* There are two Sorts of Reasons for it; one is, the wise God will have it so, some must *pipe*, and some must *weep*. Now Mr. *Fearing* was one that played upon the *Bass*. He and his Fellows found the *Sackbut*, whose Notes are more doleful than Notes of other Music are; though indeed some say, the *Bass* is the Ground of Music. And for my Part, I care not at all for that Profession that begins not in Heaviness of Mind. The first String that the Musician usually touches, is the *Bass*, when he intends to put all in Tune; God also plays upon this String, first, when he sets the Soul in Tune for himself. Only there was the Imperfection of Mr. *Fearing*, he could play upon no other Music but this, till towards his latter End.

I make bold to talk thus metaphorically, for the ripening of the Wits of *young Readers*; and because in the Book of the *Revelations*, the Saved are compared to a Company of Musicians that play upon their *Trumpets* and *Harps*, and sing their Songs before the Throne, *Rev.* viii. chap. xi. 4. 2, 3.

*Hon.*

*Hon.* He was a very zealous Man, as one may see by what Relation you have given of him; Difficulties, Lions, or Vanity-fair, he feared not at all; it was only Sin, Death, and Hell, that was to him a Terror; because he had some Doubts about his Interest in that Cœlestial Country.

*Great-heart.* You say right: *These* were *A Close about* the Things that were his Troubles, and *him.* they, as you have well observed, arose from the Weakness of his Mind thereabout, not from Weakness of Spirit as to the practical Part of a Pilgrim's Life. I dare believe, that as the Proverb is, *He could have bit a Firebrand, had it stood in his Way*: But those Things with which he was oppressed, no Man ever yet could shake off with Ease.

*Christiana.* Then said *Christiana*, This *Christiana's* Relation of Mr. *Fearing* has done me *Sentence.* good: I thought no Body had been like me; but I see there was some Semblance betwixt this good Man and I, only we differ in two Things. His Troubles were so great that they brake out, but mine I kept within. His also lay so hard upon him, they made him that he could not knock at the Houses provided for Entertainment; but my Troubles were always such as made me knock the louder.

*Mercy.* If I might also speak my Mind, *Mercy's* I must say, that something of him has *Sentence.* also dwelt in me. For I have ever been more afraid of the *Lake* and the Loss of a Place in *Paradise*, than I have been at the Loss of other Things. O! thought I,

**The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.**

may I have the Happiness to have a Habitation there, it is enough, though I part with all the World to win it.

Matthew's  
Sentence.

*Matt.* Then said *Matthew*, Fear was one Thing that made me think that I was far from having that within that accompanies Salvation; but if it was so with such a good Man as he, why may it not also go well with me?

James's  
Sentence.

*James.* No Fears, no Grace, said *James*. Though there is not always Grace where there is the Fear of Hell, yet to be sure there is no Grace where there is no Fear of God.

*Great-heart.* Well said, *James*, thou hast hit the Mark; for the Fear of God is the Beginning of Wisdom; and to be sure they that want the Beginning, having neither Middle nor End. But we will here conclude our Discourse of *Mr. Fearing*, after we have sent after him his Farewel.

Their Fare-  
wel about  
him.

*Whilst, Master Fearing, thou didst fear  
Thy God, and wast afraid  
Of doing any Thing, while here,  
That would have thee betray'd.*

*And didst thou fear the Lake and Pit?  
Would others do so too!  
For as for them that want thy Wit,  
They do themselves undo.*

Now I saw, that they all went on in their Talk. For after *Mr. Great-heart* had made an End with *Mr. Fearing*, *Mr. Honest*



*Honest* began to tell them of another, but Of Mr. Self-will. his Name was Mr. *Self-will*. He pretended himself to be a *Pilgrim*, said Mr. *Honest*; but I persuade myself, he never came in at the Gate that stands at the Head of the Way.

*Great-heart*. Had you ever any Talk with him about it?

*Hon.* Yes, more than once or twice; Old Honest had talked with him. but he would always be like himself, *Self-willed*. He neither cared for Man, nor Argument, nor Example; what his Mind prompted him to, that he would do, and nothing else could he be got to.

*Great-heart*. Pray what Principles did he hold? for I suppose you can tell.

*Hon.* He held, that a Man might follow the Vices as well as the Virtues of the Self will's Opinion. Pilgrims; and that if he did both, he should be certainly saved.

*Great-heart*. How! If he had said, it is possible for the best to be guilty of the Vices as well as partake of the Virtues of Pilgrims, he could not much have been blamed. For indeed we are exempted from no Vice absolutely, but on Condition that we watch and strive. But this I perceive is not the Thing. But if I understand you right, your Meaning is, that he was of that Opinion, that it was allowable so to be.

*Hon.* Ay, ay, so I mean, and so he believed and practised.

*Great-heart*. But what Grounds had he for so saying?

*Hon.* Why, he said he had the Scripture for his Warrant.

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*Great-heart.* Pi'ythee, Mr. *Honest*, present us with a few Particulars.

*Hon.* So I will. He said, To have to do with other Men's Wives had been practised by *David*, God's Beloved, and therefore he could do it. He said, To have more Women than one, was a Thing that *Solomon* practised, and therefore he could do it. He said, That *Sarah* and the godly Midwives of *Egypt* lied, and so did *Rahab*, and therefore he could do it. He said, That the Disciples went at the Bidding of their Master, and took away the Owner's *Asses*, and therefore he could do so too. He said, That *Jacob* got the Inheritance of his Father, in a Way of Guile and Dissimulation, and therefore he could do so too.

*Great-heart.* High base! indeed. And are you sure he was of this Opinion?

*Hon.* I have heard him plead for it, bring Scripture for it, bring Arguments for it, &c.

*Great-heart.* An Opinion that is not fit to be with any Allowance in the World.

*Hon.* You must understand me rightly: He did not say that any Man might do this; but that those that had the Virtues of those that did such Things, might also do the same.

*Great-heart.* But what more false than such a Conclusion? For this is as much as to say, that because good Men heretofore have sinned of Infirmary, therefore he had Allowance to do it of a presumptuous Mind: Or, if because a Child, by the Blast of the Wind, or for that it stumbled

at

at a Stone, fell down and defiled itself in Mire, therefore he might wilfully lie down and wallow like a Boar therein. Who could have thought that any one could so far have been blinded by the Power of Lust? But what is written must be true: *They stumbled at the Word, being disobedient, whereunto also they were appointed,* 1 Peter, ii. 8.

His supposing that such may have the godly Men's Virtues, who addict themselves to their Vices, is also a Delusion as strong as the other. It is just as if the Dogs should say, I have, or may have, the *Qualities of the Child*, because I lick up its stinking Excrements. To eat up the Sin of God's People, *Hof. iv. 8.* is no Sign of one that is possessed with their Virtues. Nor can I believe, that one that is of this Opinion, can at present have Faith or Love in me. But I know you have made some strong objections against him. Pr'y-thee what can he say for himself?

*Hon.* Why, he says, To do this by Way of Opinion, seems abundantly more honest than to do it, and yet hold contrary to it in Opinion.

*Great-heart.* A very wicked Answer: for though to let loose the Bridle to Lusts, whilst our Opinions are against such Things, is bad; yet, to sin, and plead a Toleration so to do, is worse; the one stumbles Beholders accidentally, the other pleads them into the Snare.

*Hon.* There are many of this Man's Mind, that have not this Man's Mouth,

**The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.**

and that makes going on Pilgrimage of so little Esteem as it is.

*Great-heart.* You have said the Truth, and it is to be lamented: But he that feareth the King of *Paradise*, shall come out of them all.

*Christ.* There are strange Opinions in the World. I know one that said it was Time enough to repent when we come to die.

*Great-heart.* Such are not over wise: That Man would have been loth, might he have had a Week to run twenty Miles in his Life, to have deferred that Journey to the last Hour of that Week.

*Hon.* You say right, and yet the Generality of them that count themselves Pilgrims, do indeed do thus. I am, as you see an old Man, and have been a Traveller in this Road many a Day; and I have taken Notice of many Things.

I have seen some that have set out as if they would drive all the World afore them, who yet have in few Days died as they in the Wilderness, and so never got Sight of the *Promised Land*.

I have seen some that have promised nothing at first setting out to be Pilgrims, and that one would have thought could not have lived a Day, that have yet proved very good Pilgrims.

I have seen some who have run hastily forward, that again have, after a little Time, run as fast just back again.

I have seen some who have spoken very well of a Pilgrim's Life at first, that after a while have spoken as much against it.

I have



I have heard some, when they first set out for *Paradise*, say positively, There is such a Place, who when they have been almost there, have come back again, and said there is not.

I have heard some vaunt what they would do in case they should be opposed, that have even at a false Alarm fled Faith, the Pilgrim's Way, and all.

Now as they were thus in their Way, *Fresh News of Trouble.* there came one running to meet them, and said, *Gentlemen, and you of the weaker Sort, if you love Life, shift for yourselves, for the Robbers are before you.*

*Great-heart.* Then said Mr. *Great-heart*, *Part I. Great-heart's Resolution.* they be the Three that set upon *Little-Faith* heretofore. Well, said he, we are ready for them; so they went on their Way: Now they looked at every Turning when they should have met with the Villains: But whether they heard of Mr. *Great-heart*, or whether they had some other Game, they came not up to the Pilgrims.

*Christ.* *Christiana* then wished for an *Christiana Inn* for herself and her Children. because *wisbeth for an Inn.* they were weary. Then said Mr. *Honest*, There is one a little before us, where a very honourable Disciple, one *Gaius*, dwells. So they all concluded to turn in thither, *Rom. xvi. 23.* and the rather, because the old Gentleman gave him so good a Report. So when they came to the *Gaius, they Door, they went in, not knocking, for enter into his House.* Folks use not to knock at the Door of an Inn. Then they called for the Master of the

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

the House, and he came to them : So they asked if they might lie there that Night?

*Gaius entertains them, and how.*

*Gaius.* Yes, Gentlemen, if you be true Men, for my House is for none but Pilgrims. Then was *Christiana*, *Mercy*, and the *Boys*, the more glad, for that the Inn-keeper was a Lover of Pilgrims. So they called for Rooms, and he shewed them one for *Christiana* and her Children, and *Mercy*, and another for Mr. *Great-heart*, and the old Gentleman.

*Great-heart.* Then said Mr. *Great-heart*, good *Gaius*, What hast thou for Supper? for these Pilgrims have come far To-day, and are weary.

*Gaius.* It is late, said *Gaius*, so we cannot conveniently go out to seek Food; but such as we have you shall be welcome to, if that will content you.

*Great-heart.* We will be content with what thou hast in the House; forasmuch as I have proved thee, thou art never destitute of that which is convenient.

*Gaius's Cook.* Then he went down and spake to the Cook, whose Name was, *Taste that which is good*, to get ready Supper for so many Pilgrims. This done, he comes up again, saying, Come my good Friends, you are welcome to me, and I am glad that I have a House to entertain you; and while Supper is making ready, if you please, let us entertain one another with some good Discourse: So they all said, *Content*.

*Talk between Gaius and his Guests.*

*Gaius.* Then said *Gaius*, whose Wife is this aged Matron; and whose Daughter is this young Damsel?

*Great-*

*Great-heart.* The Woman is the Wife of one *Christian*, a Pilgrim of former Times; and these are his four Children. The Maid is one of her Acquaintance; one that she hath persuaded to come with her on Pilgrimage. The Boys take all after their Father, and covet to tread in his Steps: Yea, if they do but see any Place where the old Pilgrim hath lain, or any Print of his Foot, it ministereth Joy to their Hearts, and they covet to lie or tread in the same. *Mark this.*

*Gaius.* Then said *Gaius*, is this *Christian's* Wife, and are these *Christian's* Children? I knew your Husband's Father, yea also his Father's Father. Many have been good of this Stock, their Ancestors dwelt first at *Antioch*. *Christiana's* Progenitors (I suppose you have heard your Husband talk of them) were very worthy Men. They have, above any that I know, shewed themselves Men of great Virtue and Courage, for the Lord of the Pilgrims, his Ways, and them that loved him. I have heard of many of your Husband's Relations that have stood all Trials for the Sake of the Truth. *Stephen*, that was one of the first of the Family, from whence your Husband sprang, was knocked on the Head with Stones, *Acts vii. 59, 60. Chap. xii. 8.* *James*, another of this Generation, was slain with the Edge of the Sword. To say nothing of *Paul* and *Peter*, Men anciently of the Family from whence your Husband came: There was *Ignatius*, who was cast to the Lions: *Romanus*, whose Flesh was cut to Pieces from his Bones; and *Acts xi. 12. Of Christiana's Ancestors.*

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

and *Polycarp*, that played the Man in the Fire. There was he that was hanged up in a Basket in the Sun, for the Wasps to eat; and he whom they put into a Sack, and cast him into the Sea to be drowned. It would be utterly impossible to count up all that Family that have suffered Injuries and Death, for the Love of a Pilgrim's Life. Nor can I but be glad, to see that thy Husband has left behind him four such Boys as these. I hope they will bear up their Father's Name, and tread in their Father's Steps, and come to their Father's End.

*Great-heart*. Indeed, Sir, they are likely Lads: They seem to choose heartily their Father's Ways.

*Advice to  
Christiana  
about her  
Boys.*

*Gaius*. That is it that I said, wherefore *Christian's* Family is like still to spread abroad upon the Face of the Ground, and yet to be numerous upon the Face of the Earth: Wherefore, let *Christiana* look out some *Damsels* for her Sons, to whom they may be betrothed, &c. that the Name of their Father and the House of their Progenitors may never be forgot in the World.

*Hon*. It is a Pity his Family should fall and be extinct.

*Gaius*. Fall it cannot, but be diminished it may; but let *Christiana* take my Advice, and that is the Way to uphold it.

*Mercy and  
Matthew  
marry.*

And *Christiana*, said this Inn-keeper, I am glad to see thee and thy Friend *Mercy* together here, a lovely Couple. And may I advise, Take *Mercy* into a nearer Relation to thee. If she will, let her be given to *Matthew* thy eldest Son: It is the Way



to preserve a Posterity in the Earth. So this Match was concluded, and in Process of Time they were married: But more of that hereafter.

*Gaius* also proceeded, and said, I will now speak on the Behalf of Women, to take away their Reproach. For as Death and the Curse came into the World by a Woman, *Gen. iii.* so also did Life and Health: *God sent forth his Son, made of a Woman, Gal. iv.* Yea, to shew how much those that came after did abhor the Act of the Mother, this Sex in the Old Testament coveted Children, if happily this or that Woman might be the Mother of the Saviour of the World. I will say again, That when the Saviour was come, Women rejoiced in him, before either Man or Angel. *Luke ii. Chap. viii. 2, 3. Chap. vii. 37, 50. John xi. 2. Chap. ii. 3. Luke xxiii. 27. Mat. xxvii. 55, 56, 60. Luke xxiv. 22, 23.* I read not ever Man did give unto Christ so much as one Groat, but Women followed him, and ministered to him of their Substance. It was a Woman that washed his Feet with Tears, and a Woman that anointed his Body to the Burial. They were Women that wept when he was going to the Cross; and Women that followed him from the Cross, and that sat by his Sepulchre when he was buried: They were Women that were first with him at his Resurrection Morn; and Women that brought Tidings first to his Disciples, that he was risen from the Dead: Women therefore are highly favoured, and shew by these Things, that they are Sharers with us in the Grace of Life.

Now

*Supper ready.* Now the Cook sent up to signify that Supper was almost ready, and sent one to lay the Cloth, and the Trenchers, and to set the Salt and Bread in Order.

Then said *Matthew*, the Sight of this Cloth, and of this Fore-runner of the Supper, begetteth in me a greater Appetite to my Food than I had before.

*What is to be gathered from laying of the Bread with the Cloth and Trenchers.* *Gaius*. So let all ministering Doctrines to thee in this Life, beget in thee a greater Desire to sit at the Supper of the Great King in his Kingdom; for all Preaching, Books, and Ordinances here, are but as the laying of the Trenchers, and as setting of Salt upon the Board, when compared with the Feast that our Lord will make us when we come to his House.

*Levit. vii. 32, 33, 34. ch. x. 14, 15. Psalm xxv. 1 Heb. xiii. 15. Deut. xxxii. Judg. ix. 13. Job, xv. 5.* So Supper came up, and first a *Heave-Shoulder* and a *Weave-Breast* were set on the Table before them: To shew that they must begin the *Meal* with Prayer and Praise to God. The *Heave-Shoulder David* lifted his Heart up to God with, and with the *Weave-Breast, where his Heart lay*, with that he used to lean upon his Harp, when he played. These two Dishes were very fresh and good, and they all eat heartily thereof.

The next they brought up, was a Bottle of Wine, as red as Blood. So *Gaius* said to them, Drink freely, this is the true Juice of the Vine, that makes glad the Heart of God and Man. So they drank and were merry.

*Dish of Milk.* The next was a Dish of Milk well crumbled: But *Gaius* said, *Let the Boys have*

*have that, that they may grow thereby, 1 Pet.*

*ii. 1, 2.*

Then they brought up in Course a *Dish of Butter and Honey*. Then said *Gaius*, *Butter*.  
eat freely of this, for this is good to chear  
up, and strengthen your Judgments and  
Understandings. This was our Lord's Dish  
when he was a Child: *Butter and Honey* Isa. vii. 15.  
*shall be eat, that he may know how to refuse  
the Evil, and choose the Good*

Then they brought him up a Dish of *Apples*, and they were very good tasted *Apples*.  
Fruit. Then said *Matthew*, may we eat  
Apples, since they were such by and  
with which the Serpent beguiled our first  
Mother?

Then said *Gaius*,

*Apples were they with which we were be-  
guil'd,  
Yet Sin, not Apples, bath our Souls defil'd;  
Apples forbid, if eat, corrupt the Blood:  
To eat such, when commanded, does us good;  
Drink of his Flaggons then, thou Church his  
Dove,  
And eat his Apples, who are sick of Love.*

Then said *Matthew*, I made the Scruple  
because I a while since was sick with eating  
of Fruit.

*Gaius*. Forbidden Fruit will make you  
sick, but not what our Lord has tolerated.

While they were thus talking, they were  
presented with another Dish, and it was a *Dish of* *Song vi. 11.*  
*Nuts.*

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

Dish of *Nuts*. Then said some at the Table, *Nuts* spoil tender Teeth, especially the Teeth of Children: Which when *Gaius* heard, he said:

*Hard Texts are Nuts, (I will not call them  
Cheaters,  
Whose Shells do keep their Kernels from the  
Eaters)  
Open then the Shells, and you shall have the  
Meat,  
They here are brought, for you to crack and  
eat.*

Then were they very merry, and sat at the Table a long Time, talking of many Things: Then said the old Gentleman, My good Landlord, while ye are here cracking your *Nuts*, if you please, do you open this Riddle.

[A Riddle put forth by old *Honest*.]

*A Man there was, though some do count him  
mad,  
The more he cast away, the more he had.*

Then they all gave good Heed, wondering what good *Gaius* would say; so he sat still a while, and then thus replied:

[*Gaius* opens it.]

*He who thus bestows his Goods upon the Poor,  
Shall have as much again, and ten Times  
more.*

Then



\* Then said *Joseph*, I dare say, Sir, I did \* *Joseph*  
not think you could have found it out. *wonders.*

Oh ! said *Gaius*, I have been trained up  
in this Way a great While: Nothing  
teaches like Experience; I have found  
by Experience, that I have gained there-  
by. *There is that scattereth, yet increaseth; Prov. xi. 24.*  
*and there is that withholdeth more than is meet, Chap. xvii. 3.*  
*but it tendeth to Poverty: There is that maketh*  
*himself Rich yet hath nothing; there is that*  
*maketh himself Poor yet hath great Riches.*

Then *Samuel* whispered to *Christiana*, his  
Mother, and said, Mother, this is a very  
good Man's House, let us stay here a good  
While, and let my Brother *Matthew* be  
married here to *Mercy*, before we go any  
farther.

† The which *Gaius* the Host over-hear- † *Matthew*  
ing said, *With a very good Will, my Child.* *and Mercy*

So they stayed here more than a Month, *are married.*  
and *Mercy* was given to *Matthew* to Wife.

While they stayed here, *Mercy*, as her  
Custom was, would be making Coats and  
Garments to give to the Poor, by which  
she brought a very good Report upon  
Pilgrims.

† But to return again to our Story: Af- † *The Boys go*  
ter Supper the Lads desired a Bed, for *to Bed, the*  
they were weary with Travelling: Then *rest sit up.*

*Gaius* called to shew them their Chamber;  
but said *Mercy*, I will have them to Bed.  
So she had them to Bed, and they slept  
well, but the rest sat up all Night: For  
*Gaius* and they were such suitable Com-  
pany, that they could not tell how to part.  
Then after much Talk of their Lord, them-

A a selves,

\* Old Honest  
nods.

themselves, and their Journey, \* old Mr. *Honest*, he that put forth the Riddle to *Gaius*, began to nod. Then said *Great-beart*, What, Sir, you begin to be drowsy; Come, rub up, now here is a *Riddle* for you. Then said Mr. *Honest*, Let us hear it.

Then said Mr. *Great-beart*,

[ A Riddle. ]

*He that will kill, must first be overcome :  
Who live abroad would, first must die at home.*

Ha ! said Mr. *Honest*, it is a hard One, hard to expound, and harder to practise. But come, Landlord, said he, I will, if you please, leave my Part to you, do you expound it, and I will hear what you say.

No, said *Gaius*, it was put to you, and it is expected you should answer it.

Then said the old Gentleman,

[ The Riddle opened. ]

*He first by Grace must conquer'd be,  
That Sin would mortify :  
Who, that he lives, would convince me,  
Unto himself must die.*

It is right, said *Gaius*, good Doctrine and Experience teaches this. For, first, until Grace displays itself, and overcomes the Soul with it's Glory, it is altogether without Heart to oppose Sin; besides, if  
Sin

Sin is Satan's Cords, by which the Soul lies bound, how should it make Resistance, before it is loosed from that Infirmary?

*Secondly*, Nor will any, that knows either Reason or Grace, believe that such a Man can be a living Monument of Grace, that is a Slave to his own Corruption.

\* And now it comes in my Mind, I will tell you a Story worth the Hearing. There were two Men that went on a Pilgrimage, the One began when he was young, the other when he was old: The young Man had strong corruptions to grapple with, the old Man's were weak with the Decays of Nature: The young Man trod his Steps as even did the old One, and was every way as light as he: Who now, or which of them had their Graces shining clearest, since both seemed to be alike?

*\* A Question worth the minding.*

*Hon.* † The young Man, doubtless. For that which heads it against the greatest Opposition, gives best Demonstration that it is strongest; especially when it also holdeth Pace with that that meets not with half so much: as to be sure old Age does not.

*† A Comparison.*

Besides I have observed, ‡ That old Men have blessed themselves with this Mistake; Namely, taking the Decays of Nature for a gracious Conquest over Corruptions, and so have been apt to beguile themselves. Indeed old Men that are gracious, are best able to give Advice to them that are young, because they have seen most of the Emptiness of Things: But yet, for an old and a young Man to set out both together, the young One has the Advan-

*‡ A Mistake.*

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

tage of the fairest Discovery of a Work of Grace within him, though the old Man's Corruptions are naturally the weakest.

Thus they sat talking till Break of Day. Now, when the Family was up, *Christiana* bid her Son *James* that he should read a Chapter; so he read the 53d of *Isaiab*:  
 \* When he had done, Mr. *Honest* asked why it was said, *That the Saviour is said to come out of a dry Ground, and also that he had no Form or Comeliness in Him?*

\* Another Question.

*Great-heart*. Then said Mr. *Great-heart*; To the first I answer; Because the Church of the *Jews*, of which Christ came, had then almost lost all the Sap, and Spirit of Religion. To the second I say, the Words are spoken in the Person of the Unbelievers, who, because they want the Eye that can see into our Prince's Heart, therefore they judge of him by the Meanness of his Outside.

Just like those, that know not that precious Stones are covered over with a homely Crust; who when they have found one, because they know not what they have found, cast it again away, as Men do a common Stone.

Well said *Gaius*, now you are here, and since, as I know, Mr. *Great-heart* is good at his Weapons, if you please, after we have refreshed ourselves, we will walk into the Fields, to see if we can do any Good. About a Mile from hence, there is † one *Slay-good*, a Giant that does much annoy the King's Highway in these Parts: And I know whereabouts his Haunt is,

† Giant Slay-Good assaulted and slain.



is, he is Master of a Number of Thieves; it would be well if we could clear these Parts of him.

So they consented and went, Mr. *Great-heart* with his *Sword, Helmet, and Shield*; and the rest with *Spears and Staves*.

\* When they came to the Place where \* *He is found* he was, they found him with one *Feeble-*<sup>with one</sup>  
*mind* in his Hand, whom his Servants had <sup>Feeble-mind</sup>  
brought unto him, having taken him in <sup>in his Hand</sup>  
the Way; now the *Giant* was rising him, with a Purpose, after that, to pick his Bones; for he was of the Nature of *Flesh-Eaters*.

Well, so soon as he saw Mr. *Great-heart*, and his Friends at the Mouth of the Cave, with their Weapons, he demanded what they wanted.

*Great-heart*. We want thee, for we are come to revenge the Quarrels of the many that thou hast slain of the Pilgrims, when thou hast dragged them out of the King's Highway; wherefore come out of thy Cave. So he armed himself and came out, and to Battle they went, and fought for above an Hour, and then stood still to take Wind.

*Slay*. Then said the Giant, Why are you here on my Ground?

*Great-heart*. To revenge the Blood of Pilgrims, as I told thee before. So they went to it again, and the Giant made Mr. *Great-heart* give back; but he came up again, and in the Greatness of his Mind he let fly with such Stoutness at the Giant's Head and Sides, that he made him let his Weapon fall out of his Hand;

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

\* Feeble-  
mind rescued  
from the  
Giant.

so he smote him, and slew him, and cut off his Head, and brought it away to the Inn. \* He also took *Feeble-mind* the Pilgrim, and brought him with him to his Lodgings. When they were come Home, they shewed his Head to the Family, and set it up as they had done others before, for a Terror to those that shall attempt to do as he, hereafter.

Then they asked Mr. *Feeble-mind*, how he fell into his Hands ?

† How Feeble-mind came to be a Pilgrim.

*Feeble-mind*. † Then said the poor Man, I am a sickly Man, as you see, and because *Death* did usually once a Day knock at the Door, I thought I should never be well at Home : So I betook myself to a Pilgrim's Life ; and have travelled hither from the Town of *Uncertain*, where I and my Father were born. I am a Man of no Strength at all of Body, nor yet of mind, but would if I could, though I can but *crawl*, spend my Life in the Pilgrim's Way. When I came at the Gate that is at the Head of the Way, the Lord of that Place did entertain me freely ; neither objected he against my weakly Looks, nor against my *feeble Mind* ; but gave me such Things that were necessary for my Journey, and bid me hope to the End. When I came to the House of the *Interpreter*, I received much Kindness there ; and because the Hill of *Difficulty* was judged too hard for me, I was carried up that by one of his Servants. Indeed I have found much Relief from Pilgrims, though none was willing to go so softly as I am forced to do : Yet still as they

came on, they bid me be of good Chear, and said, That it was the Will of their Lord, that Comfort should be given to the *Feeble-minded*, and so went on their own Pace. When I was come to *Affault-Lane*, then this Giant met with me, and bid me prepare for an *Encounter*: But alas! feeble one that I was, I had more Need of a *Cordial*: So he came up and took me: I conceived he should not kill me: Also when he had got me into his Den, since I went not with him willingly, I believed I should come out alive again: For I have heard, \* That not any Pilgrim \* *Mark this.* that is taken Captive by violent Hands, if he keeps Heart-whole towards his Master, is, by the Laws of Providence, to die by the Hand of the Enemy. Robbed I looked to be, and robbed to be sure I am; but I am, as you see, escaped with Life, for the which I thank my King as Author, and you as the Means. Other Brunts I also look for, but this I have resolved on, to wit, to run when I can, to go when I cannot run, and to creep when I cannot go. † As to the Main, I † *Mark this.* thank him that loved me, I am fixed; my Way is before me, my Mind is beyond the River that has no Bridge, though I am as you see, but of a *feeble Mind*.

*Hon.* Then said old Mr. *Honest*, have not you some Time ago been acquainted with one ‡ Mr. *Fearing*, a Pilgrim?

*Feeb.* Acquainted with him, Yes; he came from the Town of *Stupidity*, which lieth four Degrees *Northward* of the City of *Destruction*, and as many off of

*Mr. Fearing,*  
*Mr. Feeble-*  
*mind's*  
*Uncle.*

where I was born; yet we were well acquainted, for indeed he was my Uncle, my Father's Brother; he and I have been much of a Temper, he was a little shorter than I, but yet we were much of a Complexion.

\* Feeble-mind has some of Mr. Fear-  
ing's Fea-  
tures.

Hon. \* I perceive you know him, and I am apt to believe also, That you were related to one another; for you have his whitely Look, a Cast like his with your Eye, and your Speech is much alike.

Feeb. Most have said so, that have known us both; and besides what I have read in him, I have for the most Part found in myself.

† Gaius com-  
forts him.

Gaius. † Come, Sir, said good Gaius, be of good Chear, you are welcome to me, and to my House, and what thou hast a Mind to, call for freely; and what thou wouldest have my Servants do for thee, they will do it with a ready Mind.

‡ Notice to be  
taken of Pro-  
vidence.

‡ Then said Mr. Feeble-mind, This is an unexpected Favour, and as the Sun shining out of a very dark Cloud: Did Giant Slay-good intend me this Favour when he stopped me, and resolved to let me go no farther? Did he intend, that, after he had rifled my Pocket, I should go to Gaius mine Host? yet so it is.

§ Tidings how  
one Not-right  
was slain by a  
Thunderbolt,  
and Mr. Fee-  
ble-mind's  
Comment up-  
on it.

§ Now, just as Mr. Feeble-mind and Gaius were thus in Talk, there comes one running, and called at the Door, and told, That about a Mile and a half off, there was one Mr. Not-right, a Pilgrim, struck dead upon the Place where he was, with a Thunderbolt.

Feeb.



*Feeb.* Alas! said Mr. *Feeble-mind*, is he slain? He overtook me some Days before I came so far as hither, and would be my Company-keeper: He also was with me when *Slay-good* the Giant took me, but he he was nimble of his Heels and escaped: But it seems he escaped to die, and I was took to live.

*What, one would think, doth seek to slay  
outright,  
Oft-times delivers from the saddest Plight.  
That very Providence, whose Faith is Death,  
Doth oft-times to the lowly Life bequeath:  
I taken was, he did escape and flee;  
Hands crost, give Death to him, and Life  
to me.*

Now about this time, *Matthew* and *Mercy* were married; also *Gaius* gave his Daughter *Phæbe*, to *James*, *Matthew's* Brother, to Wife; after which Time, they yet staid about ten Days at *Gaius's* House; spending their Time, and the Seasons like as Pilgrims used to do.

When they were to depart, *Gaius* made <sup>\* *The Pil-*</sup> them a Feast, and they did eat and drink, <sup>*grims prepare*</sup> and were merry. Now the Hour was <sup>*to go forward.*</sup> come that they must be gone; wherefore Mr. *Great-heart* called for a Reckoning. But *Gaius* told him, That at his House it was not the Custom of Pilgrims to pay for their Entertainment. He boarded them by the Year, but looked for his <sup>Luke x. 34,</sup> Pay from the good *Samaritan*, who had <sup>53.</sup> promised

\* *How they  
greet one ano-  
ther at part-  
ing.*

promised him, at his Return, whatsoever Charge he was at with them, faithfully to repay. Then said Mr. *Great-heart* to him,

3 John v. 6.

*Great-heart*. Beloved, thou dost faithfully, whatsoever thou dost, to the Brethren and to Strangers, which have borne Witness of thy Charity before the Church, whom if thou (yet) bring forward on their Journey, after a Godly Sort, thou shalt do well.

† *Gaius's last  
Kindness to  
Feeble-  
mind.*

† Then *Gaius* took his Leave of them all, and his Children, and particularly of Mr. *Feeble-mind*. He also gave him something to drink by the Way.

Now Mr. *Feeble-mind*, when they were going out of the Door, made as if he intended to linger. The which when Mr. *Great-heart* espied, he said, Come, Mr. *Feeble-mind*, pray do you go along with us, I will be your Conductor, and you shall fare as the rest.

‡ *Feeble-  
mind, for go-  
ing behind.*

‡ *Feeb.* Alas! I want a suitable Companion; you are lusty and strong, but I, as you see, am weak; I choose therefore rather to come behind, lest by Reason of my many Infirmities, I should be both a Burden to myself and to you. I am, as I said, a Man of a weak and feeble Mind, and shall be offended and made weak at that which others can bear. I shall like no Laughing: I shall like no gay Attire: I shall like no unprofitable Questions. Nay, I am so weak a Man, as to be offended with that which others have a Liberty to do. I do not know all the Truth: I am a very ignorant *Christian*

§ *His Excuse  
for it.*

*Man:*

*Man*: Sometimes if I hear any rejoice in the Lord it troubles me, because I cannot do so too. It is with me, as it is with a weak Man among the Strong, or as a Lamp despised; (he that is ready to slip with his Feet, is a *Lamp* despised in the Thought of him that is at *Ease*;) so that I know not what to do.

\* *Great-heart*. But Brother, said Mr. \* *Great-heart*, I have it in Commission to heart's Com- comfort the *Feeble-minded*, and to support *mission*. the Weak. You must needs go along with 1 Thes. v. 15. us; we will wait for you, we will lend you Rom. xiv. our Help; we will deny ourselves of some 1 Cor. viii. 9, Things both *Opinionative* and *Practical*, for 22. + *A Christian* your Sake: We will not enter into doubt- *Spirit*. ful Disputations before you; we will be Psal. xxxviii. made all Things to you, rather than you 16. shall be left behind.

Now all this While they were at *Gaius's* Door; and behold as they were thus in the Heat of their Discourse, Mr. *Ready-to-halt* came by, with his Crutches in his Hand, and he also was going on Pilgrimage.

*Feeb.* Then said Mr. *Feeble-mind* to him, How camest thou hither? I was but now complaining that I had not a suitable Companion, but thou art according to my Wish. Welcome, welcome, good Mr. *Ready-to-halt*, I hope thou and I may be some Help.

*Ready-to-halt*. ‡ I shall be glad of thy \* *Feeble-Company*, said the other; and good Mr. *mind glad to* *Feeble-mind*, rather than we will part, since *see Ready-to-* we are thus happily met, I will lend thee *halt come*. one of my Crutches.

*Feebl.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*Feebl.* Nay, said he, though I thank thee for thy Good-will, I am not inclined to halt before I am lame. Howbeit, I think, when Occasion is, it may help me against a Dog.

*Ready-to-halt.* If either myself or my Crutches can do thee a Pleasure, we are both at thy Command, good Mr. *Feeble-mind*.

Thus therefore they went on. Mr. *Great-heart* and Mr. *Honest* went before, *Christiana* and her Children went next, and Mr. *Feeble-mind* and Mr. *Ready-to-halt* came behind with his Crutches. Then said Mr. *Honest*,

• *New Talk.* *Hon.* \* Pray, Sir, now we are upon the Road, tell us some profitable Things of some that have gone on Pilgrimage before us.

*Part I. from  
page 65. to  
page 120.*

*Great-heart.* With a good Will: I suppose you have heard how *Christian* of Old did meet with *Apollyon* in the Valley of *Humiliation*, and also what hard Work he had to go through the Valley of the *Shadow of Death*. Also I think you cannot but have heard how *Faithful* was put to it by *Madam Wanton*, with *Adam* the First, with one *Discontent* and *Shame*: Four as deceitful Villains, as a Man can meet with upon the Road.

*Hon.* Yes, I believe I heard of all this; but indeed good *Faithful* was hardest put to it with *Shame*; he was an unwearied one.

*Great-heart.* Ay, for as the Pilgrim well said, He of all Men had the wrong Name.

*Hon.*



*Hon.* But pray, Sir, where was it that *Christian* and *Faithful* met *Talkative*? That same was also a Notable One.

*Great-beart.* He was a confident Fool, yet many follow his Ways.

*Hon.* He had like to have beguiled *Faithful*.

*Great-beart.* Ay, but *Christian* put him into a Way quickly to find him out. Thus they went on till they came at the Place *Part I. page* where *Evangelist* met with *Christian* and *Faithful*, and prophesied to them what should befall them at *Vanity-Fair*. 106.

*Great-beart.* Then said their Guide, Hereabouts did *Christian* and *Faithful* meet with *Evangelist*, who prophesied to them of what Troubles they should meet with at *Vanity-Fair*.

*Hon.* Say you so! I dare say it was a hard Chapter that then he did read unto them.

*Great-beart.* It was so, but he gave them *Part I. page* Encouragement withal. But what do we 108. talk of them, they were a Couple of Lion-like Men; they had set their Faces like Flints. Do not you remember how undaunted they were when they stood before the Judge?

*Hon.* Well, *Faithful* bravely suffered.

*Great-beart.* So he did, and as brave Things came on it: For *Hopeful* and some others, as the Story relates it, were converted by his Death. *Part I. page* 120.

*Hon.* Well, but pray go on; for you are well acquainted with Things.

*Great-*

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*Great-heart.* Above all that *Christian* met with after he had passed through *Vanity-Fair*, one *By-Ends* was the Arch-one.

*Hon. By-Ends*, what was he?

*Great-heart.* A very Arch-Fellow, a down-right Hypocrite; one that would be religious which Way ever the World went; but so Cunning, that he would be sure never to lose or suffer for it.

He had his Mode of Religion for every fresh Occasion, and his Wife was as good at it as he. He would turn from Opinion to Opinion; yea, and plead for so doing too. But as far as I could learn, he came to an ill End with his *By-Ends*; nor did I ever hear that any of his Children were ever of any Esteem with any that truly feared God.

\* They come  
within Sight  
of *Vanity-*  
*Fair*.  
Psal. xxi. 16.

\* Now by this Time they were come within Sight of the Town of *Vanity*, where *Vanity-Fair* is kept. So when they saw that they were so near the Town, they consulted with one another how they should pass through the Town, and some said one Thing, and some another. At last Mr. *Great-heart* said, I have, as you may understand, often been a Conductor of Pilgrims through this Town; now I am acquainted with one Mr. *Mnaſon*, a *Cyprian* by Nation, an old Disciple, † at whose House we may lodge. If you think good, said, he, we will turn in there.

† They enter  
into Mr. Mna-  
ſon's to lodge.

Content, said Old *Honest*; Content, said *Christian*; Content, said Mr. *Feeble-mind*; and so they said all. Now, you must think, it was Even-tide by that they  
got

got to the Out-side of the Town; but Mr. *Great-heart* knew the Way to the old Man's House. So thither they came; and they called at the Door, and the old Man within knew his Tongue so soon as ever he heard it; so he opened, and they all came in. Then said *Mnason*, their Host, How far have you come To-day? So they said, from the House of *Gaius* your Friend. I promise you, said he, you have gone a good Stretch, you may well be weary; sit you down. So they sat down.

*Great-heart*. Then said their Guide, Come, what Chear, good Sirs, I dare say you are welcome to my Friend.

*Mnason*. \* I also, said Mr. *Mnason*, do bid \* *They are* you welcome; and whatever you want, *glad of Enter-* do but say, and we will do what we can to *tainment.* get it for you.

*Hon.* Our Great Want, a while since, was Harbour and good Company, and now I hope we have both.

*Mnason*. For Harbour you see what it is; but for good Company, that will appear in the Trial.

*Great-heart*. Well, said Mr. *Great-heart*, will you have the Pilgrims into their Lodging?

*Mnason*. I will, said Mr. *Mnason*. So he had them to their respective Places; and also shewed them a very fair Dining-Room, where they may be, and sup together, until Time was come to go to Rest.

Now when they were set in their Places, and were a little cheary after their Journey, Mr. *Honest* asked his Landlord, if there

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

there were any Store of good People in the Town?

*Mnason.* We have a few, for indeed they are but a few, when compared with them on the other Side.

• They desire  
to see some of  
the good People  
in the Town.

*Hon.* But how should we do to see some of them? For the Sight of good Men to them that are going on Pilgrimage, is like to the Appearing of the Moon and Stars to them that are going a Journey.

† Some sent  
for.

*Mnason.* Then Mr. *Mnason* stamped with his Foot, and his Daughter *Grace* came up: So he said unto her, *Grace*, go you, tell my Friends, Mr. *Contrite*, Mr. *Holyman*, Mr. *Love-saints*, Mr. *Dare-not-lye*, and Mr. *Penitent*, that I have a Friend or two at my House that have a Mind this Evening to see them.

So *Grace* went to call them, and they came; and after Salutation made, they sat down together at Table.

Then said Mr. *Mnason*, their Landlord, My Neighbours, I have, as you see, a Company of Strangers come to my House, they are Pilgrims: They come from afar, and are going to Mount *Zion*. But who, quoth he, do you think this is? pointing his Finger at *Christiana*: It is *Christiana*, the Wife of *Christian*, that famous Pilgrim, who with *Faithful* his Brother, were so shamefully handled in our Town. At that they stood amazed, saying, We little thought to see *Christiana*, when *Grace* came to call us, wherefore this is a very comfortable Surprise. Then they asked her about her Welfare, and if these young Men were



were her Husband's Sons. And when she had told them they were, they said, The King whom you love and serve, make you as your Father, and bring you where he is in Peace.

*Hon.* \* Then Mr. *Honest* (when they were all sat down) asked Mr. *Contrite* and the rest, in what Posture their Town was at present. *\* Some Talk betwixt Mr. Honest and Mr. Contrite.*

*Contrite.* - You may be sure we are full of Hurry in Fair-Time. It is hard keeping † our Hearts and Spirits in good Order, when we are in a cumbered Condition. *† The Fruit of Watchfulness.* He that lives in such a Place as this, and that has to do with such as we have, has Need of an *Item*, to caution him to take Heed every Moment of the Day.

*Honest.* But how are your Neighbours now for Quietness?

*Contrite.* ‡ They are much more moderate now than formerly. You know how *Christian* and *Faithful* were used at our Town: But of late, I say, they have been far more moderate. I think the Blood of *Faithful* lieth with Load upon them till now; for since they burned him, they have been ashamed to burn any more; in those Days we were afraid to walk the Streets, but now we can shew our Heads. Then the Name of a Professor was odious; now, especially in some Parts of our Town, (for you know our Town is large) Religion is counted honourable. *‡ Persecution not so hot at Vanity-Fair as formerly.*

Then said Mr. *Contrite* to them, Pray how fareth it with you in your Pilgrimage? How stands the Country affected towards you?

B b

*Hon.*

**The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.**

*Hon.* It happens to us, as it happeneth to Way-faring Men, sometimes our Way is clean, sometimes foul; sometimes up Hill, sometimes down Hill; we are seldom at a certainty: The Wind is not always on our Backs, nor is every one a Friend that we meet with in the Way. We have met with some notable Rubs already; and what are yet behind we know not; but for the most Part we find it true, that has been talked of Old: *A good Man must suffer Trouble.*

*Contrite.* You talk of Rubs, what Rubs have you met withal?

*Hon.* Nay, ask Mr. *Great-heart*, our Guide, for he can give the best Account of that.

*Great-heart.* We have been beset three or four Times already. First, *Christiana* and her Children were beset with two Ruffians, that they feared would take away their Lives. We were beset with *Giant Bloody-man*, *Giant Maul*, and *Giant Slay-good*. Indeed we did rather beset the last, than were beset of him. And thus it was: After we had been some Time at the House of *Gaius*, mine *Hest*, and of the whole Church, we were minded upon a Time to take our Weapons with us, and so go see if we could light upon any of those that were Enemies to *Pilgrims*; (for we heard that there was a Notable One thereabouts.) Now *Gaius* knew his *Haunt* better than I, because he dwelt thereabout; so we looked and looked, till at last we discerned the Mouth of his Cave; then were we glad, and plucked

plucked up our Spirits. So we approached up to his Den, and lo, when we came there, he had dragged, by mere Force, into his Net, this poor Man, Mr. *Feeble-mind*, and was about to bring him to his End. But when he saw us, supposing, as we thought, he had another Prey, he left the poor Man in his House, and came out. So we fell to it full fore, and he lustily laid about him; but, in Conclusion, he was brought down to the Ground, and his Head cut off, and set up by the Way-side, for a Terror to such as should after practise such Ungodliness. That I tell you the Truth, here is the Man himself to affirm it, who was as a Lamb taken out of the Mouth of the Lion.

*Feeble-mind.* Then said Mr. *Feeble-mind*, I found this true, to my Cost and Comfort; to my Cost, when he threatened to pick my Bones every Moment; and to my Comfort, when I saw Mr. *Great-heart* and his Friends, with their Weapons, approach so near for my Deliverance.

*Holy-Man.* \* Then said Mr. *Holy-man*, \* Mr. *Holy*, there are two Things that they have need *man's Speech.* to be possessed with that go on Pilgrimage, *Courage*, and an *Unspotted Life*. If they have not *Courage*, they can never hold on their Way; and if their Lives be loose, they will make the very Name of a Pilgrim stink.

*Love-saint.* † Then said Mr. *Love-saint*, † Mr. *Love*, I hope this Caution is not needful among *saint's Speech.* you. But truly there are many that go upon the Road, that rather declare them-

**The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.**

selves Strangers to Pilgrimage, than Strangers and Pilgrims in the Earth.

• *Mr. Dare-not-lye's Speech.*

*Dare-not-lye.* \* Then said Mr. *Dare-not-lye*, It is true, they neither have the Pilgrim's *Weed*, nor the Pilgrim's *Courage*; they go not uprightly, but all *awry* with their Feet; one Shoe goeth *inward*, another *outward*, and their Hosen out behind; here a Rag, and there a Rent, to the Disparagement of their Lord.

† *Mr. Penitent's Speech.*

*Penitent.* † These Things, said Mr. *Penitent*, they ought to be troubled for; nor are the Pilgrims like to have that Grace upon them and their *Pilgrim's Progress*, as they desire, until the Way is cleared of such Spots and Blemishes.

Thus they sat talking and spending the Time, until Supper was set upon the Table. Unto which they went and refreshed their weary Bodies; so they went to Rest. Now they stayed in the Fair a great While, at the House of Mr. *Mnaſon*, who, in Process of Time, gave his Daughter *Grace* unto *Samuel*, *Christiana's* Son to wife, and his Daughter *Martha* to *Joſeph*.

The Time, as I ſaid, that they lay here, was long; (for it was not now as in former Times.) Wherefore the Pilgrims grew acquainted with many of the good People of the Town, and did them what Service they could. *Mercy*, as ſhe was wont, laboured much for the Poor, wherefore their Bellies and Backs bleſſed her, and ſhe was there an Ornament to her Profeſſion. And, to ſay the Truth for *Grace*, *Phæbe*, and *Martha*, they were all of a very good Nature, and did much

Good



## PART II. *The Pilgrim's Progress.*

147

Good in their Places. They were also all of them very fruitful; so that *Christiana's* Name, as was said before, was like to live in the World.

While they lay here, \* there came a *Mon- \* A Monster.*  
ster out of the Woods, and slew many of the People of the Town. It would also carry away their Children, and teach them to suck its Whelps. Now no Man in the Town durst so much as face this *Monster*; but all Men fled when they heard of the Noise of his Coming.

The *Monster* was like unto no one Beast upon the Earth: Its Body was like a Dragon, and it had seven Heads and ten Horns. † *It made great Havock of Children, † His Shape,*  
and it was governed by a Woman. † This † *His Nature.*  
*Monster* propounded Conditions to Men; and such Men as loved their Lives more than their Souls, accepted of these Conditions.

Now Mr. *Great-heart*, together with these, who came to visit the Pilgrims at Mr. *Mnason's* House entered into a Covenant to go and engage this Beast; if perhaps they might deliver the People of this Town from the Paws, and Mouth of this so devouring a Serpent.

Then did Mr. *Great-heart*, Mr. *Contrite*, Mr. *Holy-man*, Mr. *Dare-not-lye*, and Mr. *Penitent*, with their Weapons, go forth to meet him. † Now the *Monster* at first was § *How so en-*  
very Rampant, and looked upon these gage,  
Enemies with great Disdain; but they so belaboured him, being sturdy Men at Arms, that they made him make a Re-  
B b 3 treat:

treat: So they came home to Mr. *Mnasion's* House again.

The *Monster*, you must know had his certain Seasons to come out in, and to make his Attempts upon the Children of the People of the Town: Also these Seasons did these Valiant Worthies watch him in, and did continually assault him; inso-much that in Process of Time he became not only wounded but lame; also he had not made the Havock of the Towns-Men's Children, as formerly he had done. And it is verily believed by some, that this Beast will certainly die of his Wounds.

This therefore made Mr. *Great heart* and his Fellows of great Fame in this Town; so that many of the People that wanted their Taste of Things, yet had a Reverend Esteem and Respect for them. Upon this Account therefore it was, that these Pilgrims got not much Hurt here. True, there were some of the baser Sort, that could see no more than a *Male*, nor understand no more than a Beast; these had no Reverence for these Men, nor took they Notice of their Valour and Adventures.

Well, the Time grew on that the Pilgrims must go on their Way, wherefore they prepared for their Journey. They sent for their Friends, they conferred with them, they had some Time set apart therein to commit each other to the Protection of their Prince. There were again, that brought them of such Things as they had, that were fit for the Weak and the Strong, for the Women and the Men,

and

and

## PART II. The Pilgrim's Progress.

149

and so laded them with such Things as were necessary, *As*, xxviii. 10.

Then they set forwards on their Way, and their Friends accompanying them so far as was convenient, they again committed each other to the Protection of their King, and departed.

They therefore that were of the Pilgrim's Company, went on, and Mr. *Great-heart* went before them; now the Women and Children being weakly, they were forced to go as they could bear; by this Means Mr. *Ready-to-halt* and Mr. *Feeble-mind* had more to sympathise with their Condition.

When they were gone from the Townsmen, and when their Friends had bid them farewell, they quickly came to the Place where *Faithful* was put to Death; therefore they made a Stand, and thanked him that had enabled them to bear his Cross so well; and the rather because they now found that they had a Benefit by such a Man's Sufferings as his was.

They went on therefore after this, a good Way further, talking of *Christian* and *Faithful*, and how *Hopeful* joined himself to *Christian*, after that *Faithful* was dead. *Part I. p. 123.*

Now, they were come up with the Hill *Lucre*, where the *Silver-Mine* was, which took *Demas* off from his Pilgrimage, and into which, as some think, *By-ends* fell and perished; wherefore they considered that. But when they were come to the old Monument that stood over-against the Hill *Lucre*, to wit, to the Pillar of

Salt, that stood also within View of *Sodom* and its stinking Lake; they marvelled, *Part I. p. 137.* as did *Christian* before, that Men of that Knowledge and Ripeness of Wit as they were, should be so blind as to turn aside here. Only they considered again, that Nature is not affected with the Harms that others have met with, especially if that Thing upon which they look, has an attracting Virtue upon the foolish Eye.

I saw now that they went on till they came to the River, that was on this Side *Part I. p. 152.* of the *Delectable Mountains*.

To the River where the fine Trees grow on both Sides; and whose Leaves, if taken inwardly, are good against Surfeits, *Psalms* xxiii. where the Meadows are green all the Year long, and where they might lie down safely.

By this River Side, in the Meadows, there were Cotes and Folds for Sheep, a House built for the nourishing and bringing up of those Lambs, the Babes of those Women that go on Pilgrimage, *Heb. v. 2. Isa. xl. 11.* Also there was here one that was entrusted with them, who could have Compassion, and that could gather these Lambs with his Arm, and carry them in his Bosom, and that could gently lead those that were with Young. Now to the Care of *this Man*, *Christiana* admonished her four Daughters to commit their little Ones, that by these Waters they might be housed, harboured, succoured, and nourished, and that none of them might be lacking in Time to come. This Man,



## PART II. *The Pilgrim's Progress.* 151

Man, if any of them go astray, or be lost, he will bring them again; he will also bind up that which was broken, and will strengthen them that are sick. Here they will never want Meat, Drink, and Cloathing; here they will be kept from Thieves, and Robbers; for this Man will die before one of those committed to his Trust shall be lost. Besides, here they shall be sure to have *Good Nurture* and *Admonition*, and shall be taught to walk in right Paths, and that you know is a Favour of no small Account. Also here, as you see, are delicate *Waters*, pleasant *Meadows*, dainty *Flowers*, Variety of *Trees*, and such as bear wholesome Fruit: Fruit not like that which *Matthew* eat of, that fell over the Wall, out of *Beelzebub's* Garden: But Fruit that procureth Health where there is none, and that continueth and increaseth where it is.

So they were content to commit their little Ones to him; and that which was also an Encouragement to them so to do, was, for that all this was to be at the Charge of the King, and so was an Hospital to young Children and Orphans.

Now they went on; \* and when they \* *They being* were come to *By-Path* Meadow, to the *come to By-* Stile over which *Christian* went with his *path Stile* Fellow *Hopeful*, when they were taken by *have a Mind* *Giant Despair*, and put into *Doubting-Castle*; *to have a* they sat down, and consulted what was *Pluck with* best to be done; to wit, now they were *Giant De-* so strong, and had got such a Man as Mr. *spair, Part I.* *P. 141.* *Great-heart* for their Conductor, whether they had not best to make an Attempt upon

upon the Giant, demolish his Castle, and if there were any Pilgrims in it, to set them at Liberty, before they went any farther. So one said one Thing, and another said to the contrary. One questioned, if it was lawful to go upon *unconsecrated* Ground; another said they might, provided their End was good: But Mr. *Great-Heart* said, though that Assertion offered last, cannot be universally true, yet I have a Commandment to resist Sin, to overcome Evil, to fight the good Fight of Faith: And I pray, with whom should I fight this good Fight, if not with *Giant Despair*? I will therefore attempt the taking away of his Life, and the demolishing of *Doubting-Castle*. Then, said he, who will go with me? Then said old *Honest*, I will; and so we will too, said *Christiana's* four Sons, *Matthew, Samuel, James, and Joseph*, for they were young Men and strong.

1 John ii, 13,  
24.

So they left the Women in the Road, and with them Mr. *Feeble-mind* and Mr. *Ready-to-halt*, with his Crutches, to be their Guard, until they came back; for in that Place the *Giant Despair* dwelt so near, they keeping in the Road, a little *Child* might lead them.

Isa. vi, 11.

So Mr. *Great-heart*, old *Honest*, and the four young Men, went to go up to *Doubting-Castle*, to look for *Giant Despair*. When they came at the Castle-Gate they knocked for Entrance with an unusual Noise. With that the old Giant comes to the Gate, and *Diffidence* his Wife follows: Then said he, Who and what is he, that

s so hardy, as after this Manner to molest the *Giant Despair*? Mr. *Great-heart* replied, It is I, *Great-heart*, one of the King of the Cœlestial Country's Conductors of Pilgrims to their Place: And I demand of thee, that thou open thy Gates for my Entrance; prepare thyself also to fight, for I am come to take away thy Head and to demolish *Doubting-Castle*.

\* Now *Giant Despair*, because he was a \* *Despair has overcome Angels.*  
Giant, thought no Man could overcome him; and again, thought he, since heretofore I have made a Conquest of Angels, shall *Great-heart* make me afraid? So he harnessed himself, and went on: He had a Cap of Steel upon his Head, a Breast-Plate of Fire girded to him, and he came out in Iron-Shoes with a great Club in his Hand. Then these six men made up to him, and beset him behind and before: Also when *Diffidence*, the Giantess, came up to help him, old Mr. *Honest* cut her down at one Blow. Then they fought for their Lives, and *Giant Despair* was brought down to the Ground, *but was very loth to die*: † He struggled hard, and † *Despair is loth to die.*  
had, as they say, as many Lives as a Cat; but *Great-heart* was his Death, for he left him not till he had severed his Head from his Shoulders.

‡ Then they fell to demolishing *Doubting-Castle*, and that you know might with Ease be done, since *Giant Despair* was dead. They were seven Days in destroying of that, and in it of Pilgrims they found one Mr. *Despondency*, almost starved to Death, and one *Much afraid* his Daughter  
ter i

## The Pilgrim's progress. PART II.

ter; these two they saved alive. But it would have made you wonder, to have seen the dead Bodies that lay here and there in the Castle-Yard, and how full of dead Men's Bones the Dungeon was.

When Mr. *Great-heart* and his Companions had performed this Exploit, they took Mr. *Despondency*, and his Daughter *Much-afraid*, into their Protection, for they were honest People, though they were Prisoners in *Doubting-Castle* to that Giant *Despair*. They therefore, I say, took with them the Head of the Giant, (for his Body they had buried under a Heap of Stones) and down to the Road, and to their Companions they came, and shewed them what they had done. Now when *Feeble-mind* and *Ready-to-halt* saw that it was the Head of the Giant *Despair* indeed, they were very jocund and merry. Now *Christiana*, if need was, could play upon the *Viol*, and her Daughter *Mercy* upon the *Lute*: So since they were so merry disposed, she played them a Lesson, and *Ready-to-halt* would dance. \* So he took *Despondency's* Daughter, *Much-afraid*, by the Hand, and to Dancing they went in the Road. True, he could not dance without one Crutch in his Hand; but I promise you, he footed it well; also the Girl was to be commended, for she answered the Music handsomely.

\* They have  
Music and  
Dancing for  
Joy.

As for Mr. *Despondency*, the Music was not so much to him, he was for Feeding rather than Dancing, for that he was almost starved. So *Christiana* gave him some  
of







Giant Despair slain, and Doubting Castle demolished

of her Bottle of Spirits, for present Relief, and then prepared him something to eat, and in little Time the old Gentleman came to himself, and began to be finely revived.

Now I saw in my Dream, when all these Things were finished, Mr. *Great-heart*, took the Head of *Giant Despair*, and set it upon a Pole by the Highway-side, right over against the Pillar that *Christian* erected for a Caution to Pilgrims that came after, to take Heed of entering into his Grounds.

[A Monument of Deliverance.]

Then he writ under it, upon a Marble-Stone, these Verses following:

*This is the Head of him, whose Name only  
In former Times did Pilgrims terrify.*

*His Castle's down, and Diffidence, his Wife,  
Brave Master Great-heart has bereft of Life.*

*Despondency, his Daughter Much-afraid,  
Great-heart for them also the Man has play'd.*

*Who hereof doubts, if he'll but cast his Eye*

*Up hither, may his Scruples satisfy.*

*This Head also, where doubting Cripples dance,*

*Doth shew from Fears they have Deliverance.*

When those Men had thus bravely shewed themselves against *Doubting-Castle*, and had slain *Giant Despair*, they went forward, and went on till they came to the *Delectable Mountains*, where *Christian*  
and

**The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II**

and *Hopeful* refreshed themselves with the Varieties of the Place. They also acquainted themselves with the Shepherds there, who welcomed them, as they had done *Christian* before, unto the *Delectable Mountains*.

Now the Shepherds seeing so great a Train follow Mr. *Great-heart*, (for with him they were well acquainted) they said unto him, Good Sir, you have got a goodly Company here; pray where did you find all these?

[The Guide's Speech to the Shepherds.]

*First, here is Christiana and her Train,  
Her Son's, and her Sons' Wives, who like the  
Wain,  
Keep by the Pole, and do my Compass steer,  
From Sin to Grace, else they had not been here:  
Next here's old Honest come on Pilgrimage,  
Ready-to-halt too, who, I dare engage  
True-hearted is, and so is Feeble-mind,  
Who willing was not to be left behind.  
Despondency, good Man, is coming after,  
And so also is Much-afraid his Daughter.  
May we have Entertainment here, or must  
We farther go? Let's know whereon to trust?*

Then

---

*Though Doubting-Castle be demolished,  
And the Giant Despair hath lost his Head,  
Sin can rebuild the Castle, make't remain,  
And make Despair the Giant live again.*



\* Then said the Shepherds, this is a comfortable Company; you are welcome to us, for we have for the *Feeble*, as for the *Strong*; our Prince has an Eye to what is done to the least of these. Therefore Infirmity must not be a Block to our Enter-  
 \* *Their Entertainment.*

tainment. So they had them to the Palace-Doors, and then said unto them, Come in Mr. *Feeble-mind*, come in Mr. *Ready-to-halt*, come in Mr. *Despondency*, and Mrs. *Much-afraid* his Daughter. These Mr. *Great-heart*, said the Shepherds to the Guide, we call in by Name, for that they are most subject to draw back; but as for you, and the Rest that are *strong*, we leave you to your wonted Liberty. Then said Mr. *Great-heart*, This Day I see that Grace doth shine in your Faces,† and that you are my Lord's Shepherds indeed; for that you have not pushed these Deceased neither with Side nor Shoulder, but have rather strewed their Way into the Palace with Flowers as you should.

Matt. 25. 40.

† *A Description of false Shepherds.*  
 Ezek. xxxiv. 21.

So the *Feeble* and *Weak* went in, and Mr. *Great-heart* and the Rest did follow. When they were all sat down, the Shepherds said to those of the weaker Sort, What is it that you would have? For, say they, all Things must be managed here to the Supporting of the Weak, as well as the Warning of the Unruly.

So they made them a Feast of Things easy of Digestion, and that were pleasant to the Palate, and nourishing: The which when they had received, they went to their Rest, each one respectively unto his proper Place. When Morning was come, because

**The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.**

because the Mountains where high, and the Day clear; and because it was the Custom of the Shepherds to shew the Pilgrims, before their Departure, some Rarities, therefore, after they were ready, and had refreshed themselves, the Shepherds took them out into the Fields, and shewed them first what they had shewed to *Christian* before.

*Part I. p. 154.  
to 158.*

• Mount-  
Marvel.

Then they had them to some new Places. • The first was *Mount-Marvel*, where they looked, and beheld a Man at a Distance, *that tumbled the Hills about with Words*. Then they asked the Shepherds what that should mean? So they told them, That that Man was the Son of one Mr. *Great-grace*, of whom you read in the first Part of the Records of the *Pilgrim's Progress*. And he is set there to teach Pilgrims how to believe down, or to tumble out of their Ways, what Difficulties they should meet with, by Faith. Then said Mr. *Great-heart*, I know him, he is a Man above many.

Mark xi. 23,  
24.

† Mount-  
Innocence.

† Then they had them to another Place called *Mount Innocence*; and where they saw a Man cloathed all in White; and two Men, *Prejudice* and *Ill-will*, continually casting Dirt upon him. Now behold the Dirt, whatsoever they cast at him, would in a little Time fall off again, and his Garment would look as clear as if no Dirt had been cast thereat.

Then said the Pilgrims, What means this? The Shepherds answered; This Man is named *Godly-Man*, and the Garment is to shew the Innocency of his Life. Now those that throw Dirt at him, are such as hate

hate his *Well-doing*; but, as you see the Dirt will not stick upon his Cloaths, so it shall be with him that lives innocently in the World. Whoever they be that would make such Men dirty, they labour all in vain; for God, by that a little Time is spent, will cause that their *Innocence* shall break forth as the Light, and their *Righteousness* as the Noon day.

Then they took them, and had them to *Mount Charity*\*, where they shewed them a Man that had a Bundle of Cloth lying before him, out of which he cut Coats and Garments for the Poor that stood about him; yet his Bundle or Roll of Cloth was never the less.

Then said they, What should this be? This is, said the Shepherds, to shew you, that he that has a Heart to give of his Labour to the Poor, shall never want wherewithal. He that watereth, shall be watered himself. And the Cake that the Widow gave to the Prophet, did not cause that she had ever the less in her Barrel.

They had them also to the Place, where they saw one *Fool*, and one *Want-wit* †, † *The Work of* washing of an *Ethiopian*, with an Intention *one Fool, and* to make him white; but the more they *one Want-wit.* washed him, the blacker he was. Then they asked the Shepherds, what that should mean? So they told them, saying, Thus it is with the vile Person; all Means used to get such a one a good Name, shall in Conclusion tend but to make him more abominable. Thus it was with the *Pharisees*, and so it shall be with all *Hypocrites*.

Part I, 156.

Then said *Mercy*, the Wife of *Matthew*, to *Christiana* her Mother, I would, if it might be, see the Hole in the Hill\*; or that commonly called the *Bye-way* to Hell. So her Mother brake her Mind to the Shepherds. Then they went to the Door; it was on the Side of an Hill, and they opened it, and bid *Mercy* hearken awhile. So she hearkened, and heard one saying, *Cursed be my Father for holding of my Feet back from the Way of Peace and Life*; and another said, *O that I had been torn in Pieces, before I had, to save my Life, lost my Soul*; and another said, *If I were to live again, how would I deny myself rather than come to this Place*. Then there was, as if the very Earth groaned and quaked under the Feet of this young Woman for Fear; so she looked white, and came trembling away, saying, *Blessed be he and she that is delivered from this Place*.

\* *Mercy has a Mind to see the Hole in the Hill.*

† *Mercy longed, and for what.*

Now when the Shepherds had shewn them all these Things, then they had them back to the Palace, and entertained them with what the House would afford: But *Mercy*† being a young and breeding Woman, longed for something that she saw there, but was ashamed to ask. Her Mother-in-law then asked her what she ailed, for she looked as one not well. Then said *Mercy* *there is a Looking-glass hangs up in the Dining-room, off which I cannot take my Mind: if therefore I have it not, I think I shall miscarry*. Then said her Mother, I will mention thy Wants to the Shepherds, and they will not deny it thee. But she said, I am ashamed that these Men



Men should know that I longed. Nay, my Daughter, said she, it is no Shame, but a Virtue, to long for such a Thing as that; so *Mercy* said, then Mother, if you please, ask the Shepherds if they are willing to sell it.

\* Now the Glass was one of a Thousand; \* *It was the Word of God.*  
it would present a Man, one Way, with his own Features exactly; and turn it but another Way, and it would shew one the very Face and Similitude of the Prince of Pilgrims himself. Yea, I have talked with them that can tell, and they have said, that they have seen the very Crown of Thorns upon his Head, by looking in that Glass; they have therein also seen the Holes in his Hands, in his Feet, and his Side. Yea, such an Excellency is there in that Glass, that it will shew him to one, where they have a Mind to see him; whether living or dead, whether in Earth or in Heaven; whether in a State of Humiliation, or in his Exaltation; whether coming to suffer, or coming to reign.

James i. 33.

1 Cor. xiii. 12.

2 Cor. iii. 10.

*Christiana* therefore went to the Shepherds apart, (now the Names of the Shepherds were *Knowledge*, *Experience*, *Watchful*, and *Sincere*) and said unto them, there is one of my Daughters a Breeding Woman; that, I think, doth long for something that she hath seen in this House, and she thinks she shall miscarry, if she should by you be denied. *Part I. p. 153.*

*Experience.* † Call her, call her; she shall assuredly have what we can help her to. † *She doth not lose her Longing.*  
So they called her, and said to her, *Mercy*, what is that Thing thou wouldst have?

**The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.**

Then she blushed and said, The great Glass that hangs up in the Dining-Room: So *Sincere* ran and fetched it, and, with a joyful Consent, it was given her. Then she bowed her Head, and gave Thanks, and said, by this I know that I have obtained Favour in your Eyes.

They also gave to the other young Women such Things as they desired, and to their Husbands great Commendations, for that they joined with Mr. *Great-heart*, to the slaying of *Giant Despair*, and the demolishing of *Doubting-Castle*.

• How the  
Shepherds  
adorned the  
Pilgrims.

\* About *Christiana's* Neck the Shepherds put a Bracelet, and so they did about the Necks of her four Daughters; also they put Ear-rings in their Ears, and Jewels on their Foreheads.

When they were minded to go hence, they let them go in Peace, but gave not to them those certain Cautions which before were given to *Christian* and his Companion. The Reason was, for that these had *Great-heart* to be their Guide, who was one that was well acquainted with Things; and so could give them their Cautions more seasonable; to wit, even then when the Danger was nigh the approaching.

Part I. p. 157. What Cautions *Christian* and his Companion had received of the Shepherds, they had also lost by that the Time was come that they had need to put them in Practice. Wherefore, here was the Advantage that this Company had over the other.

From hence they went on singing, and they said,

*Behold, how fitly are the Tables set,  
For their Relief that Pilgrims are become,  
And how they us receive without one Let,  
That make the other Life the Mark and  
Home.*

*What Novelties they have, to us they give,  
That we, tho' Pilgrims, joyful Lives may live.  
They do upon us too such Things bestow,  
That shew we Pilgrims are, where'er we go.*

When they were gone from the Shepherds, they quickly came to the Place where *Christian* met with one *Turn away*, *Part I. p. 160.* that dwelt in the Town of *Apostacy*. Wherefore of him did Mr. *Great-heart*, their Guide, now put them in Mind, saying, this is the Place where *Christian* met with one *Turn-away*, who carried with him the Character of his Rebellion at his Back. And this I have to say concerning this Man, he would hearken to no Counsel, but once a falling, Persuasion could not stop him.

When he came to the Place where the Cross and Sepulchre was, he did meet with one that did bid him *look there*, but he gnashed with his Teeth, and stamped, and said he was resolved to go back to his own Town. Before he came to the Gate, he met with *Evangelist*, who offered to lay Hands on him, to turn him into

**The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.**

the Way again. But this *Turn-away* resisted him, and having done much Despite unto him, he got away over the Wall, and so escaped his Hand.

• One Valiant-for-truth beset with Thieves.

Prov. i. 10, 11, 13, 14.

Then they went on, and just at the Place where *Little-Faith* formerly was robbed, there stood a Man with his Sword drawn and his Face all bloody. Then said Mr. *Great-heart*, What art thou? The Man made Answer, saying, I am one whose Name is *Valiant-for-Truth*\*. I am a Pilgrim, and am going to the Cælestial City. Now, as I was in my Way, there were three Men that did beset me, and propounded unto me these three Things: 1. Whether I would become one of them? 2. Or go back from whence I came? 3. Or die upon the Place? To the first I answered, I had been a true Man a long Season, and therefore it could not be expected that I now should cast in my Lot with Thieves. Then they demanded what I would say to the second. So I told them the Place from whence I came, had I not found Incommodity there, I had not forsaken it at all; but finding it altogether unsuitable to me, and very unprofitable for me, I forsook it for this Way. Then they asked me what I said to the third. And I told them, my Life cost more dear far than that I should lightly give it away. Besides, you have nothing to do thus to put Things to my Choice; wherefore at your Peril be it, if you meddle. Then these three, to wit, *Wild-headed*, *Inconsiderate*, and *Pragmatick*, drew



drew upon me, and I also drew upon them.

So we fell to it, one against three, for the space of three Hours. They have left upon me, as you see, some of the Marks of their Valour, and have also carried away with them some of mine. They are but just now gone. I suppose they might, as the Saying is, hear your Horse dash, and so they betook themselves to Flight.

*Great-heart.* But here was great Odds, three against one.

*Valiant.* It is true; but little or more are nothing to him that has the TRUTH on his Side: *Though an Host should encamp against me, said one, my Heart shall not fear: Though War shall rise against me, in this will I be confident, &c.* Besides, said he, I have read in some Records, that one Man has fought an Army: And how many did *Sampson* slay with the Jaw-bone of an Ass?

*Great-heart.* Then said the Guide, Why did you not cry out, that some might have come in for your Succour?

*Valiant.* So I did to my King, who I knew could hear me, and afford invisible Help, and that was enough for me.

*Great-heart.* Then said *Great-heart* to Mr. *Valiant-for-Truth*, thou hast worthily behaved thyself; let me see thy Sword; so he shewed it him.

When he had taken it in his Hand, and looked thereon a while, he said, Ha! it is a right *Jerusalem* Blade.

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*Valiant.* It is so. Let a Man have one of these Blades, with a Hand to wield it, and Skill to use it, and he may venture upon an Angel with it. He need not fear its holding, if he can but tell how to lay on. Its Edge will never blunt. It will cut Flesh and Bones, and Soul and Spirit and all.

*Great-heart.* But you fought a great while, I wonder you was not weary.

*Valiant.* I fought till my Sword did cleave to my Hand, and then they were joined together, as if a Sword grew out of my Arm; and when the Blood run through my Fingers, then I fought with most Courage.

*Great-heart.* Thou hast done well, thou hast resisted unto Blood, striving against Sin; thou shalt abide by us, come in, and go out with us, for we are thy Companions.

Then they took him and washed his Wounds, and gave him of what they had to refresh him; and so they went together. Now as they went on, because Mr. *Great-heart* was delighted in him (for he loved one greatly, that he found to be a Man of his Hands) and because there were in Company them that were feeble and weak; therefore he questioned with him about many Things: As first, what Countryman he was?

*Valiant.* I am of *Dark-Land*, for there I was born, and there my Father and Mother are still.

*Great-heart.* *Dark-Land*, saith the Guide, doth not that lie on the same Coast with the City of *Destruction*?

*Valiant.*

*Valiant.* Yes, it doth. Now that which caused me to come on Pilgrimage, was this: We had Mr. *Tell-true* came in our Parts, and he told it about what *Christian* had done, that went from the City of *Destruction*. Namely, how he had forsaken his Wife and Children, and had betaken himself to a Pilgrim's Life. It was also confidently reported, how he had killed a Serpent, that did come out to resist him in his Journey; and how he got through to whither he intended. It was also told, what Welcome he had to all his Lord's Lodgings, especially when he came to the Gates of the *Cœlestial City*: For there, said the Man, he was received with Sound of Trumpet, by a Company of shining ones. He told it also, how all the Bells in the City did ring for Joy at his Reception, and what golden Garments he was cloathed with; with many other Things that now I shall forbear to relate. In a Word, that Man so told the Story of *Christian* and his Travels, that my Heart fell into a burning Heat, to be gone after him; nor could Father or Mother stay me! So I got from them, and am come thus far on my Way.

*Great-heart.* You came in at the Gate, did you not?

*Valiant.* Yes, yes, for the same Man also told us, that all would be nothing, if we did not begin to enter this Way at the Gate.

*Great-heart.* Look you, said the Guide to *Christiana*, the *Pilgrimage* of your *Husband*,

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

*band*, and what he has gotten thereby, is spread abroad far and near.

*Valiant*. Why, is this *Christian's* Wife?

*Great-heart*. Yes, that it is; and these are also his four Sons.

*Valiant*. What ! and going on Pilgrimage too ?

*Great-heart*. Yes, verily, they are following after.

*Valiant*. It glads me at Heart ! good Man. How joyful will he be, when he shall see them that would not go with him, to enter before him, in at the Gates into the *Cœlestial City*.

*Great-heart*. Without Doubt it will be a Comfort to him ; for, next to the Joy of seeing himself there, it will be a Joy to meet there his Wife and Children.

*Valiant*. But now you are upon that, pray let me hear your Opinion about it. Some make a Question, Whether we shall know one another when we are there ?

*Great-heart*. Do they think they shall know themselves then, or that they shall rejoice to see themselves in that Bliss ; and if they think they shall know and do these, why not know others, and rejoice in their Welfare also ?

Again, since Relations are our second Self, though that State will be dissolved, yet why may it not be rationally concluded, that we shall be more glad to see them there, than to see they are wanting ?

*Valiant*. Well, I perceive whereabouts you are to this. Have you any more Things to ask me about my beginning to come on Pilgrimage ?

*Great-*



*Great-heart.* Yes: Were your Father and Mother willing that you should become a Pilgrim?

*Valiant.* Oh! no, they used all Means imaginable to persuade me to stay at Home.

*Great-heart.* What could they say against it?

*Valiant.* They said it was an idle Life; and if I myself was not inclined to Sloth and Laziness, I would never countenance a Pilgrim's Condition.

*Great-heart.* And what did they say else?

*Valiant.* Why, they told me that it was a dangerous Way; yea, the most dangerous Way in the World, said they, is that which Pilgrims go.

*Great-heart.* Did they shew you wherein this Way is dangerous?

*Valiant.* Yes; and that in many Particulars.

*Great-heart.* Name some of them.

*Valiant.* They told me of the *Slough of Despond*, where *Christian* was well nigh smothered. They told me, that there were Archers standing ready in *Beelzebub-Castle*, to shoot them who should knock at the *Wicket-Gate* for Entrance. They told me also of the Wood and dark Monuments; of the Hill *Difficulty*; of the Lions, and also of the three Giants, *Bloody-man*, *Maul*, and *Slay-good*: They said moreover, that there was a foul Fiend haunted the Valley of *Humiliation*; and that *Christian* was by them almost bereft of Life. Besides, said they, you must go  
over

**The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.**

over the *Valley of the Shadow of Death*, where the *Hobgoblins* are, where the Light is Darkness, where the Way is full of Snares, Pits, Traps, and Gins. They told me of *Giant Despair*, of *Doubting-Castle*, and of the Ruin that the Pilgrims met with there. Further, they said, I must go over the *Inchanted Ground*, which was dangerous; and that, after all this, I should find a River, over which I should find no Bridge; and that the River did lie betwixt me and the *Cœlestial Country*.

*Great-heart.* And was this all?

*Valiant.* No: They also told me, that this Way was full of Deceivers, and of Persons that lay in Wait there to turn good Men out of their Path.

*Great-heart.* But how did they make that out?

*Valiant.* They told me, that *Mr. Worldly-wise-man* did lie there in Wait to deceive. They also said, that there was *Formality* and *Hypocrisy* continually on the Road. They said also, that *Bye-ends*, *Talkative*, or *Demas*, would go near to gather me up: That the *Flatterer* would catch me in his Net; or that, with *Green-headed Ignorance*, I would presume to go on to the Gate, from whence he was sent back to the Hole that was in the Side of the Hill, and made to go the By-way to Hell.

*Great-heart.* I promise you, this was enough to discourage thee; but did they make an End here?

*Valiant.*

*Valiant.* No, stay. They told me also of many that tried that Way of old, and that had gone a great Way therein, to see if they could find something of the Glory then, that so many had so much talked of from Time to Time; and how they came back again, and befooled themselves for setting a Foot out of Doors in that Path, to the Satisfaction of the Country. And they named several that did so, as *Obstinate* and *Pliable*, *Mistrust* and *Timorous*, *Turn-away*, and old *Atbeist*, with several more, who, they said, had some of them gone far to see what they could find, but not one of them found so much Advantage by going, as amounted to the Weight of a Feather.

*Great-heart.* Said they any Thing more to discourage you?

*Valiant.* Yes, they told me of one Mr. *Fearing*, who was a Pilgrim; and how he found his Way so solitary, that he never had a comfortable Hour therein: Also that Mr. *Despondency* had like to have been starved therein: Yea, and also (which I had almost forgot) *Christian* himself, about whom there has been such a Noise, after all his Ventures for a Cœlestial Crown, was certainly drowned in the *Black River*, and never went a Foot farther, however it was smothered up.

*Great-heart.* And did none of these Things discourage you?

*Valiant.* No, they seemed as so many Nothings to me.

*Great-heart.*

# **The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.**

*Great-heart.* How came that about?

*Valiant.* Why I still believed what Mr. *Tell-true* had said, and that carried me beyond them all.

*Great-heart.* Then this was your Victory, even your Faith?

*Valiant.* It was so, I believed, and therefore came out, got into the Way, fought all that set themselves against me, and by believing am come to this Place:

*Who would true Valour see,  
Let him come hither;  
One here will constant be,  
Come Wind, come Weather:  
There's no Discouragement  
Shall make him once relent,  
His first avow'd intent,  
To be a Pilgrim.*

*Who so beset him round  
With dismal Stories,  
Do but themselves confound,  
His Strength the more is:  
No Lion can him fright,  
He'll with a Giant fight,  
But he will have a Right  
To be a Pilgrim.*

*Hobgoblin,*



*Hobgoblin, nor foul Fiend*

*Can daunt his Spirit ;*

*He knows he at the End*

*Shall Life inherit :*

*Then Fancies fly away,*

*He'll not fear what Man say,*

*He'll labour Night and Day*

*To be a Pilgrim.*

}

By this Time they were got to the *Incanted Ground*, where the Air naturally tended to make one drowsy : And that place was all grown over with Briars and thorns, excepting here and there, where was an *Incanted Harbour*, upon which if a Man sits, or in which if a Man sleeps, it is no Question, say some, Whether ever he shall rise or wake again in this World ? Over this Forest therefore they went, both he and another, and Mr. *Great-heart* went before, for that he was the Guide, and Mr. *Valiant-for-truth*, he came behind being Rear Guard, for Fear lest peradventure some *Fiend*, or *Dragon*, or *Giant*, or *Witch*, should fall upon their Rear, and do Mischief. They went on here, each Man with his Sword drawn in his Hand, for they knew it was a dangerous Place. Also they cheered up one another, as well as they could ; *Feeble-mind*, Mr. *Great-heart* commanded should come up after him, and Mr. *Despondency* was under the eye of Mr. *Valiant*.

Now

Now they had not gone far, but a great Mist and Darknes fell upon them all; so that they could scarce, for a great while, one see the other. Wherefore they were forced, for some Time, to feel for one another, by Words; for they walked not by Sight.

But any one must think that here was but sorry going for the best of them all; but how much worse for the Women and Children, who both of *Feet* and *Heart* were but tender. Yet so it was, that through the encouraging Words of him that led in the Front, and of him that brought them up behind, they made a pretty good Shift to wag along.

The Way was also here very wearisome through Dirt and Slabbiness. Nor was there on all this Ground, so much as one *Inn* or *Vitrualling-house*, wherein to refresh the Feebler Sort. Here therefore was *grunting* and *puffing*, and *sighing*: While one tumbled over a Bush, another sticks fast in the Dirt; and the Children, some of them, lost their Shoes in the Mire: While one cries out, I am down; and another, Ho, where are you? And a third, the Bushes have got such fast hold of me, I think I cannot get away from them.

• *An Arbour  
on the In-  
chanted  
Ground.*

Then they came at an *Arbour*\*, warm, and promising much Refreshing to the Pilgrims; for it was finely wrought above-head, beautiful with *Greens*, furnished with *Benches* and *Settles*. It had in it a soft Couch, where the weary might lean. This, you must think, all Things considered,

dered, was tempting; for the Pilgrims already began to be foiled with the Badness of the Way; but there was not one of them that made so much as a Motion to stop there. Yea, for ought I could perceive, they continually gave so good Heed to the Advice of their Guide, and he did so faithfully tell them of Dangers, and of the Nature of Dangers when they were at them, that usually when they were nearest to them, they did most pluck up their Spirits, and hearten one another to deny the Flesh. This *Arbour* was called *The Slothful's Friend*, on Purpose to allure, if it might be, some of the Pilgrims there, to take up their Rest, when weary.

I saw then in my Dream, that they went on in this their solitary Ground, till they came to a Place at which a Man is apt to lose his Way. \* Now, though when it was light, their Guide could well enough tell how to miss those Ways that lead wrong, yet in the dark he was put to a Stand: But he had in his Pocket a Map of all Ways leading to or from the *Cœlestial City*; wherefore he struck a Light (for he never goes also without his Tinder-Box) and takes a View of his Book or Map, which bids him be careful in that Place, to turn to the right Hand. And had he not here been careful to look in his Map, they had in all Probability been smothered in the Mud; for just a little before them, and that at the End of the cleanest Way too, was a Pit, none knows how deep, full of nothing but

\* *The Way is difficult to find. The Guide has a Map of all Ways leading to or from the City.*

Mud, there made on Purpose to destroy the Pilgrims in.

- *God's Book.* \* Then thought I with myself, who, that goeth on *Pilgrimage*, but would have one of these Maps about him, that he may look when he is at a *Stand*, which is the Way he must take.

† *An Arbour,* † They went on then in this *Incanted*  
*and two asleep* *Ground*; till they came to where there  
*therein.* was another *Arbour*, and it was built by the Highway-Side. And in that *Arbour* there lay two Men, whose Names were *Heedless* and *Too-bold*. These two went thus far on *Pilgrimage*; but here, being wearied with their Journey, sat down to rest themselves, and so fell fast asleep. When the Pilgrims saw them, they stood still, and shook their Heads; for they knew that the sleepers were in a pitiful Case. Then they consulted what to do, whether to go on, and leave them in their Sleep, or step to them, and try to wake them. So they concluded to go to them, and awake them, that is, if they could; but with this Caution, namely, to take Heed that themselves did not sit down nor embrace the offered Benefit of that *Arbour*.

† *The Pilgrims* † So they went in, and spake to the Men,  
*try to wake* and called each by his Name, (for the  
*them.* Guide it seems did know them) but there was no Voice, nor Answer. Then the Guide did shake them and do what he could to disturb them. Then said one of them, *I will pay you when I take my Money.* At which the Guide shook his Head.

*I will*



*I will fight so long as I can hold my Sword in my Hand,* said the other. At that one of the Children laughed.

Then said *Christiana*, What is the Meaning of this? The Guide said, they talk in their Sleep; if you strike them, beat them, or whatever else you do to them, they will answer you after this Fashion; or as one of them said in old Time, when the Waves of the Sea did beat upon him, and he slept as one upon the Mast of a Ship: When I awake, I will seek it again. You know when Men talk in their Sleep, they say any Thing, but their Words are not governed either by Faith or Reason; there is an Incoherency in their Words now, as there was before betwixt their going on Pilgrimage, and sitting down here. This then is the Mischief of it, when heedless ones go on Pilgrimage; twenty to one but they are served thus. For this *Incanted Ground* is one of the last Refuges that the Enemy to Pilgrims has; wherefore it is, as you see, placed almost at the End of the Way, and so it standeth against us with the more Advantage. For when, thinks the Enemy, will these Fools be so desirous to sit down, as when they are weary? And when so like to be weary, as when almost at their Journey's End? Therefore it is, I say, that the *Incanted Ground* is placed so nigh to the Land *Beulah*, and so near the End of their Race. Wherefore, let Pilgrims look to themselves, lest it happen to them as it has done to these, that, as you see, are fallen asleep; and none can awake them.

• *The Light  
of the World.*  
2 Pet. i. 19.

Then the Pilgrims desired with Trembling to go forward, only they prayed their Guide to strike a Light, that they might go the rest of their Way by the Help of the Light of a Lanthorn. So he struck a Light, and they went by the Help of that through the rest of this Way, though the Darkeness was very great.

+ *The Children  
cry out  
for Weariness.*

But the Children began to be sorely weary, and they cried out unto him that loveth Pilgrims, to make their Way more comfortable. So by that they had gone a little farther, a Wind arose, that drove away the Fog, so the Air became more clear.

Yet they were not off (by much) of the *Inchanted Ground*, only now they could see one another better, and the Way wherein they should walk.

† *Standfast  
upon his Knees  
on the In-  
chanted  
Ground.*

Now when they were almost at the End of this Ground, they perceived that a little before them was a solemn Noise, of one that was much concerned. So they went on, and looked before them: And behold they saw, as they thought, a Man upon his Knees, with Hands and Eyes lifted up, and speaking, as they thought, earnestly to one that was above; they drew nigh, but could not tell what he said; so they went softly till he had done. When he had done, he got up, and began to run towards the *Cœlestial City*. Then Mr. *Great-heart* called after him, saying, Soho, Friend, let us have your Company, if you go, as I suppose you do, to the *Cœlestial City*. So the Man stopped, and they came up to him.

But

But so soon as Mr. *Honest* saw him, he said, I know this Man. \* Then said Mr. \* *The Story*  
*Valiant-for-Truth*, prithee, who is it? It is *of Standfast*.  
 one, said he, that comes from where-  
 abouts I dwelt; his Name is *Standfast*; he  
 is certainly a right good Pilgrim.

† So they came up to one another, and † *Talk be-*  
 presently *Standfast* said to old *Honest*, Ho! *wixt him and*  
 Father *Honest*, are you there? Ay, said *Mr. Honest*.  
 he, that I am, as sure as you are there.  
 Right glad am I, said Mr. *Standfast*, that  
 I have found you on this Road. And  
 as glad am I, said the other, that I  
 espied you upon your Knees. Then Mr.  
*Standfast* blushed, and said, But why,  
 did you see me? Yes, that I did, quoth  
 the other, and from my Heart was glad  
 at the Sight. Why, what did you think,  
 said *Standfast*? Think, said old *Honest*,  
 What should I think? I thought we had  
 an honest Man upon the Road, therefore  
 should have his Company by and by. If  
 you thought not amiss, how happy am I?  
 But if I be not as I should, it is I alone  
 must bear it. That is true, said the  
 other; but your Fear doth farther con-  
 firm me, that Things are right betwixt  
 the Prince of Pilgrims and your Soul;  
 For, saith he, *Blessed is the Man that fear-*  
*eth always.*

*Valiant*. ‡ Well, but Brother, I pray thee † *They found*  
 tell us, what was it that was the Cause *him at Pray-*  
 of thy being upon thy Knees even now? *ers.*  
 Was it for some Obligations laid by spe-  
 cial Mercies upon thee, or how?

*Standfast*. Why, we are, you see, up-  
 on the *Inchanted Ground*; and as I was  
 D d 3 coming

\* *What it  
was that  
fetch'd him  
upon his  
Knees.*

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

coming along, \* I was musing with myself of what a dangerous Nature the Road in this Place was, and how many that had come even thus far on Pilgrimage, had here been stopt, and been destroyed. I thought also of the Manner of Death, with which this Place destroyeth Men. Those that die here, die of no violent Distemper; the Death which such die, is not grievous to them. For he that goeth away in a Sleep, begins that Journey with Desire and Pleasure. Yea, such acquiesce in the Will of that Disease.

*Hon.* Then Mr. *Honest* interrupting of him, said, Did you see the two Men asleep in the Arbour?

*Prov. x. 7.*

*Standfast.* Ay, ay, I saw *Heedless* and *Too-bold* there; and, for ought I know, there they will lie till they rot: But let me go on with my Tale: As I was thus musing, as I said, there was one in very pleasant Attire, but old, who presented herself unto me, and offered me three Things; to wit, her Body, her Purse, and her Bed. Now the Truth is, I was both weary and sleepy: I am also as poor as a *Howlet*, and that perhaps the *Witch* knew. Well, I repulsed her once and twice, but she put by my Repulses, and smiled. Then I began to be angry, but she mattered that nothing at all. Then she made Offers again, and said, if I would be ruled by her, she would make me great and happy. For, said she, I am the Mistress of the World, † and Men are made happy by me. Then I asked her Name, and she told me it was *Madam Bubble*. This set

† *Madam  
Bubble: Or  
this vain  
World.*



et me farther from her; but she still followed me with Inticements. Then I took me, as you see, to my Knees, and with Hands lifted up, and Cries, I prayed to him that had said he would help. So just as you came up, the Gentlewoman went her Way. Then I continued to give Thanks for this great Deliverance; for I verily believe she intended no Good, but rather sought to make a Stop of me in my Journey.

*Hon.* Without Doubt her Designs were bad. But stay, now you talk of her, methinks I either have seen her, or have read some Story of her.

*Standfast.* Perhaps you have done both.

*Hon.* Madam *Bubble!* is she not a tall comely Dame, something of a swarthy Complexion?

*Standfast.* Right, you hit it, she is just such a one.

*Hon.* Does she not speak very smoothly, and give you a Smile at the End of every Sentence?

*Standfast.* You fall right upon it again, for these are her very Actions.

*Hon.* Doth she not wear a great Purse by her Side, and is not her Hand often in it, fingering her Money, as if that was her heart's Delight?

*Standfast.* It is just so; had she stood by all this while, you could not more amply have set her forth before me, and have better described her Features.

*Hon.* Then he that drew her Picture was a good Limner, and he that wrote of her said true.

*Great-beart.* This Woman is a *Witch*, and it is by Virtue of her Sorceries, that  
 \* *The World.* this \* Ground is enchanted: Whoever doth lay their Head down in her Lap, had as good lay it down upon that Block over which the Ax doth hang; and whoever lays their Eyes upon her Beauty, are counted the Enemies of God. This is she that maintaineth in their Splendor, all those that are the Enemies of Pilgrims.  
 Jam. iv. 4. Yea, this is she that hath brought off  
 1 John ii. 15. many a Man from a Pilgrim's Life. She is a great Gossiper; she is always, both she and her Daughters, at one Pilgrim's Heels or another, now commending, and then preferring the excellencies of this Life. She is a bold and impudent Slut; she will talk with any Man. She always laugheth poor Pilgrims to scorn, but highly commends the rich. If there be one cunning to get Money in a Place, she will speak well of him from House to House; she loveth banqueting and feasting mainly well: She is always at one full Table or another. She has given it out at some Places, that she is a Goddess, and therefore some do worship her. She has her Time, and open Places of cheating; and she will say, and avow it, that none can shew a Good comparable to hers. She promiseth to dwell with Childrens' Children, if they would but love and make much of her. She will cast out of her Purse Gold like Dust, in some Places, and to some Persons. She loves to be sought after, spoken well of, and to lie in the Bosoms of Men. She  
 is

is never weary of commending her Commodities, and she loves them most that think best of her. She will promise Crowns and Kingdoms, if they will but take her advice; yet many hath she brought to the Halter, and Ten Thousand Times more to Hell.

*Standfast.* Oh! said *Standfast*, What a Mercy it is that I did resist her; for whither might she have drawn me?

*Great-heart.* Whither! nay, none but God knows. But in general, to be sure she would have drawn thee into *many foolish* 1 Tim. vi. 9. *and hurtful Lusts, which drown Men in Destruction and Perdition.*

It was she that set *Absalom* against his Father, and *Jeroboam* against his Master. It was she that persuaded *Judas* to sell his Lord; and that prevailed with *Demas* to forsake the Godly Pilgrim's Life; none can tell of the Mischief that she doth. She makes Variance betwixt Rulers and Subjects, betwixt Parents and Children, betwixt Neighbour and Neighbour, betwixt a Man and his Wife, between a Man and himself, betwixt Flesh and the Spirit.

Wherefore, good Master *Standfast*, be as your Name is, and when you have done all, *Stand*.

At this Discourse there was, among the Pilgrims, a Mixture of Joy and Trembling; but at length they brake out and sang:

*What*

*What Danger is the Pilgrim in ?*

*How many are his Foes ?*

*How many Ways there are to Sin,*

*No living Mortal knows.*

*Some in the Ditch spoil'd are, yea can*

*Lie tumbling on the Mire ;*

*Some, though they shun the Frying-Pan*

*Do leap into the Fire.*

Part I. page  
200.

After this, I beheld until they were come unto the Land of *Beulah*, where the Sun shineth Night and Day. Here, because they were weary, they betook themselves a while to Rest. And because this Country was common for Pilgrims, and because the Orchards and Vineyards that were here, belonged to the King of the *Cœlestial* Country, therefore they were licensed to make bold with any of his Things. But a little while soon refreshed them here ; for the Bells did so ring, and the Trumpets continually sounded so melodiously, that they could not sleep ; and yet they received as much Refreshing, as if they slept their Sleep never so soundly. Here also all the Noise of them that walked in the Streets, was, *More Pilgrims are come to Town*. And another would answer, saying, And so many went over the Water, and were let in at the Golden Gates To-Day. They would cry again, There is now a Legion of Shining Ones just come to Town : By which we know,



know, that there are more Pilgrims upon the Road; for here they come to wait for them, and comfort them after their sorrow. Then the Pilgrims got up, and walked to and fro: But how were their Eyes now filled with Cœlestial Visions? In this Land they *heard* nothing, *saw* nothing, *felt* nothing, *smelt* nothing, *tasted* nothing, that was *offensive* to their *Stomach* or *Mind*; only when they tasted of the Water of the River, over which they were to go, they thought that tasted \* a little *bitterish* to the Palate, but it proved *sweet* when it was down.

\* *Death bitter to the Flesh, but sweet to the Soul.*

In this Place there was a Record kept of the Names of them that had been Pilgrims of Old, and a History of all the famous Acts that they had done. It was here also much discoursed, † how the River to some has its *Flowings*, and what *Ebbings* it has had while others have gone over. It has been in a Manner dry for some, while it has *overflowed* its Banks for others.

† *Death hath its Ebbings and Flowings like the Tide.*

In this Place, the Children of the Town would go into the King's Gardens, and gather Nofegays for the Pilgrims, and bring them to them with Affection. Here also grew *Campfire* and *Spikenard*, *Saffron*, *Calamus*, and *Cinnamon*, with all its Trees of *Frankincense*, *Myrrb*, and *Aloes*, with all chief *Spices*. With these the Pilgrims' Chambers were perfumed while they staid here; and with these were their Bodies anointed, to prepare them to go over the River, when the Time appointed was come.

Now

\* A Messenger  
of Death sent  
to Christiana.

\* Now while they lay here, and waited for the good Hour, there was a Noise in the Town, that there was a Post come from the Cœlestial City, with Matters of great Importance to one *Christiana*, the Wife of *Christian* the Pilgrims. So Enquiry was made for her, and the House was found out where she was, so the Post presented her with a Letter: The Contents were, *Hail good Woman! † I bring thee Tidings that the Master calleth for thee, and expecteth that thou shouldest stand in his Presence, in Cloaths of Immortality, within these Ten Days.*

† His Message.

‡ How welcome Death  
is to those  
that are willing  
to die.

When he had read this Letter to her, he gave her therewith a true Token that he was a true Messenger, and was come to bid her make haste to be gone. ‡ The Token was *An Arrow sharpened with Love, let easily into her Heart, Which, by Degrees, wrought so effectually with her, that at the Time appointed she must be gone.*

§ Her Speech  
to her Guide.

When *Christiana* saw that her Time was come, and that she was the first of this Company that was to go over, she called for Mr. *Great-heart* her Guide, § and told him how Matters were. So he told her, he was heartily glad of the News, and could have been glad had the Post come for him. Then she bid that he should give Advice how all Things should be prepared for her Journey.

So he told her, saying, Thus and thus it must be, and we that survive will accompany you to the River Side.

Then she called for her Children, and gave them her Blessing, and told them,  
that

that she \* had read with Comfort the Mark \* *To her Children.*  
 that was set in their Foreheads, and was  
 glad to see them with her there, and that  
 they had kept their Garments so white.  
 Lastly, she bequeathed to the Poor that  
 Little she had, and commanded her Sons  
 and Daughters to be ready against the  
 Messenger should come for them.

When she had spoken these Words to  
 her Guide and to her Children, she called  
 for † Mr. *Valiant-for-Truth*, and said unto † *To Mr. Va-*  
 him, Sir, you have in all Places shewed *liant.*  
 yourself true-hearted: be *faithful unto*  
*Death*, and my King will give you a *Crown*  
*of glory*. I would also intreat you have  
 an Eye to my Children; and if at any  
 Time you see them faint, speak comfor-  
 tably to them. For my Daughters, my  
 Sons' Wives, they have been faithful, and  
 as Fulfilling of the Promise upon them will  
 be their End. ‡ But she gave Mr. *Standfast* ‡ *To Mr.*  
 a Ring. *Standfast.*

Then she called for old Mr. *Honest*, and  
 said of him, *Behold an Israelite indeed, in*  
*whom is no Guile!* § Then said he, I wish § *To Mr. Ho-*  
 you a fair Day when you set out for *nest.*  
 Mount Zion, and shall be glad to see that  
 you go over the River dry-shod. But she  
 answered, Come *wet*, come *dry*, I long to  
 be gone; for however the Weather is in  
 my Journey, I shall have Time enough  
 when I come there, to sit down and rest  
 me, and dry me.

¶ Then came in the good Man Mr. ¶ *To Mr.*  
*Ready-to-halt*, to see her. So she said to *Ready-to-*  
 him, Thy Travel hitherto has been with *halt.*  
 Difficulty; but that will make thy Rest  
 the

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

the sweeter. But watch and be ready; for in an Hour when you think not, the Messenger may come.

• To Mr. Despondency and his Daughter.

\* After him came Mr. *Despondency*, and his Daughter *Much-afraid*; to whom she said, You ought with thankfulness, for ever, to remember your Deliverance from the Hand of *Giant-Despair*, and out of *Doubting-Castle*. The effect of that Mercy is, that you are brought with safety hither. Be yet watchful, and cast away Fear; be sober, and hope to the End.

† To Mr. Feeble-mind.

† Then she said to Mr. *Feeble-mind*, Thou wast delivered from the Mouth of *Giant-Slay-good*, that thou mightest live in the Light of the Living for ever, and see the King with Comfort: Only I advise thee to repent thee of thy Aptness to Fear and Doubt of his Goodness, before he sends for thee; lest thou shouldest, when he comes, be forced to stand before him for that Fault with Blushing.

‡ Her last Day, and Manner of Departure.

‡ Now the Day drew on that *Christiana* must be gone. So the Road was full of People, to see her take her Journey. But behold, all the Banks beyond the River were full of Horses and Chariots, which were come down from above, to accompany her to the City Gate. So she came forth, and entered the *River*, with a *Beckon* of Farewell to those that followed her to the River-side. The last Words that she was heard to say, were, *I come, Lord, to be with thee, and bless thee.*

So her Children and Friends returned to their Place, for that those that waited for *Christiana* had carried her out of their Sight.



Sight. So she went and called, and entered in at the Gate with all the ceremonies of Joy that her husband *Christian* had entered with before her.

At her Departure the Children wept. But Mr. *Great-heart* and Mr. *Valiant* played upon the well-tuned Cymbal and Harp for Joy. So all departed to their respective Places.

In process of Time, there came a Post to the Town again, and his Business was with Mr. *Ready-to-halt*. So he enquired him out, and said, I am come to thee in the Name of him \* whom thou hast loved and \* *Mr. Ready-* followed, though upon *Crutches*: And my *to-halt sum-* Message is to tell thee, that he expects thee *moned.* at his Table to sup with him in his Kingdom, the next Day after *Easter*: Wherefore prepare thyself for thy Journey.

Then he also gave him a Token that he was a true Messenger, saying, *I have broken the Golden Bowl, and loosed the Silver Cord.*

After this Mr. *Ready-to-halt* called for his Fellow Pilgrims, and told them saying, I am sent for, and God shall surely visit you also. So he desired Mr. *Valiant* to make his Will. And because he had nothing to bequeath to them that should survive him, but his *Crutches*, and his *Good Wishes*, therefore thus he said: *These Crutches I bequeath to my Son, that shall tread in my Steps, with an hundred warm Wishes that he may prove better than I have been.*

Then

## The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

Then thanked he Mr. *Great-heart* for his Conduct and Kindness, and so addressed himself to his Journey. When he came to the Brink of the River, he said, Now I shall have no more Need of these *Crutches*, since yonder are Chariots and Horses for me to ride on: The last Words he was heard to say, was, *Welcome Life*. So he went his Way.

After this, Mr. *Feeble-mind* had Tidings brought him, that the Post sounded his Horn at his Chamber-Door. Then he came in, and told him, saying, I am come to tell thee that thy master hath Need of thee: and that in a very little Time thou must behold his Face in brightness. And take this a Token of the Truth of my Message: *Those that look out at the Windows shall be darkened.*

\* He makes no Will.

Then Mr. *Feeble-mind* called for his Friends, and told them what Errand had been brought unto him, and what Token he had received of the Truth of the Message. \* Then he said, since I have nothing to bequeath to any, to what Purpose should I make a Will? As for my *Feeble Mind*, that I will leave behind, for that I go; nor is it worth bestowing upon the poorest Pilgrims: Wherefore, when I am gone, I desire, that you, Mr. *Valiant*, would bury it in a Dunghill. This done, and the Day being come in which he was to depart, he entered the River as the rest; His last Words were, *Hold out, Faith and Patience.*

## PART II. The Pilgrim's Progress.

194

*Patience.* So he went over to the other Side. *His last Words.*

When Days had many of them passed away, Mr. *Despondency* was sent for; for a Post was come, and brought this Message to him: † *Trembling Man, these are to sum-* † *Mr. Des-*  
*mon thee to be ready with the King by the next* *pondency's*  
*Lord's-Day, to shout for Joy, for the Deliver-* *Summons.*  
*ance from all thy Doubtings.*

And, said the Messenger, that my Message is true, take this for a Proof: So he gave him a Grasshopper to be a Burden unto him. Now Mr. *Despondency's* Daughter whose Name was *Much-afraid*, said when she heard what was done, that she would go with her Father†. Then Mr. † *His Daugh-*  
*Despondency* said to his Friends, myself and *ter goes too.*  
my Daughter, you know what we have been, and how troublesome we have behaved ourselves in every company: My Will, and my Daughter's are, That our *Desponds* § and slavish Fears be by no Man § *His Will.*  
ever received, from the Day of our *Departure*, for ever: For, I know, that after my Death, they will offer themselves to others. For to be plain with you, they are Guests, which we entertained when we first began to be Pilgrims, and could never shake them off after: And they will walk about, and seek Entertainment of the Pilgrims; but for our Sakes, shut the Doors upon them.

When the Time was come for them to depart, they went up to the Brink of the River. The last Words of Mr. *Despondency*, were, || *Farewel Night, Welcome Day,* || *His last*  
His Daughter went through the River *Words.*

E e                      singing,

singing, but none could understand what she said.

Then it came to pass a while after that there was a Post in the Town, that enquired for Mr. *Honest*. So he came to his House, where he was, and delivered to his Hands these lines : \* *Thou are commanded to be ready against this Day Seven-might, to present thyself before thy Lord, at his Father's House.* And for a Token that my Message is true, *All the Daughters of Music shall be brought low.* Then Mr. *Honest* called for his Friends, and said unto them, † *I die, but shall make no Will.* As for my *Honesty*, it shall go with me; let him that comes after, be told of this. When the Day that he was to be gone was come, he addressed himself to go over the River. Now the River at that Time over-flowed the Banks in some Places; but Mr. *Honest* in his Life-time had spoken to one ‡ *Good-Conscience* to meet him there, the which he also did, and lent him his Hand, and so helped him over. The last Words of Mr. *Honest* were, *Grace reigns* : So he left the World.

After this, it was noised abroad, that ¶ *Mr. Valiant-for-Truth* § was taken with a Summons by the same Post as the other; and had this for a Token, that the Summons was true, *That his Pitcher was broken at the Fountain.* When he understood it, he called for his Friends, and told them of it. Then, said he, I am going to my Father's, and though with great Difficulty I have

\* Mr. *Honest* summoned.

Ecclef. xii.

† He makes no Will.

‡ Good-Conscience helps Mr. *Honest* over the River.

¶ Mr. *Valiant-for-Truth* summoned.

Ecclef. xii. 6.

§ *Mr. Valiant-for-Truth* was taken with a Summons by the same Post as the other; and had this for a Token, that the Summons was true, *That his Pitcher was broken at the Fountain.* When he understood it, he called for his Friends, and told them of it. Then, said he, I am going to my Father's, and though with great Difficulty I have



have got hither, yet now I do not repent me of all the Trouble I have been at to arrive where I am. *My Sword* I give to him that shall succeed me in my Pilgrimage, and my *Courage* and *Skill* to him that can get it. My *Marks* and *Scars* I carry with me, to be a Witness for me, that I have fought his Battle, who now will be my Rewarder. When the Day that he must go hence was come, many accompanied him to the River-Side, into which as he went, he said, \* *Death, Where* \* *His last*  
*is thy Sting?* And as he went down deeper, *Words.*  
 he said, *Grave, Where is thy Victory?* So he passed over, and all the Trumpets sounded for him on the other Side.

Then there came forth a Summons for Mr. *Standfast* †. This Mr. *Standfast* was he † *Mr. Stand-*  
 that the Pilgrims found upon his Knees *fast is sum-*  
 in the *Incanted Ground*. And the Post *moned.*  
 brought it open in his Hands. The Contents whereof were, *That he must prepare for a Change of Life, for his Master was not willing that he should be so far from him any longer.* At this Mr. *Standfast* was put into a Muse: Nay, saith the Messenger, you need not doubt of the Truth of my Message; for here is a Token of the Truth thereof: *Thy Wheel is broken at the Cistern.* Eccl. xii. 6.  
 Then he called to him Mr. *Great-heart* ‡, ‡ *He calls for*  
 who was their Guide; and said unto him, *Mr. Great-*  
 Sir, although it was not my Hap to be *heart.*  
 much in your good Company in the Days of my Pilgrimage, yet, since the Time I knew you, you have been profitable to me §. When I came from home, I left be- § *His Speech*  
 hind *to him.*

# The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.

hind me a Wife, and five small Children ; let me intreat you, at your Return, (for I know that you go and return to your Master's House, in Hopes that you may be a Conductor to more of the Holy Pilgrims,) that you send to my Family, and let them be acquainted with all that hath,

\* *His Errand to his Family.* and shall happen unto me. \* Tell them moreover of my happy Arrival to this Place, and of the present and late blessed Condition that I am in. Tell them also of *Christian* and *Christiana* his Wife, and how she and her Children came after her Husband. Tell them also, of what a happy End she made, and whither she is gone. I have little or nothing to send to my Family, except it be my Prayers and Tears for them ; of which it will suffice if you acquaint them, if peradventure they may prevail.

When Mr. *Standfast* had thus set Things in Order, and the Time being come for him to haste him away, he also went down to the River. Now there was a great Calm at that Time in the River ; wherefore Mr. *Standfast*, when he was about half way in, stood a while, and talked to his Companions that had waited upon him thither : And he said,

† *His last Words.*  
Jof. xii. 6.

† This River has been a Terror to many ; yea, the Thoughts of it also have often frightened me ; now methinks I stand easy, my Foot is fixed upon that on which the Feet of the Priests that bare the Ark of the Covenant stood, while *Israel* went over this *Jordan*. The Waters indeed are to

the Palate bitter, and to the Stomach cold ; yet the Thoughts of what I am going to, and the Conduct that waits for me on the other Side, doth lie as a glowing Coal at my Heart.

I see myself now at the End of my Journey ; my *Toilſome Days are ended*. I am going to ſee that Head that was crowned with Thorns, and that Face that was ſpit upon for me.

I have formerly lived by Hear-ſay and Faith ; but now I go where I ſhall live by Sight, and ſhall be with him in whoſe Company I delight myſelf.

I have loved to hear my Lord ſpoken of ; and wherever I have ſeen the Print of his Shoe in the Earth, there have I coveted to ſet my Foot too.

His Name has been to me as a *Civet-Box* ; yea ſweeter than all Perfumes. His Voice to me has been moſt ſweet ; and his Countenance I have more deſired than they that have moſt deſired the Light of the Sun. His Words I did uſe to gather for my Food, and for Antidotes againſt my Faintings.

He has held me, and hath kept me from mine Iniquities ; yea, my Steps have been ſtrengthened in his Way.

Now, while he was thus in Diſcourſe, his Countenance changed, his *Strong Man* bowed under him : And after he had ſaid, *Take me, for I come unto Thee*, he ceaſed to be ſeen of them.

But Glorious it was to ſee, how the open Region was filled with Horſe and Chariots, with Trumpeters and Pipers, with Singers and Players on Stringed Inſtruments,

**The Pilgrim's Progress. PART II.**

struments, to welcome the PILGRIMS as they went up, and followed one another in at the Beautiful Gate of the City.

As for *Christiana's* Children, the Four Boys that *Christiana* brought, with their Wives and Children, I did not stay where I was till they were gone over. Also since I came away, I heard one say, they were yet alive, and so would be for the Increase of the CHURCH in that Place where they were, for a Time.

Shall it be my Lot to go that Way again, I may give those that desire it, an Account of what I here am silent about; mean Time I bid my *Reader*

**F A R E W E L L.**









